Bacteriophage SfII Mediated Serotype Conversion in *Shigella flexneri*

by

Maria Mavris B.Sc.(Hons)(Adel)

Microbial Pathogenesis Unit
Department of Microbiology and Immunology
University of Adelaide
Adelaide 5005
Australia

A Thesis Submitted for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy
May, 1998

Abstract

Shigella flexneri is the causative agent of bacillary dysentery and is responsible for approximately 10^5 deaths per year. Organisms that belong to this species can be classified according to the O-antigenic component of their lipopolysaccharide (LPS). Determination of the serotype is based on agglutination of the organism with polyclonal antisera. *S. flexneri* exhibits at least 12 different serotypes, all of which are variations of the basic tetrasaccharide repeat:

→3)-β-D-GlcNAc-(1→2)-α-L-Rha-(1→2)-α-L-Rha-(1→3)-α-L-Rha-(1→

I II III

Variations resulting in different epitopes are due to the addition of either glucosyl or O-acetyl residues at specific positions along the repeat unit. Immunity to *S. flexneri* strains is serotype specific and therefore protection against each serotype is required.

The modifications have been found to be mediated by temperate bacteriophages. To date, two such phages have been identified and characterised; Sf6, responsible for the O-acetylation of rhamnose III and SfX which encodes genes which add a glucosyl residue to rhamnose I.

S. flexneri strains of serotype 2 have been associated with a highly virulent phenotype and are more prevalent in nature. Bacteriophage SfII is responsible for the glucosylation of rhamnose III of the repeat unit and has been isolated from a strain of serotype 2b. Phage SfII possesses an hexagonal shaped head, a tail with a contractile sheath and tail fibres and has a genome of 43.5 kb in size.

A 4 kb *Bam*HI fragment was isolated which was found to mediate serotype conversion. This fragment was found to contain 4 open reading frames, however, only two were required for serotype conversion. These genes were named *bgt*, which encodes a putative bactoprenol glucosyl transferase, and *gtrII* encoding the putative type II antigen determining glucosyl

transferase. These genes are adjacent to the integrase and excisionase genes and the attachment site (*attP*) which are highly homologous to those of *Salmonella* bacteriophage P22. In addition, a gene named ORF2 was identified of unknown function, which did not appear to be required for serotype conversion.

In vitro T7 polymerase /promoter analysis identified a protein of 34 kDa in size corresponding to Bgt. Subsequent subcellular fractionation localised this protein to the cytoplasmic and membrane fractions. Topology studies determined that the carboxy and amino terminal ends were cytoplasmically located. The active site was located to the cytoplasmic domain which is consistent with the role of Bgt. A protein was not observed for GtrII.

The ability of SfII phage and plasmid copies of serotype converting genes to modify LPS with only a single repeat unit was assessed. O-antigen polymerase mutants (*rfc*) of serotype X and Y, were transformed with various serotype converting plasmids and characterised by colony immunoblotting for reactivity to a variety of type and group antisera. In *S. flexneri*, it appears that a single O-antigen repeat unit is sufficient to be modified.

This thesis is dedicated to my parents,

and to my grandmother

Acknowledgments

I would, firstly, like to thank my supervisors Dr. Renato Morona and Professor Paul Manning for the opportunity to work in this area of research. To Renato, I, particularly, thank you for your encouragement and helpful ideas and discussions. I would also like to acknowledge Professor Paul Manning for reading this thesis and for his generosity in lending me the laptop on which this thesis was written.

To the members of the "Shigella group", Luisa Van den Bosch, Craig Daniels and Elizabeth Parker, I extend my extreme gratitude and appreciation for the sharing of resources and many interesting discussions. To the remainder of the MPU, it has been a real honour to work with some fine scientists and to experience the assistance and humour of such a unique collection of individuals.

To the many departmental members, past and present, who have made a significant impact on my life during the course of this study, I extend my thanks. In particular, Debbie Charter, Elena Voss, Angelo and Evi Guidolin and Vincent Collins. To fellow (ex) students-in-arms, David Ogunniyi, Edward Bertram, Rebecca Pinyon and Jon Iredell, who have shared the ups and downs of the project as well as copious amounts of coffee and cake. Thankyou.

This study was funded with the support of the Faculty of Science scholarship. In addition, I would like to thank Alex Lech, (Microbiology and Immunology) for the opportunity to teach and Carole Gannon (Medicine) for the opportunity to learn.

I would especially like to thank my good friends Joanna Rentis and Paul Pehlivanides, who kept me sane with 'Tuesday' night sessions and for their interest and offers of help. Many thanks also to Sean Geary and Michael Maeorg for heartfelt and interesting conversations about everything.

Monica Ogierman, who has seen the best and worst of a student and a friend. Thankyou for your support, understanding and wonderful friendship. I will always remember you for being the sort of person who laughs so hard you have to sit on the floor, sings off-key really loudly and who enjoys herself in any situation.

To my parents, I thank you both for your endless love and encouragement, your unshakeable faith in me and for teaching me that everything is possible. I can not express my gratitude to you for everything you have done. Ευχαριστω πολυ. To my family, Con, Paul and Jenny, thankyou all for the words of encouragement and advice, the ever-present laughter and your unique (sick) sense of humour.

To the Campbell family, in particular Mr. and Mrs. Campbell, thank you for the warmth and welcome you have shown me and for the interest you have expressed in my studies over the last year.

Finally, Matthew Campbell, my best friend,.....thankyou.

Abbreviations

A:	adenine
A_{260}:	absorbance at 260nm
aa:	amino acid
ACP:	acyl carrier protei
ACL:	antigen carrier lipid (bactoprenol)
Ap:	ampicillin
ATP:	adenosine-5'-triphosphate
bp:	base pair
BSA:	bovine serum albumin
C:	cytosine
CIP:	calf intestinal phosphatase
Cm:	chloramphenicol
CTP:	cytosine-5'-triphosphate
DIG:	digoxigenin
DNA:	deoxyribonucleic acid
DNase:	deoxyribonuclease
dNTP:	deoxyribonucleoside triphosphate
ddNTP:	dideoxyribonucleoside triphosphate
DO:	deoxycholate
DTT:	dithiothreitol
ECA:	enterobacterial common antigen
EDTA:	ethylene-diamine-tetra-acetic acid
EtBr:	ethidium bromide
G:	guanine
Gm:	gentamycin
GTP:	guanine-5'-triphosphate
HRP:	horse radish peroxidase

IM:	inner membrane
IPTG:	isopropyl-β-D-thiogalactopyranoside
kb:	kilobase pairs
kDa:	kilodalton
KDO:	keto-3-deoxy-D-manno-octulosonic acid
Km:	kanamycin
LA:	luria agar
lacZ:	β-galactosidase
LB:	luria broth
LPS:	lipopolysaccharide
mg:	milligram
ml:	millilitre
mM:	millimolar
mRNA:	messenger RNA
MQ:	milli Q water
NA:	nutrient agar
NB:	nutrient broth
nt:	nucleotide
OD:	optical density
oligo:	oligodeoxynucleotide
OM:	outer membrane
ORF:	open reading frame
PAGE:	polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis
PCR:	polymerase chain reaction
PEG:	polyethylene glycol -8000
peri:	periplasm
pfu:	plaque forming units
***phoA*:**	alkaline phosphatase
^{R}:	resistant
R-LPS:	rough LPS;

RBS: ribosome binding site

RNA: riobonucleic acid

RNase: ribonuclease

rpm: revolutions per minute

RT: room temperature

^{s}: sensitive

SD: Shine-Dalgarno

SDS: sodium dodecyl sulphate

S-LPS: smooth LPS;

SR-LPS: semi-rough LPS;

Sm: streptonycin

Sp: spectinomycin

sv: serovar

T: thymine

TBS: Tris-buffered saline

Tc: tetracycline

TEMED: N,N,N',N'-tetramethyl-ethylene-diamine

Tn: transposon

Tris: Tris (hydroxymethyl) aminomethane

TTBS: Tris-buffered saline with Tween-20 added

TTP: thymine-5'-triphosphate

ts: temperature sensitive

U: uracil

UV: ultraviolet

V: voltage

v/v: volume per volume

wc: whole cells

w/v: weight per volume

X-gal: 5-bromo-4-chloro-3-indolyl-β-galactopyranoside

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER ONE

INTRODUCTION

1.1 Introduction

"Dysentery" was first used by Hippocrates to describe a condition characterised by the frequent passing of stools containing blood and mucus, accompanied by straining and painful defecations. Shigellosis is a localised, ulcerative infection of the colon whose symptoms include fever, abdominal pain and dysentery, and in its most severe form can be fatal, particularly in young children.

1.2 Discovery of *Shigella* species

Dysentery, prior to 1889, had only been attributed to an amoebic cause. An alternative pathogen was first identified when Shiga found he was able to agglutinate the bacillus isolated from the stools of a patient suffering from dysentery, with serum from the same patient. This dysenteric bacillus was initially named *Bacillus dysenteriae*.

Two years later, Flexner discovered local varieties of the dysenteric bacillus on the Philippine islands (Flexner, 1900), however, Shiga's bacillus was found to be distinct from Flexner's bacillus, initially, on the basis of sugar fermentation. Flexner's bacillus fermented both mannose and maltose whilst Shiga's bacillus was unable to ferment mannose and also appeared to be more pathogenic.

1.2.1 Early serotyping of *Shigella flexneri* species

"The opportunity presented by the recent war for a comprehensive study of the dysentery group has been unrivalled" (Andrewes and Inman, 1919).

Up until the first world war, laboratory strains of Shiga's and Flexner's bacilli were few and serological data based on these limited strains was not very definitive. During the war, researchers received strains of dysenteric bacilli from France, Italy, Malta, Singapore, England and the Philippines; it was the first time representative strains from all parts of the world could be compared. Most of the isolates were from the faeces of patients suffering from bacillary dysentery. Little or no cross-reactivity was seen between Flexner's bacillus and Shiga's bacillus, although a high rate of co-agglutination between the isolates of Flexner's bacillus was observed.

In 1919, Andrewes and Inman published a comprehensive study of the serological classification of Flexner's bacillus. The initial classification of this organism was carried out using 21 bacilli and 15 antisera. Agglutination patterns using these limited reagents led to the conclusion that at least 4 antigenic components were present, which could be divided into the groups (or races) V, W, X and Z. Two intermediates were also seen which appeared to be related to more than one of the antigenic groups, and were therefore designated VZ and WX. A potential fifth race, Y, which continued to agglutinate with its immune serum even after absorption with any of the other 4 races, also existed. Andrewes and Inman decided that Y was not to be granted a "race" status and was classified as the most primitive of all the races.

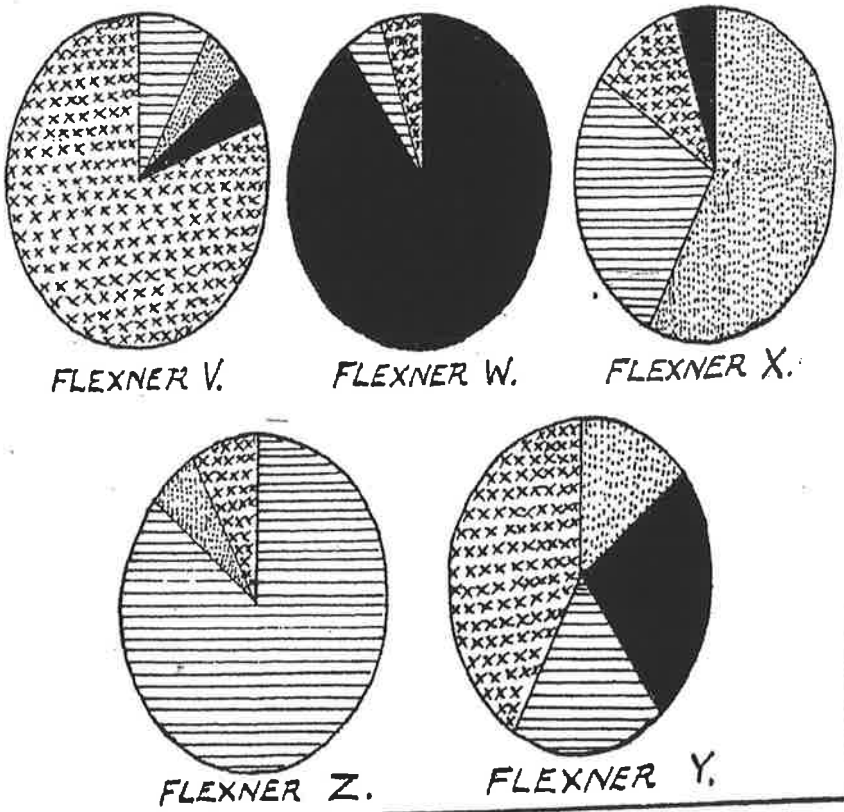
The conclusions drawn from this study were that four races existed: V, W, X and Z, and while each of these comprised a major antigen in addition, they also had minor antigens of each of the other races (Fig. 1.1).

Figure 1.1 Pie diagram of *Shigella flexneri* serotypes V-Z

Major antigens correspond to the patterns in the large area of the circle, group antigens comprise the smaller areas. Each serotype was thought to contain a proportion of antigen of every other serotype (race).

Diagram reproduced from Boyd (1940)

Antigenic Structure of Flexner Group Bacilli.
(After Andrewes & Inman.)



1.2.2 Work of J.S. Boyd

Subsequent work by Major J.S. Boyd revealed a great deal more about the serotypes of *B. dysenteriae* Flexner strains. Boyd revised the work conducted by Andrewes and Inman and added two more groups to the 4 races they identified. Boyd concluded that, in fact, each race possessed a distinguishing "type" antigen and a "group" antigen which may be shared by a race of a different type (Boyd, 1936; 1938; 1940). This explained the co-agglutination initially observed by Andrewes and Inman. Boyd proposed that the V-Z nomenclature be replaced with the type antigen indicated by Roman numerals and the group antigens by Arabic numerals (Boyd, 1940). The W-Z series was now known as types I, II, III, IV, V and VI. (Table 1.1)

An antigen common to all groups, (Boyd, 1940), was named group antigen 1 (Wheeler, 1944a and b). Wheeler determined that the group antigens of the *B. dysenteriae* Flexner group could in fact be separated into 9 different antigens (1-9). This system forms the basis of the typing nomenclature used currently. By the end of the 1950's the *Shigella* Commission (1950) and the International *Enterobacteriaceae* Subcommittee (1954 and 1958) had established a universally accepted nomenclature and classification for all the *Shigella* species based on their serology (Table 1.1).

1.3 *Shigella* species

The *Shigella* species can be divided into 4 groups; A- *dysenteriae*; B- *flexneri*; C-*boydii* and D-*sonnei*. The subdivision is made on the basis of serological and biochemical tests (Edwards and Ewing, 1972; Ewing and Lindberg, 1984). *S. dysenteriae* is recognised as the major cause of epidemic dysentery, due to the toxin it produces which has enterotoxic, cytotoxic and neurotoxic activity (Keusch *et al.*, 1972; Brown *et al.*, 1982; Eiklid and Olsnes,

Table 1.1 Nomenclature of *Shigella flexneri*

Reproduced from Edwards and Ewing (1986)

Species and Subgroup	Subcommittee 1984 [2]	Subcommittee 1958	Shigella Commission 1953	Ewing 1949 (with additions)		Wheeler 1944a	Boyd 1940 1946	English (older) [3]
B *S. flexneri*				Type	Antigenic Formula [7]			
	1a	1a	1a	I	I:4	I	I	V
	1b	1b	1b	I	I:4,6	I		VZ
	2a	2a	2a	II	II:4	IIa	II	W
	2b	2b	2b	II	II: 7, 8, 9	IIb		WX
	3a	3a	3	III	III: 6, 7	III	III	Z
	III: (3, 4), 6, 7, 8							
	3b	3b		III	III: 4, 6, 7			
	III: (3, 4), 6	4a	4a	IV	IV: 4	IV	IV	
	4a	4b	4b	IV	IV: 6	IV		
	4b			IV				
	5a				V:7			
	(V:3, 4)				VI:(4)	V	V	
	5b	5	5	V	-:7, 8, 9	VI	VI	
	6	6	6	VI	-:3, 4	X		X
	X	X	X			Y		Y
	Y	Y	Y					

1983). Ten serotypes of *S. dysenteriae* have been identified. *S. flexneri* has been associated with endemic shigellosis and 12 serotypes have been identified, whereas *S. boydii* has 15 recognised serotypes. *S. sonnei* demonstrates phase variation; phase I exhibits smooth colony form and phase II is intermediate between smooth and rough, the difference being due to the presence or absence of a plasmid encoding O-antigen (Kopecko *et al.*, 1980).

Shigella and *Escherichia* share a large proportion of sequence similarity and are closely related based on biochemical reactions, serological cross reactions and amino acid sequence similarity in proteins (Brenner *et al.*, 1973). *S. flexneri* and *E. coli* K-12 have genome sizes of 2.56 x 10^9 daltons, whilst *S. dysenteriae* is about 5-10% larger, *S. boydii* is about 10% smaller. Certain *E. coli* strains cause clinical illness indistinguishable from shigellosis, with enteroinvasive *E. coli* (EIEC) cross- reacting with *Shigella* antisera (Levine and Edelman, 1984) and displaying similar mechanisms of pathogenesis. Enterohaemorrhagic *E. coli* (EHEC) also produce cytotoxins that resemble the Shiga toxin of *S. dysenteriae* (Konowalchuk *et al.*, 1978; Pupo *et al.*, 1997). However, the two can be differentiated on the basis of serological and biochemical tests.

1.3.1 Epidemiology

Approximately 5 million people per year die of diarrhoeal diseases; 10% of these are caused by bacillary dysentery or shigellosis (Rohde, 1984). Of the four species, *S. dysenteriae* and *S. flexneri* are the predominant types seen in developing countries such as Central Africa, Southeast Asia and India. *S. dysenteriae* type 1 is responsible for most epidemic outbreaks that occur whilst *S. flexneri* is the predominant species in endemic areas (Bennish *et al.*, 1990). Shigellosis can also be a problem in developed countries, especially in environments such as day-care centres, hospitals and institutions. In this instance *S. sonnei* prevails as the dominant species. The mode of transmission is either by the faecal-oral route

or by contaminated foods (Black *et al.*, 1978). The incidence of dysentery was also found to be correlated with the density of houseflies. Flies were found to be responsible for the transmission of *Shigella* (and *E. coli*), resulting in diarrhoea (Cohen *et al.*, 1991). Measures taken to control populations of flies resulted in a decrease in cases of dysentery (Levine and Levine, 1991).

1.4 Lifestyle of *S. flexneri*

S. flexneri is an intracellular bacterial pathogen that has developed mechanisms to facilitate its phagocytosis by host cells, multiply and survive intracellularly, move within the cytoplasm and invade adjacent cells.

Shigella enters the intestinal epithelial cells via specialised structures known as M cells (Fig. 1.2) (Wassef *et al.*, 1989; Zychlinksky *et al.*, 1992; Perdomo *et al.*, 1994). M cells possess an invaginated surface which is covered with less mucous than other structures present in the intestine. This provides a good environment for interaction between the pathogen and the host macrophages and polymorphonuclear cells (PMN) which inhabit the central pocket of the M cell. M cells are located within Peyers patches, found primarily within the small intestine, although equivalent structures exist in the colon (Bye *et al.*, 1984). After entry into M cells, the organism is engulfed by a macrophage and encapsulated within a phagolysosome, from which the organism escapes shortly after. Once in the cytoplasm, multiplication occurs followed by spread to the neighbouring cells.

1.5 Genetics of *Shigella* virulence

The similarity between *Shigella* spp. and *E. coli* K-12 was utilised in the transfer of chromosomal regions by conjugation from one species to the other. Several chromosomal loci

Figure 1.2 Infection of intestinal cells by *Shigella*.

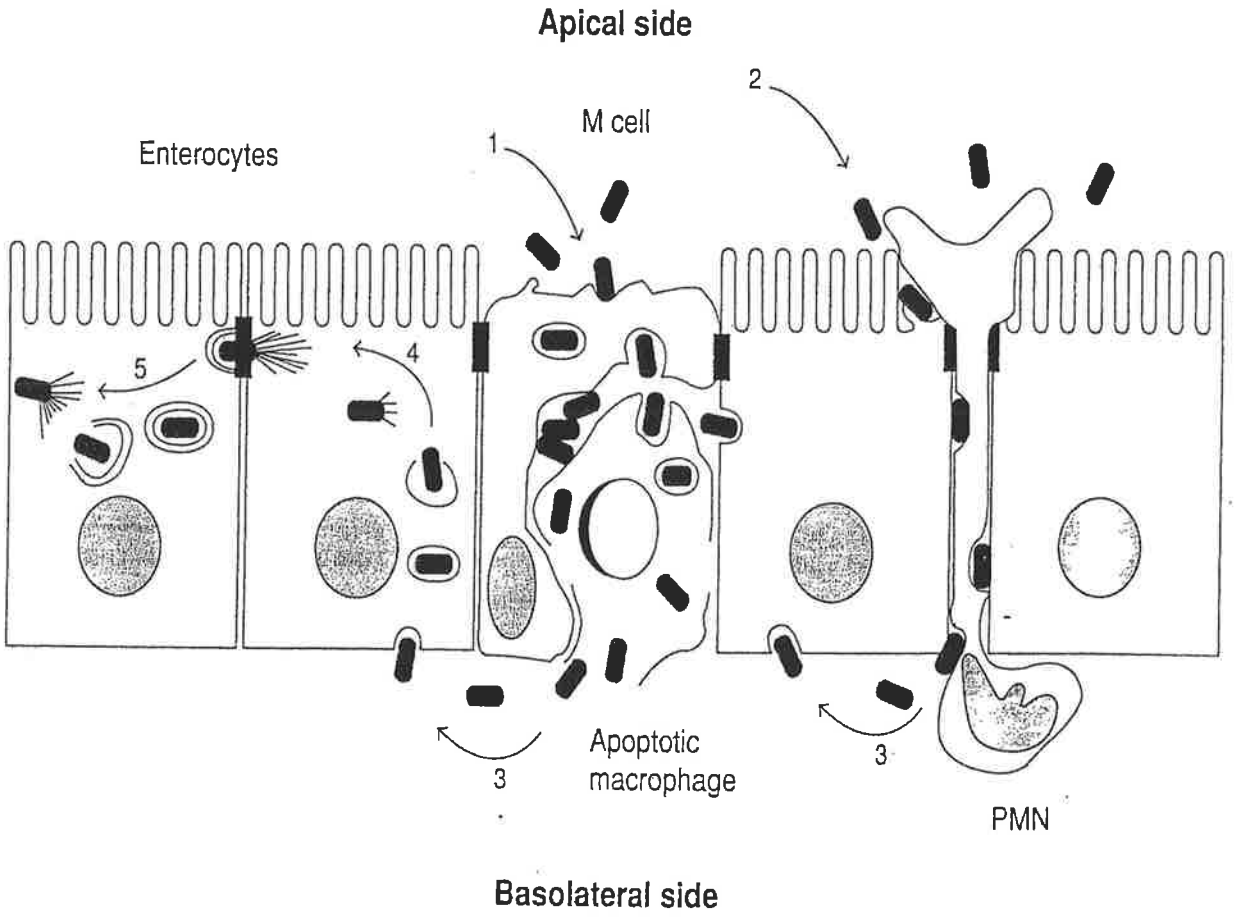
Entry occurs via the M cells where they are phagocytosed by macrophages.

The macrophages are lysed, the bacteria escape and move toward the basolateral surface of the enterocytes.

Inside the epithelial cell, lysis from the vacuole occurs, followed by intracellular multiplication and intercellular spread.

Intercellular spread occurs via the formation of actin tails which propel the bacterium toward the neighbouring cell.

Diagram reproduced from Siebers and Finlay (1995)


Apical side
Enterocytes
M cell
1
2
5
4
3
3
Apoptotic
macrophage
PMN
Basolateral side

have been identified which are involved in the virulence of *Shigella* (Formal *et al.*, 1970; Sansonetti *et al.*, 1983). It was already known that invasion of epithelial cell was required to initiate infection (LaBrec, 1964).

The discovery that the invasive ability of *S. flexneri* strains was plasmid encoded (Sansonetti *et al.*, 1982) enabled research into the actual mechanism of pathogenesis of the organism to progress.

Strains containing the virulence plasmid were found to be capable of invading HeLa cell monolayers and evoking keratoconjunctivitis in guinea pigs (Sansonetti *et al.*, 1982; 1983). Specifically, 31 kb of the 220 kb plasmid (Sasakawa *et al.*, 1988) were found to encode three essential loci: *ipa* (invasion plasmid antigen), *mxi* (membrane expression of invasion plasmid antigen) and *spa* (surface presentation of invasion plasmid antigen) genes. The plasmid is unstable and its loss also correlates with loss of congo red absorption by the organisms (Maurelli *et al.*, 1984a; Schuch and Maurelli, 1997). Chromosomal elements also contribute to virulence either by regulating genes located on the plasmid or by encoding essential structural components.

1.5.1 Chromosomal loci

1.5.1.1 *virR*, a central regulatory locus

The invasive phenotype of *S. flexneri* has been shown to be temperature dependent (Maurelli *et al.*, 1984b), with organisms observed to be invasive at 37°C but not at 30°C. The chromosomally encoded *virR* is responsible for the temperature regulation and is located at 27 minutes between *galU* and *trp* (Maurelli and Sansonetti, 1988b). *virR* is homologous to the *E. coli* gene *hns* (Hromockyj and Maurelli, 1989a; Hromockyj *et al.*, 1992) which regulates the virulence genes by binding to *virF,* inducing supercoiling (Maurelli *et al.*, 1985; Maurelli and Sansonetti, 1988b; Dorman *et al.*, 1990; Maurelli, 1990), and thus repressing transcription

(Tobe *et al.*, 1993). *virF* is a positive regulator of *icsA* (*virG*) and *virB* which activates transcription of the *ipa* genes (Adler *et al.*, 1989; Tobe *et al.*, 1991). Recently, it has been reported that expression of the *virF* and *virB* genes may account for the plasmid instability observed (Schuch and Maurelli, 1997).

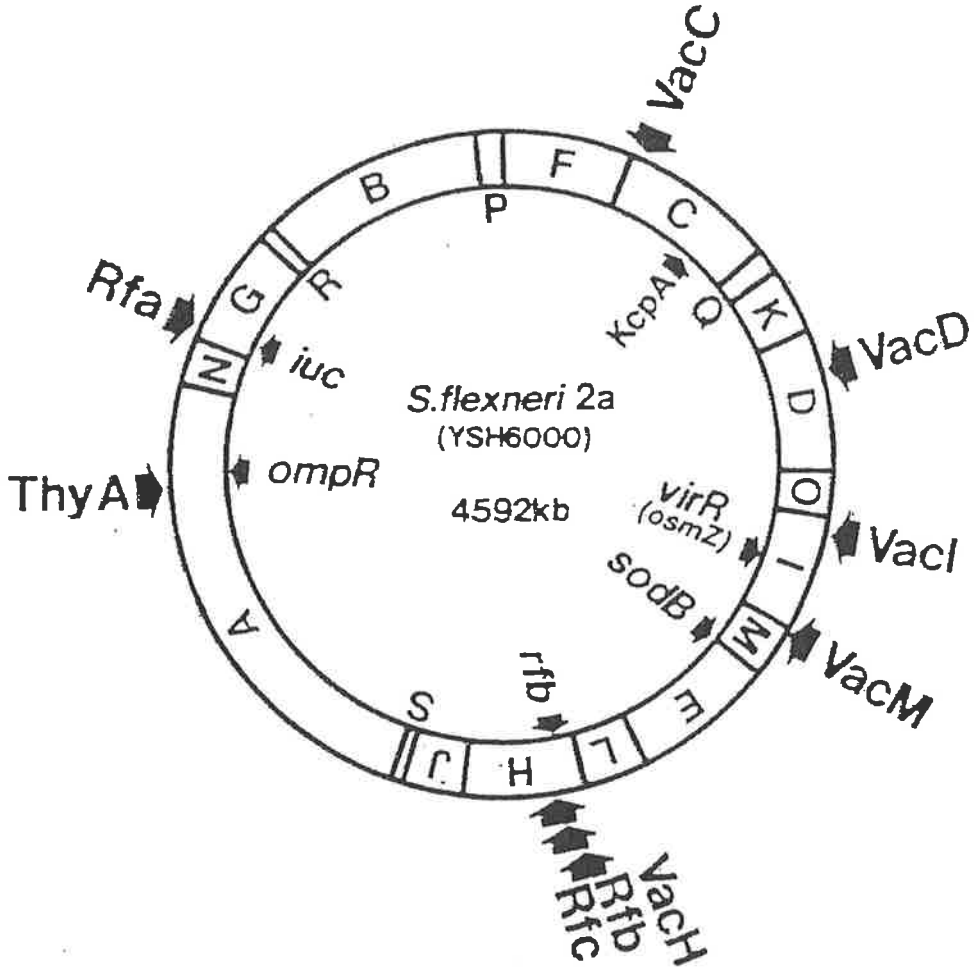
1.5.1.2 Virulence associated chromosomal (*vac*) genes

vacB is a chromosomal gene located near *purA* on *Not*I-B (Okada *et al.*, 1991 a and b) (Fig. 1.3) which affects the production of the Ipa antigens, IpaB, IpaC and IpaD as well as IcsA (VirG) (Tobe *et al.*, 1992). Although, in *vacB* mutants, the production of these antigens has been affected, the levels of mRNA of *ipaB*, *ipaC* and *ipaD* and *virF*, *virB* and *virG* (*icsA*) were normal. It is proposed that VacB acts at the post-transcriptional level, since it likely that it is cytoplasmically located. The mechanism of action of VacB has not yet been determined, however, it may act to stabilise the Vir (VirF and VirB) proteins or be involved in their assembly (Tobe *et al.*, 1992).

vacJ is also a chromosomal gene, that maps to the J segment of the *Not*I map of *S. flexneri* (Okada *et al.*, 1991a) (Fig. 1.3) and appears to be essential for lysis of the double membrane once the organism has invaded the adjacent cell. *vacJ* mutants are capable of forming membrane protrusions containing bacteria, but are unable to move from the protrusions into the adjacent cells (Suzuki *et al.*, 1994). IcsB has been identified that is responsible for the lysis of this double membrane (Allaoui *et al.*, 1992), and as with VacJ, a mechanism has not yet been determined. VacJ was found to be a lipoprotein which is expressed on the bacterial surface and may either be directly involved in lysis of the membrane or may act to mediate the transport of another protein which lyses the membranes (Suzuki *et al.*, 1994).

Figure 1.3 *Not*I restriction map of the virulence plasmid of *Shigella flexneri* strain YSH6000.

The circularised assignment of the eight virulence- associated loci determined by Okada *et al.*, 1991b (outside map). The other virulence- associated loci reported in other studies are shown inside the map; *virR* (Maurelli and Sansonetti, 1988a), *osmZ* (Dorman *et al.*, 1990), *rfb* (Sansonetti *et al.*, 1983), *ompR* (Bernardini *et al.*, 1990), *sodB* (Franzon *et al.*, 1990) and *iuc* (Nassif *et al.*, 1987). Figure is modified from Okada *et al* (1991b) and (Rajakumar *et al.*, 1994). Two other virulence loci, VacB and VacJ, have been mapped to *Not*I fragments B and J, respectively (Tobe *et al.*, 1992, Suzuki *et al.*, 1994).


VacC
VacD
VacI
VacM
VacH
RfbRfc
Rfa
ThyA
S.flexneri 2a
(YSH6000)
4592kb
iuc
ompR
kcpA
virR
(osmZ)
sodB
rfb
P
F
C
Q
K
D
O
I
M
L
H
J
S
A
N
G
R
B

1.5.1.3 Outer membrane protein C (OmpC)

E. coli responds to changes in the osmotic strength of the environment by changing the ratio of outer membrane proteins OmpF and OmpC (Lugtenberg *et al.*, 1976; van Alphen *et al.*, 1977). The two component regulatory system, *envZ /ompR*, contributes to the transcriptional regulation of *ompC* and *ompF* (Csonka, 1989; Bernardini *et al.*, 1990) by the action of EnvZ, a transmembrane osmolarity sensor, which can phosphorylate OmpR, which acts directly on these genes.

Larger pores are formed by OmpF and predominate at low osmotic strength whereas the smaller pores produced by OmpC predominate at high osmotic strength. Mutations in OmpF did not affect the virulence of the organism, however an *ompC* mutation resulted in reduction of virulence. OmpC deficient mutants were able to lyse the phagocytic vacuole, multiply and move intracellularly by polymerising actin, however, they were unable to form extracellular protrusions. The cytoskeletal rearrangements that are required for bacteria to produce these protrusions, and hence invade adjacent cells, did not occur. OmpC may therefore be involved in the rearrangements of vinculin and fimbrin that are essential for intercellular spread (Bernardini *et al.*, 1993).

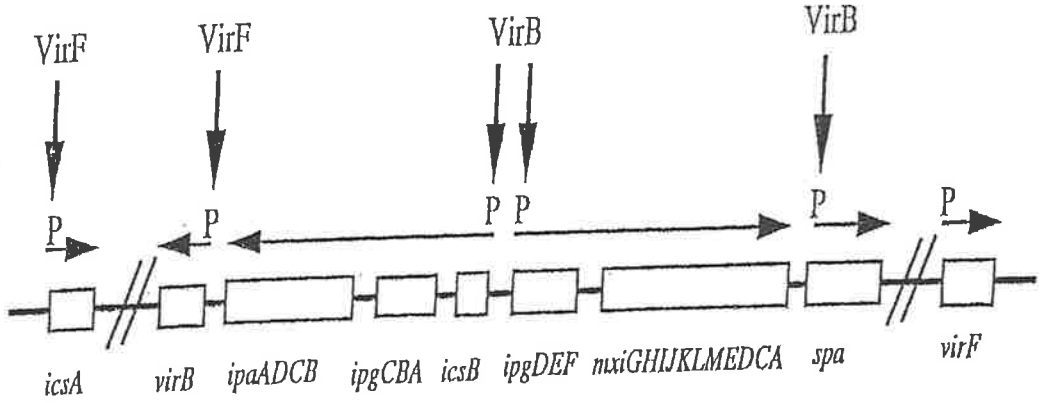
1.6 Plasmid mediated functions

During *Shigella* infections, antibodies produced by the humoral immune response are predominantly directed to the virulence plasmid Ipa antigens (Oaks *et al.*, 1986). The *ipa* region of the virulence plasmid contains 9 genes; *icsB, ipgA, ipgB, ipgC, ipgD, ipaB, ipaC, ipaD* and *ipaA*. The three *ipg* and the four *ipa* genes belong to the same transcriptional unit (Fig. 1.4) (Allaoui *et al.*, 1992; Baudry *et al.*, 1988; Sasakawa *et al.*, 1989). Mutations in any of the three *ipa* genes, *ipaB*, *ipaC* or *ipaD*, result in loss of invasive ability, including escape

Figure 1.4 Schematic map of the 31 kb virulence region on the *S. flexneri* 230 kb plasmid and unlinked virulence genes *virF* and *icsA*.

The orientation of transcription is indicated by horizontal arrows, and the locations of promoters (P) are marked. The vertical arrows represent the points of input for the positive regulatory proteins VirF and VirB.

Diagram has been modified from Porter and Dorman (1997)


VirF
VirF
VirB
VirB
P
P
P P
P
P
icsA
virB
ipaADCB
ipgCBA
icsB
ipgDEF
mxiGHIJKLMEDCA
spa
virF

from the phagosome, and lack of even low levels of actin polymerisation (Ménard *et al.*, 1993).

1.6.1 Adhesion of bacteria to cell surface

Release of the Ipa proteins, via the Mxi/Spa type III secretion system, into the external medium has been demonstrated by many groups (Mills *et al.*, 1988; Hromockyj and Maurelli, 1989b; Andrews *et al.*, 1991; Andrews and Maurelli, 1992; Venkatesan *et al.*, 1992; Allaoui *et al.*, 1993; Sasakawa *et al.*, 1993; Watarai *et al.*, 1995). The IpaB, IpaC and IpaD proteins, have been shown to be released upon contact of the pathogen with the host cell (Watarai *et al.*, 1995), in particular, the $\alpha_5\beta_1$ integrin molecules on the epithelial cell surface (Watarai *et al.*, 1996). This interaction, in turn, results in the phosphorylation of an integrin regulated focal adhesion kinase (125FAK) which may lead to the cytoskeletal rearrangements required to endocytose the pathogen (Watarai *et al.*, 1996). Interaction of bacteria with components of the extracellular matrix, such as fibronectin, laminin or collagen type IV also stimulates release of the Ipa proteins (Watarai *et al.*, 1995).

Focal adhesion kinase (FAK) is a non-receptor protein-tyrosine kinase (PTK) that associates with integrin receptors and participates in extracellular matrix-mediated signal transduction events. (Schlaepfer *et al.*, 1994).

1.6.2 Entry by induced phagocytosis

Released Ipa proteins, IpaB and IpaC form complexes with each other (Ménard *et al.*, 1994a, b; Ménard *et al.*, 1996). The IpaB/IpaC complex is responsible for initiating the appropriate cytoskeletal rearrangements required to facilitate bacterial uptake. IpgA acts as a chaperone in the cytoplasm to prevent the premature association of IpaB with IpaC (Ménard *et*

al., 1994a). This phenomenon has recently been shown to be growth phase dependent, with bacteria in early exponential phase being six times more invasive than those in stationary phase (Mounier *et al.*, 1997).

Apoptosis mediated by *S. flexneri,* in particular by IpaB, has been documented (Zychlinksky *et al.*, 1992; 1994). However, recently, it has been found that IpaB binds to interleukin-1 beta -converting enzyme (ICE) or a highly homologous protease (Thirumalai *et al.*, 1997). Members of the ICE family proteases are important for cell death by apoptosis (Nicholson *et al.*, 1995; Henkart, 1996). This family of proteases converts the inactive pro-form to an active protease by specific processing at aspartic acid residues (Thornberry *et al.*, 1994). This is possibly the mechanism of action of IpaB (Thirumalai *et al.*, 1997).

1.6.3 Escape from the phagocytic vacuole

Escape from the phagocytic vacuole occurs quickly (Sansonetti *et al.*, 1986) in comparison with other intracellular organisms such as *Salmonella* and *Listeria*. IpaB was found to be responsible for lysis of the phagocytic vacuole and therefore possesses cytotoxic functions in addition to being involved in bacterial entry into macrophages (High *et al.*, 1992).

1.6.4 Intracellular multiplication and spread

Shigella can multiply within the cytoplasm of cells (Sansonetti *et al.*, 1986) after lysis of the phagocytic vacuole has occurred. Once in the cytoplasm, bacteria associate with stress fibres and move toward the cap of the nucleus by a process called organelle-like movement (Olm) (Vasselon *et al.*, 1991).

Host actin filaments are then recruited and polymerised into a unipolar tail (Bernardini *et al.*, 1989; Kadurugamuwa *et al.*, 1991; Prevost *et al.*, 1992). IcsA (VirG) is required to

form the actin tail which is necessary for the ordinarily non-motile shigellae to propel themselves (Bernardini *et al.*, 1989; Lett *et al.*, 1989; Makino *et al.*, 1986; Vasselon *et al.*, 1991; 1992).

Two plasmid encoded genes, *virA* and *virK*, have been identified which affect the ability of the organism to spread intercellularly. *virA* mutants have a decreased invasive capacity and expression of *virG* (*icsA*), however, production of the Ipa proteins is not affected. VirA was found to be secreted by the Mxi/Spa type III secretion system and is under the control of *virB* (Uchiya *et al.*, 1995). *virK* mutants, also reduced in their ability to spread intercellularly, have a greatly reduced level of VirG (IcsA). *virK* is highly conserved across *Shigellae* and enteroinvasive *E. coli* and is thought to play a role in the post-transcriptional regulation of *virG* (Nakata *et al.*, 1992).

1.6.5 Lysis of double membrane surrounding protrusion

The IcsA mediated propulsion moves the organisms through the cytoplasm toward the cell membrane. The membrane- bound bacteria move toward the basolateral surface of the adjacent cell (Mounier *et al.*, 1992) where the filopods are engulfed by the neighbouring cells, resulting in the organisms becoming enclosed within a double membrane. Lysis of this double membrane occurs via the action of the gene product of *icsB* (Allaoui *et al.*, 1992) and the chromosomally encoded *vacJ* (Suzuki *et al.*, 1994). Once the organism is released into the cytoplasm of the new host cell, the entire process begins again.

1.6.6 Biology of IcsA

IcsA has been extensively studied and has been found to be expressed in highest concentration during exponential phase (Goldberg *et al.*, 1994). This molecule localises to

one bacterial pole, and is found as a 120 kDa outer membrane protein (Goldberg *et al.*, 1993). IcsA is also found as a 95 kDa secreted protein and it was previously thought that this form was associated with the actin tail (Goldberg *et al.*, 1993). This was later found to be a 70 kDa protein also present in uninfected host cells identified by a monoclonal antibody recognising glycine-rich boxes (D'Hauteville *et al.*, 1996).

Recently, a protease was discovered responsible for the cleavage of IcsA by recognising a specific sequence SSRRASS, located at nucleotides 754-760, in the 120 kDa form. This protease, SopA (*Shigella* outer membrane protease), cleaves between the two arginine residues (R) and exhibits homology to the outer membrane proteins, OmpT and OmpP (Egile *et al.*, 1997). These results were confirmed by Goldberg and coworkers (Shere *et al.*, 1997) who also identified a protease, IcsP, which functions in the same way and is identical to SopA.

Previously, it was shown that when OmpT was introduced in *Shigella* it led to lack of ability of that strain to spread intercellularly (Pal *et al.*, 1989; Nakata *et al.*, 1993), due to the total degradation of IcsA. It has been hypothesised that SopA functions in the same manner as OmpT, which also cleaves between arginine residues (Grodberg and Dunn, 1988; Sugimura and Nishihara, 1988). SopA may, therefore, be produced at a lower level than OmpT or at a lower specific activity, resulting in cleavage of non-polarly located IcsA from the surface of the bacterium. It had also been noted that IcsA in the 120 kDa form was sufficient to elicit actin polymerisation (Fukuda *et al.*, 1995; Goldberg and Theriot, 1995). Lack of cleavage was shown to result in circumferential localisation of IcsA, which leads to aberrant movement (D'Hauteville *et al.*, 1996). The distribution of IcsA has also been found to be affected by the lipopolysaccharide (Sansonetti *et al.*, 1983; Okada *et al.*, 1991a; Sandlin *et al.*, 1995; 1996; Van den Bosch *et al.*, 1997).

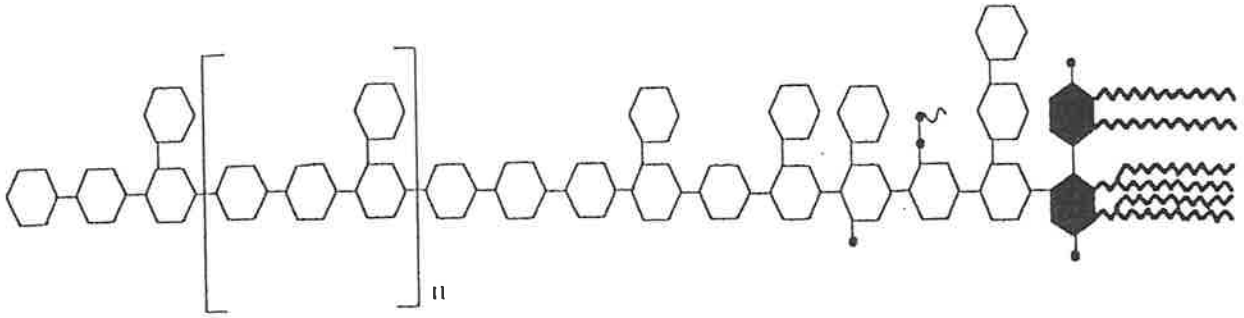
1.7 Lipopolysaccharide (LPS)

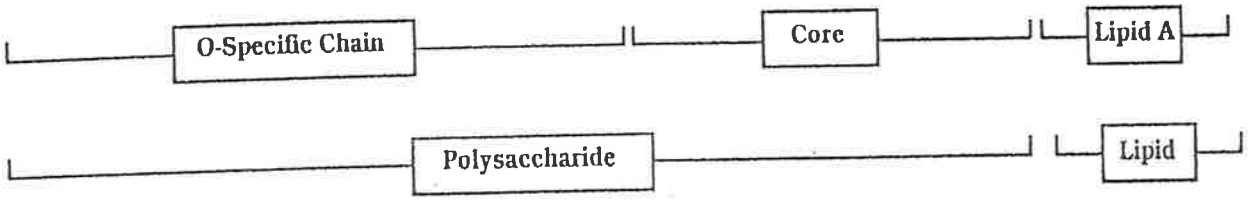
Lipopolysaccharide is a major component of the outer membrane of Gram-negative organisms and consists of three structural regions: lipid A, core oligosaccharide and O-antigen (Fig. 1.5). The lipid A component is responsible for anchoring the LPS to the bacterial cell membrane and also activates the immune system (Galanos *et al.*, 1984; 1985, Kotani *et al.*, 1984), whereas the O antigen imparts serological specificity to the organism. The biosynthesis of LPS has been extensively studied in *S. enterica, E. coli* and *Shigella* (Nikaido *et al.*, 1967; Johnston *et al.*, 1968; Mäkelä and Stocker, 1984; Raetz, 1993, Reeves, 1993, Schnaitmann and Klena, 1993) and will be described in the next section.

Three LPS phenotypes have been described; rough (R), semi-rough (SR) and smooth (S). Each displays specific bacteriophage sensitivity patterns. These phenotypes can also be differentiated by silver staining of LPS samples electrophoresed on SDS polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (SDS-PAGE) gels. R-LPS arises from mutations in the core biosynthetic genes, which results in lipid A- core with no O-antigen attached, whereas SR-LPS has one O antigen unit attached and migrates slightly slower than R-LPS. SR-LPS arises from a mutation in the O antigen polymerase gene (Naide *et al.*, 1965; Morona *et al.*, 1994). The S-LPS, or wild type, phenotype is associated with long O antigen chains attached to the lipid A - core oligosaccharide. A S-LPS ladder is observed on SDS-PAGE gels, indicating that each individual O antigen chain linked to core is of different chain length (Palva and Mäkelä, 1980). A smooth lipopolysaccharide (S-LPS) is required for the virulence phenotype of *Shigella* (Formal *et al.*, 1970; Gemski *et al.*, 1972; Sansonetti *et al.*, 1983; Hale *et al.*, 1984; Okada *et al.*, 1991a; Sandlin *et al.*, 1995; 1996; Van den Bosch *et al.*, 1997) and for protecting the organism from damage induced by the non-specific defense mechanisms of the host (Hong and Payne, 1997).

Figure 1.5 Schematic structure of lipopolysaccharide (LPS).

LPS is comprised of three components; lipid A, core oligosaccharide and O-antigen. Diagram has been modified from Lindberg *et al.*, (1991)


n


O-Specific Chain
Core
Lipid A
Polysaccharide
Lipid

1.7.1 Biosynthesis of LPS

The genetics of LPS biosynthesis have been extensively studied and the location of the genes involved have been determined. Genes involved in lipid A biosynthesis are scattered throughout the chromosome, as many also have a role in other housekeeping functions (Crowell *et al.*, 1987). The old nomenclature for the LPS biosynthetic genes is to be used here (Reeves *et al.*, 1996).

The genes determining core oligosaccharide biosynthesis are found mostly in the *rfa* region (Formal *et al.*, 1970; Petrovskaya and Licheva, 1982; Schnaitman and Klena, 1993), whereas the *rfb* locus encodes for enzymes uniquely involved in the biosynthetic pathway of the nucleotide sugars and the various transferases required for assembly of the O antigen unit (Reeves, 1993).

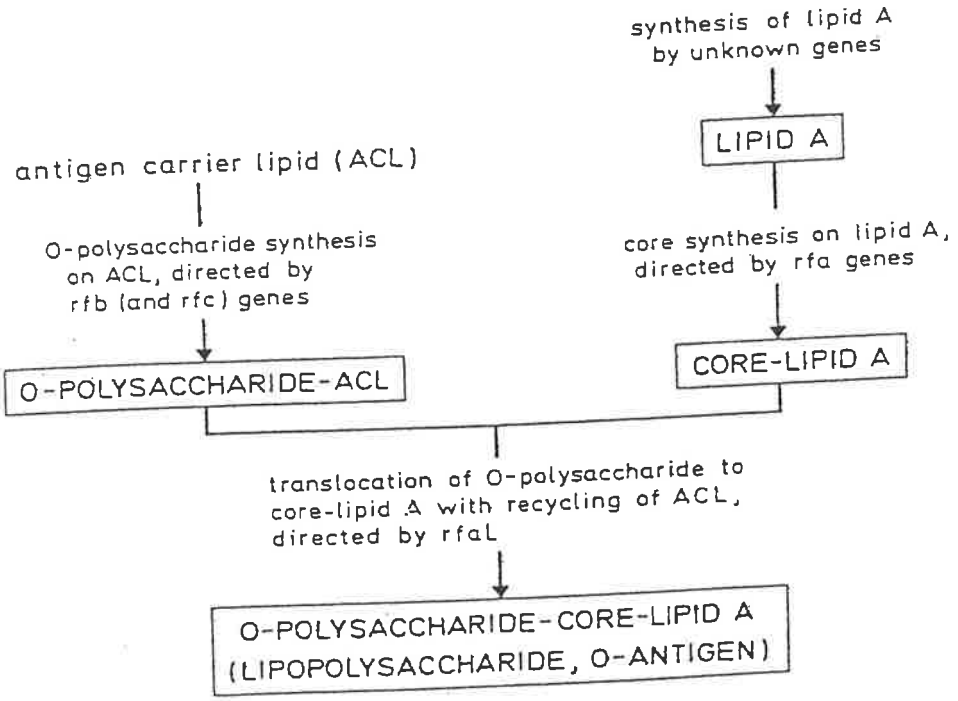
LPS biosynthesis proceeds via two separate pathways, with lipid A and core synthesis combined, and O antigen synthesis occuring independently (Fig. 1.6). The biosynthetic pathway can be summarised: 1) the core oligosaccharide is synthesised on lipid A; 2) individual O-antigen units are synthesised on a lipid carrier (bactoprenol or undecaprenol phosphate); 3) individual ACL-linked O-antigen units are polymerised into long chains; 4) the O-antigen chain is ligated to lipid A- core oligosaccharide (Fig. 1.6) (Jann and Jann, 1984).

Lipid A synthesis begins in the cytoplasm and acts as the lipid carrier for assembly of the core sugars. The individual O units are synthesised onto the carrier, bactoprenol, at the cytoplasmic face of the cytoplasmic membrane (Mulford and Osborn, 1983; Marino *et al.*, 1991; Wang and Reeves, 1994). The lipid A- core and the O units are transported across the inner membrane where the bactoprenol linked O units are polymerised into long chains in the periplasm (McGrath and Osborn, 1991). Ligation of the O antigen chain to the completed core oligosaccharide also occurs at the periplasmic face of the cytoplasmic membrane (Mulford and Osborn, 1983; McGrath and Osborn, 1991) and the completed LPS molecules

Figure 1.6 Pathway of LPS biosynthesis.

Lipid A -core are synthesised in a common pathway, where the lipid A acts as the carrier for the sequential addition of the core sugars. O-units is synthesised in a separate pathway until the first O unit is ligated onto the lipid A -core structure

Diagram has been modified from Jann and Jann (1984)


synthesis of lipid A
by unknown genes
LIPID A
antigen carrier lipid (ACL)
O-polysaccharide synthesis
on ACL, directed by
rfb (and rfc) genes
core synthesis on lipid A,
directed by rfa genes
O-POLYSACCHARIDE-ACL
CORE-LIPID A
translocation of O-polysaccharide to
core-lipid A with recycling of ACL,
directed by rfaL
O-POLYSACCHARIDE-CORE-LIPID A
(LIPOPOLYSACCHARIDE, O-ANTIGEN)

are transported to the outer membrane, although the mechanism for this final process is still unknown (Raetz, 1990).

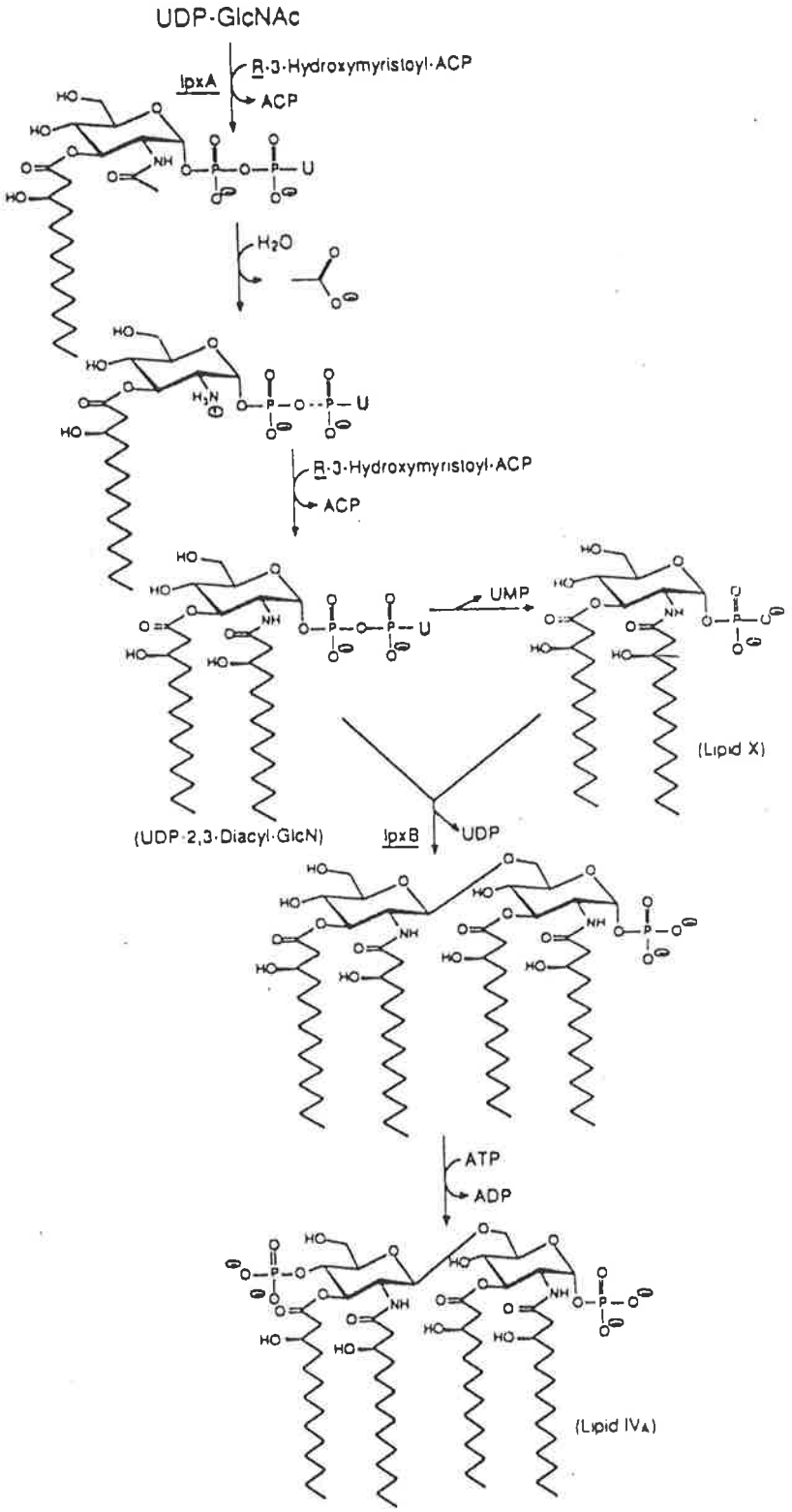
1.7.2 Lipid A- genetics and biosynthesis

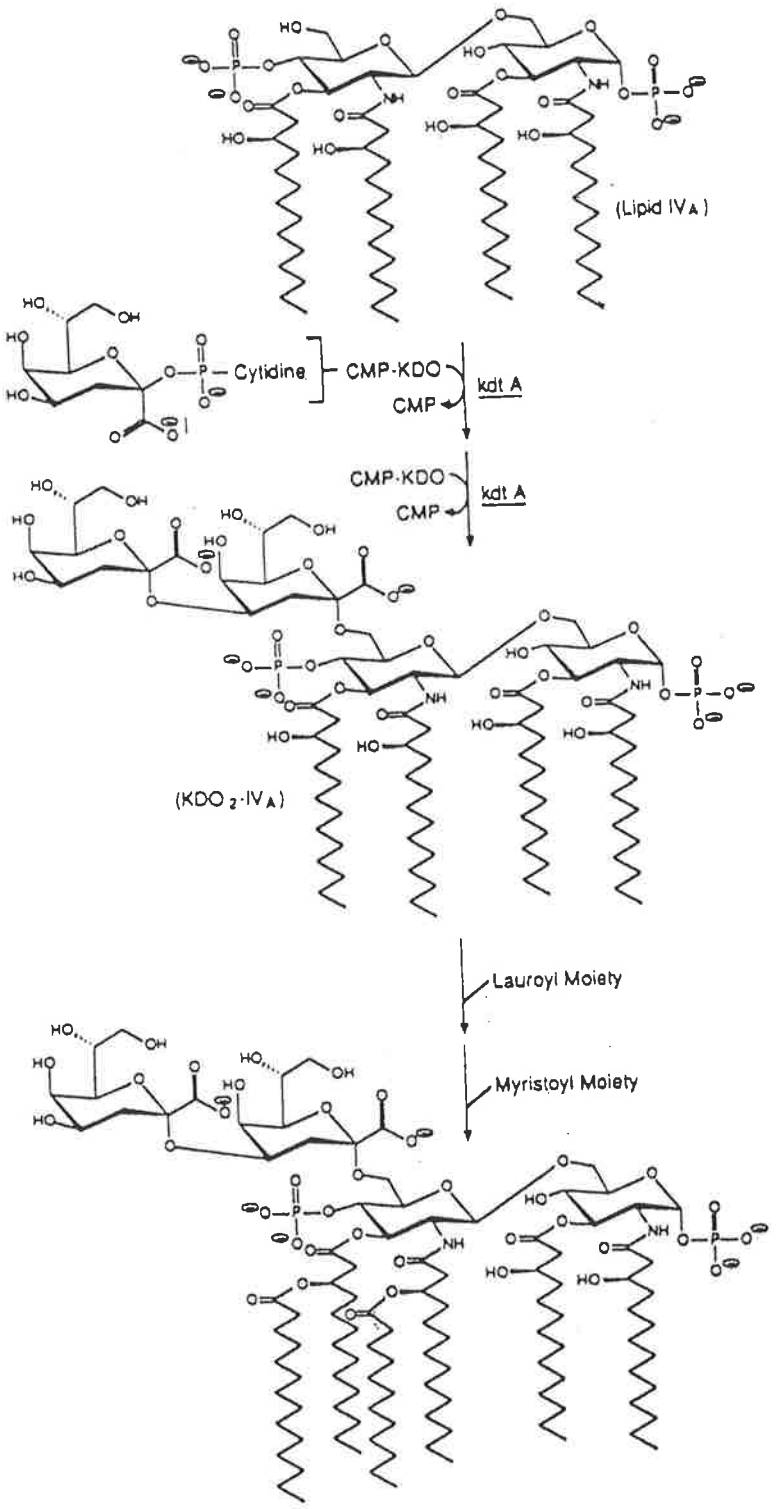
Lipid A has been found to be responsible for the endotoxic effects of LPS (Kadis *et al.*, 1971) and provides structural integrity to the outer membrane of Gram negative organisms (Rietschel *et al.*, 1983; Galanos *et al.*, 1977). Lipid A is a conserved structure composed of a β-1-6 linked di-glucosamine disaccharide (Fig. 1.7). Fatty acids are attached as O- and N-acyl substituents to the glucosamine residues. Whilst the backbone structure of lipid A does not vary greatly within *Enterobacteriaeceae*, the fatty acids attached to the Lipid A disaccharide differ from species to species. Phosphates are usually attached to 4' and 1 position and may serve as linkage points for phosphoethanolamine, D-glucosamine and 4-amino- 4-deoxy- L-arabinose, ethanolamine or phosphate (Schnaitman and Klena, 1993).

The biosynthetic pathway of lipid A was completed upon the discovery of *E. coli* K-12 mutants deficient in phophatidylglycerol, which led to the elucidation of the entire pathway (Ray *et al.*, 1984; Nishijima *et al.*, 1981a and b). The precursors of lipid A biosynthesis are UDP-GlcNAc and R-3-Hydroxymyristoyl-acyl carrier protein which are also incorporated in peptidoglycan and glycerophospholipids, respectively. Initially, an acyl group is transferred from R-3-Hydroxymyristoyl-ACP to UDP-GlcNAc, mediated by LpxA, resulting in an O-acylated UDP-GlcNAc (Anderson and Raetz, 1987; Coleman and Raetz, 1988). The next step involves the N deacetylation of O-acylated UDP-GlcNAc as well as the transfer of a second acyl group from R-3-Hydroxymyristoyl-ACP to form UDP-2,3-diacylglucosamine, carried out by LpxC and LpxD (Crowell *et al.*, 1987). UDP is then removed by one of two pyrophosphatases resulting in the formation of 2,3-diacylglucosamine-1-phosphate also referred to as lipid X (Raetz, 1987, 1990) (Fig. 1.7).

Figure 1.7 Biochemical pathway for the biosynthesis of lipid A and mature lipopolysaccharide.

Key: UDP- GlcNAc, uridine diphosphate N-acetyl-D- glucosamine; ACP, acyl carrier protein (ACL); GlcN, D-glucosamine; CMP-KDO, cystidine monophosphate 2-keto-3-deoxy-D-manno-octulosonic acid (Raetz, 1990)


UDP-GlcNAc
LpxA
R-3-Hydroxymyristoyl-ACP
ACP
H2O
R-3-Hydroxymyristoyl-ACP
ACP
UMP
(Lipid X)
(UDP-2,3-Diacyl-GlcN)
LpxB
UDP
ATP
ADP
(Lipid IVA)


(Lipid IVA)
Cytidine
CMP-KDO
CMP
kdt A
CMP-KDO
CMP
kdt A
(KDO2-IVA)
Lauroyl Moiety
Myristoyl Moiety

One molecule of lipid X and one molecule of UDP-2,3-diacylglucosamine are condensed by LpxB to form β1,6 linked glucosamine disaccharide (Ray *et al.*, 1984; Crowell *et al.*, 1987). Each sugar is substituted with two 3-hydroxymyristoyl groups and which carries a single phosphate residue. A 4' monophosphate is added generating a symmetrical disaccharide with a phosphate at each end. This molecule is known as lipid IV_A (Raetz., 1987).

The extent of substitution of lipid A by phosphates is determined by *pmrA* (Mäkelä *et al.*, 1978; Vaara *et al.*, 1979; Vaara, 1981; Helander *et al.*, 1994). *pmrA/pmrB* share sequence homology with members of the two component regulatory system OmpR and PhoP (Roland *et al.*, 1993; Helander *et al.*, 1994). PhoP/ PhoQ activate the transcription of *pmrA,B*, resulting in the addition of aminoarabinose to lipid A. The modified lipid A was found to alter the response in comparison with wildtype lipid A *in vitro*. The PhoP/Q system is used by *Salmonellae* for environmental sensing and regulation of virulence genes. The lipid A may be modified in different environments *in vivo*, depending upon the expression of the *pmr A,B* genes (Guo *et al.*, 1997)

1.7.3 Core region

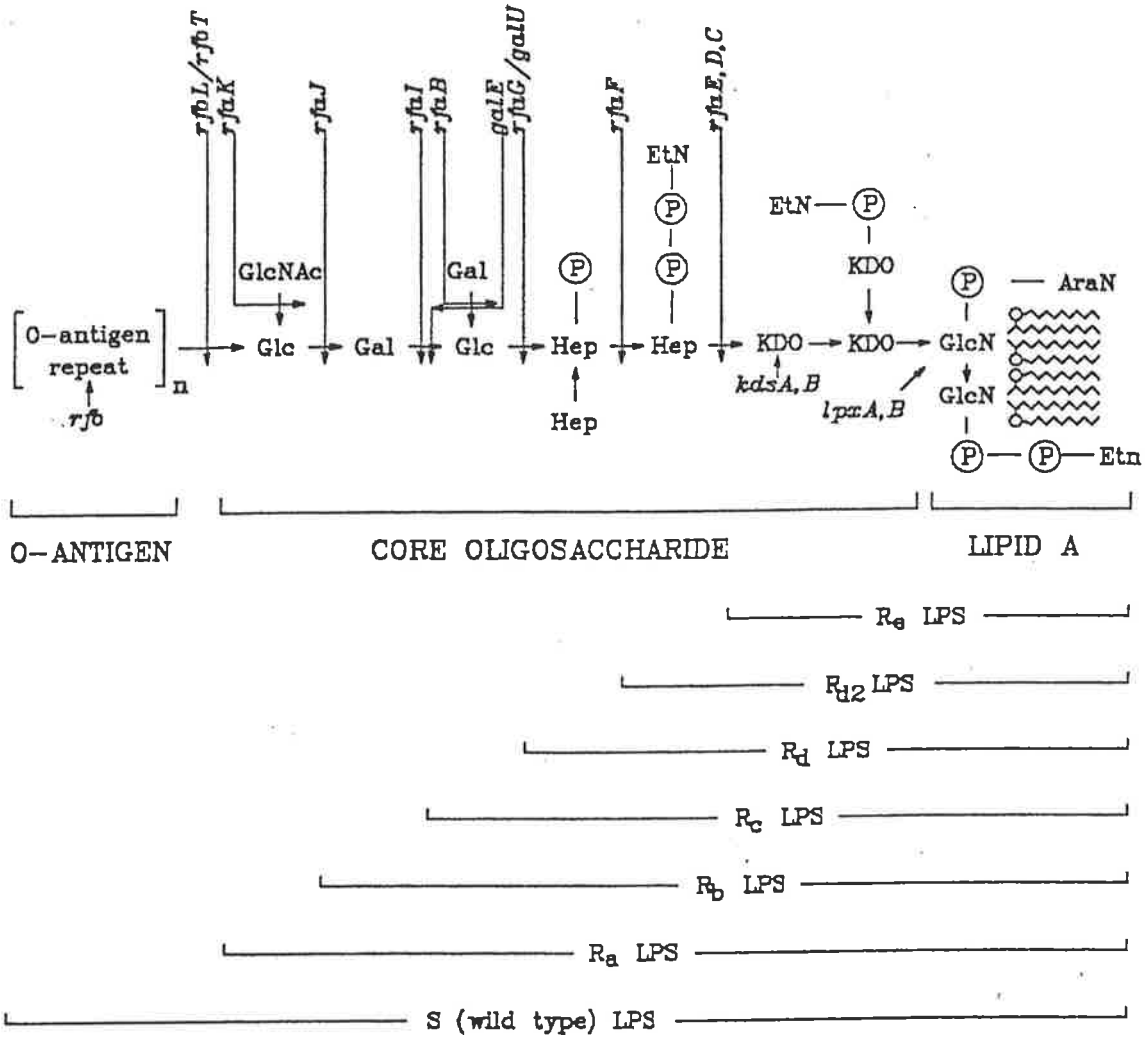
The structure of the core component has been highly conserved across species (Lüderitz *et al.*, 1971; Jansson *et al.*, 1981) (Fig. 1.8). In *E. coli*, five core types have been described (R1-R5), *S. flexneri*, with the exception, of Type 6 produces R3 core (Lindberg *et al.*, 1991). Elucidation of the structure of the core oligosaccharide has been made possible by the existence of LPS mutants defective in biosynthesis. Core can be divided into two regions; inner and outer core (Fig. 1.8).

Figure 1.8 Schematic diagram of the smooth LPS of *Salmonella enterica* sv. Typhimurium

Definition of chemotype variants and genetic loci involved in the biosynthesis of the *S. enterica* sv Typhimurium LPS molecule.

Key: Glc, D-glucose; Gal, D-galactose; GlcN, D-glucosamine; GlcNAc, N-acetyl-D-glucosamine; Hep, L-glycero-D-mannose-heptose; KDO, 2-keto-3-deoxy-D-manno-octulosonic acid; AraN, 4-amino-L-arabinose; P, phosphate; EtN, ethanolamine;

Ra to Re indicate incomplete R form LPS. The arrows with the *rfa*, *rfb*, *lpx*, *kds* and *gal* genes show the location of the enzymatic steps encoded (or putatively encoded) by these genes. Diagram adapted from Lüderitz (1971); Hitchcock *et al.*, (1986) and Raetz (1990).


rfbL/rfbT
rfaK
rfaJ
rfaI
rfaB
galE
rfaG/galU
rfaF
rfaE,D,C
EtN
EtN
KDO
AraN
GlcNAc
Gal
O-antigen repeat
n
rfb
Glc
Gal
Glc
Hep
Hep
Hep
KDO
KDO
GlcN
GlcN
kdsA,B
lpxA,B
Etn
O-ANTIGEN
CORE OLIGOSACCHARIDE
LIPID A
Re LPS
Rd2 LPS
Rd LPS
Rc LPS
Rb LPS
Ra LPS
S (wild type) LPS

1.7.3.1 Inner core: 3-deoxy-D-mannuoctulosonic acid (KDO)

The inner core is composed of 2-3 residues of octulose, which is a sugar unique to this region (KDO) whose function is to link the lipid A component, via an α 2-6' linkage, to the core. KDO is usually linked to two L-glycero-D-manno heptose residues.

Attachment of the first two residues of KDO to lipid IV_A occurs before the final acylation of lipid A (Brozek and Raetz, 1990; Raetz, 1987; Walenga and Osborn, 1980). *kdtA* encodes the gene for a bifunctional enzyme (Belunis and Raetz, 1992) which sequentially transfers two molecules of CMP-KDO to lipid IV_A. KDO-8-phosphate is synthesised by the gene product of the *kdsA* gene (Rick and Young, 1982; Woisetschlager *et al.*, 1988) which is then used in the synthesis of CMP-KDO by KdsB (Goldman *et al.*, 1986). The addition of an α 2,6' linked CMP-KDO to lipid A generates KDO I and the first α-2,4 linked branch KDO residue. KdtA may also be responsible for the addition of subsequent 2,4 linked KDO branches, however, these are added at the stage of the completion of the core region (Rick, 1987).

1.7.3.2 Outer core

The outer core is composed of hexoses, such as glucose, galactose, rhamnose and galactosamine, linked to the heptose of the inner core (Fig. 1.8). Further variation in the outer core is determined by the extent of substitution by phosphate, pyrophosphate and phosphoryl ethanolamine attached to the hexose sugars.

The genes required for the biosynthesis of the core region are referred to as *rfa* genes (Table 1.2). Core is synthesised by sequential addition of sugars to the lipid A -KDO structure. *rfaE* encodes an ADP-heptose synthase and *rfaD* encodes an epimerase which

Table 1.2 *rfa* genes involved in core oligosaccharide biosynthesis in *E. coli* and *S. enterica*

Gene	Protein product/ function[1]	Reference
rfaD	ADP-1-glycero-D-mannoheptose-6-epimerase	Coleman, 1983
rfaC	heptosyl transferase I	Sanderson *et al.*, 1974; Sirisena *et al.*, 1992
rfaF	heptosyl transferase II	Mäkelä and Stocker, 1984
rfaG	UDP-glucosyl transferase I	Creeger and Rothfield, 1979; Parker *et al.*, 1992a, 1992b
rfaI	galactosyl transferase I_{St}/glucosyl transferase II_{Ec}	Creeger and Rothfield, 1979; Carstenius *et al.*, 1990; Pradel *et al.*, 1992
rfaJ	glucosyl transferase II_{St}/ glucosyl transferase III_{Ec}	Creeger and Rothfield, 1979; Carstenius *et al.*, 1990; Pradel *et al.*, 1992
rfaB	galactosyl transferase II_{St}/ galactosyl transferase I_{Ec}	Wollin *et al.*, 1983; Pradel *et al.*, 1992
rfaK	N-acetyl glucosamine transferase	Hellerqvist and Lindberg, 1971; Klena *et al.*, 1992
rfaS	? rhamnosyl transferase	Schnaitman and Klena, 1993
rfaP	phosphate transferase	Mühlradt *et al.*, 1968; Parker *et al.*, 1992a, 1992b
rfaL	O-antigen ligase	Cynkin and Osborn, 1968; Klena *et al.*, 1992
rfaQ	putative transferase	Klena *et al.*, 1992
rfaZ	? core completion?	Maclachlan *et al.*, 1991; Klena *et al.*, 1992
rfaY	? core completion, possibly associated with *rfaJ*	Pradel *et al.*, 1992
rfa15	putative regulator	Roncero and Casadaban, 1992
kdtA	KDO-transferase	Clementz and Raetz, 1991; Belunis *et al.*, 1992
rfaH	? antiterminator or transcriptional activator	Lindberg and Hhellerqvist, 1980; Stocker *et al.*, 1980; Pradel and Schnaitman, 1991
rfaE	heptosyl transferase I	Kuo and Stocker, 1972; Sirisena *et al.*, 1992
galE	UDP-galactose epimerase	Nikaido, 1962; Stocker *et al.*, 1980
galU	UDP-glucose pyrophosphorylase	Nakae and Nikaido, 1971

[1] St, *Salmonella enterica* sv Typhimurium; Ec, *Escherichia coli* K-12

converts ADP-D-glycero-D-manno-heptose to ADP-L-glycero-D-manno-heptose (Kuo and Stocker, 1972; Coleman and Leive, 1979; Coleman, 1983; Mäkelä and Stocker, 1984; Pegues *et al.*, 1990; Sirisena *et al.*, 1992). *rfaC* (Sanderson *et al.*, 1974; Sirisena *et al.*, 1992) and *rfaF* (Sanderson and Saeed, 1972; Sanderson *et al.*, 1974; Mäkelä and Stocker, 1984) both encode heptosyl transferases whose gene products add α 1,5 linked backbone heptose residues (Hep1) to KDO1 and HepII respectively (Wilkinson *et al.*, 1972). Glucose and galactose are sequentially attached to the inner core to provide the structural framework for the outer, or hexose (Fig. 1.8), region of the core by the products of genes *rfaGBIJ* (Creeger and Rothfield, 1979; Carstenius *et al.*, 1990; Pradel *et al.*, 1992; Wollin *et al.*, 1983) whilst *rfaK* (Hellerqvist and Lindberg, 1971; Klena *et al.*, 1992) encodes a protein which is involved in the addition of GlcNAc to the terminal core glucose in *S. typhimurium* and a substituent to a different core site in *E. coli* K-12.

1.7.4 O-antigen

The great diversity of LPS is due to its O-antigen component. It is composed of variable numbers of repeating units of oligosaccharides, the content of which differs greatly within *Enterobacteriaceae*. Much of the understanding of the biosynthesis of O-antigen has been achieved from the study of *S. enterica* sv. Typhimurium (Mäkelä and Stocker, 1984).

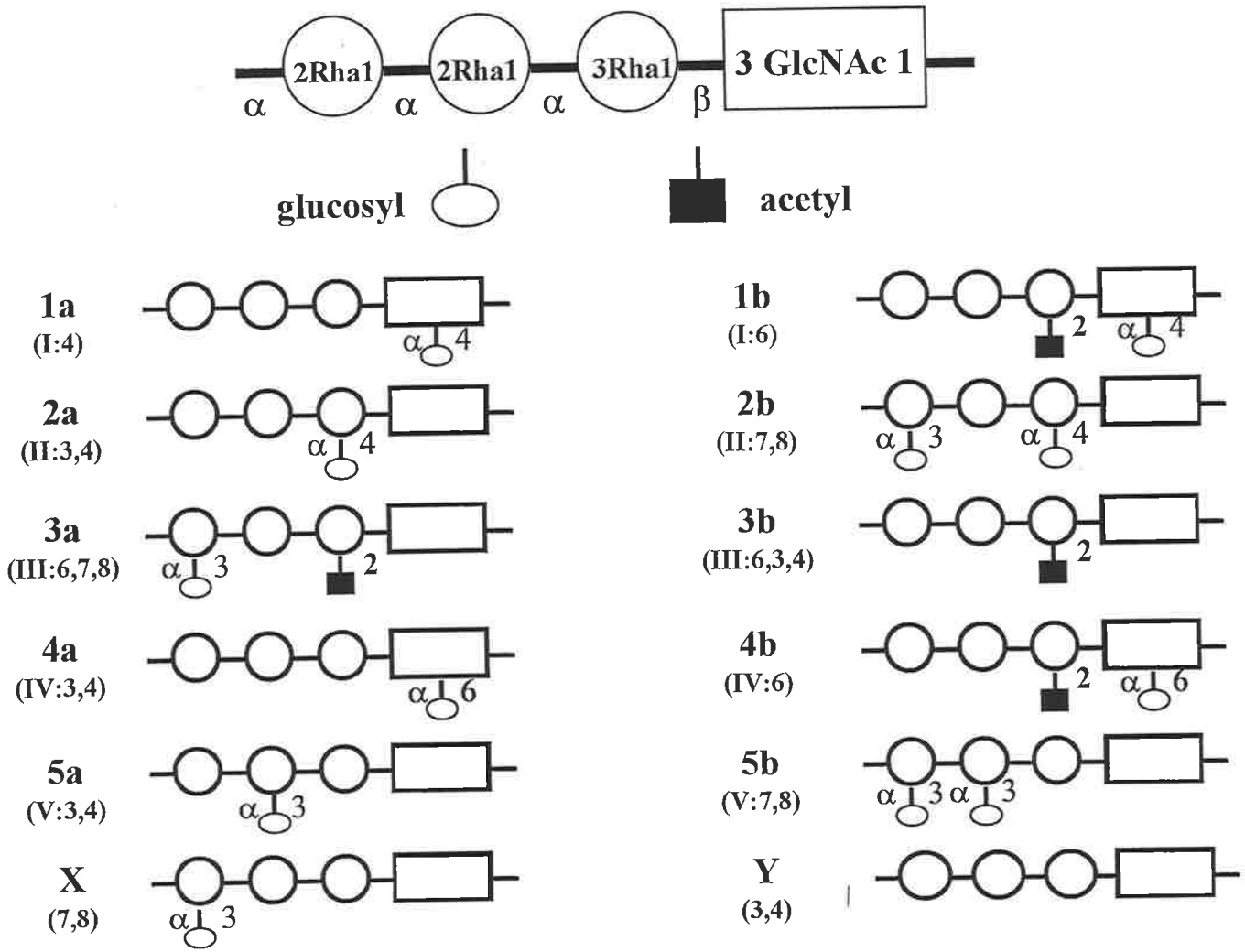
S. flexneri can be divided into approximately 12 serotypes (Fig. 1.9) based on modifications of a tetrasaccharide repeat unit; GlcNAc-Rha-Rha-Rha- (Kenne *et al.*, 1978). These modifications are additions of either glucosyl and/ or O-acetyl groups which are mediated by lysogenisation with temperate bacteriophages.

Figure 1.9 Schematic diagram of the O-antigens of *Shigella flexneri* serotypes.

S. flexneri serotypes 1a, 1b, 2a, 2b, 3a, 3b, 4a, 4b, 5a, 5b and variants X and Y;

Key: Rha, rhamnose; GlcNAc, N-acetyl-D-glucosamine;

Diagram modfied from Carlin and Lindberg (1987).


2Rha1
2Rha1
3Rha1
3 GlcNAc 1
α
α
α
β
glucosyl
acetyl
1a
(I:4)
2a
(II:3,4)
3a
(III:6,7,8)
4a
(IV:3,4)
5a
(V:3,4)
X
(7,8)
1b
(I:6)
2b
(II:7,8)
3b
(III:6,3,4)
4b
(IV:6)
5b
(V:7,8)
Y
(3,4)

1.7.4.1 Genetics of O antigen

The *rfb* gene cluster in *S. enterica* sv. Typhimurium is located at 40 min between the *his* operon and the *cps* genes (Jiang *et al.*, 1991). There are 16 genes within the *rfb* operon; *rfbBCAD,* involved in the synthesis of the nucleotide sugars dTDP-rhamnose (Klena and Schnaitman, 1993; Reeves, 1993; Stevenson *et al.*, 1994), dCDP-abequose (*rfbFGJHI*) (Kessler *et al.*, 1993; Liu *et al.*, 1993; Reeves, 1993) and dGDP-mannose (*rfbMK*) (Stevenson *et al.*, 1991; Xiang *et al.*, 1993; Sugiyama *et al.*, 1994), four sugar transferases (*rfbNUVP*) (Nikaido, 1973; Mäkelä and Stocker, 1984) and *rfbX*, a predicted integral membrane protein (Mäkelä and Stocker, 1984; Jiang *et al.*, 1991; Reeves, 1993; Macpherson *et al.*, 1995).

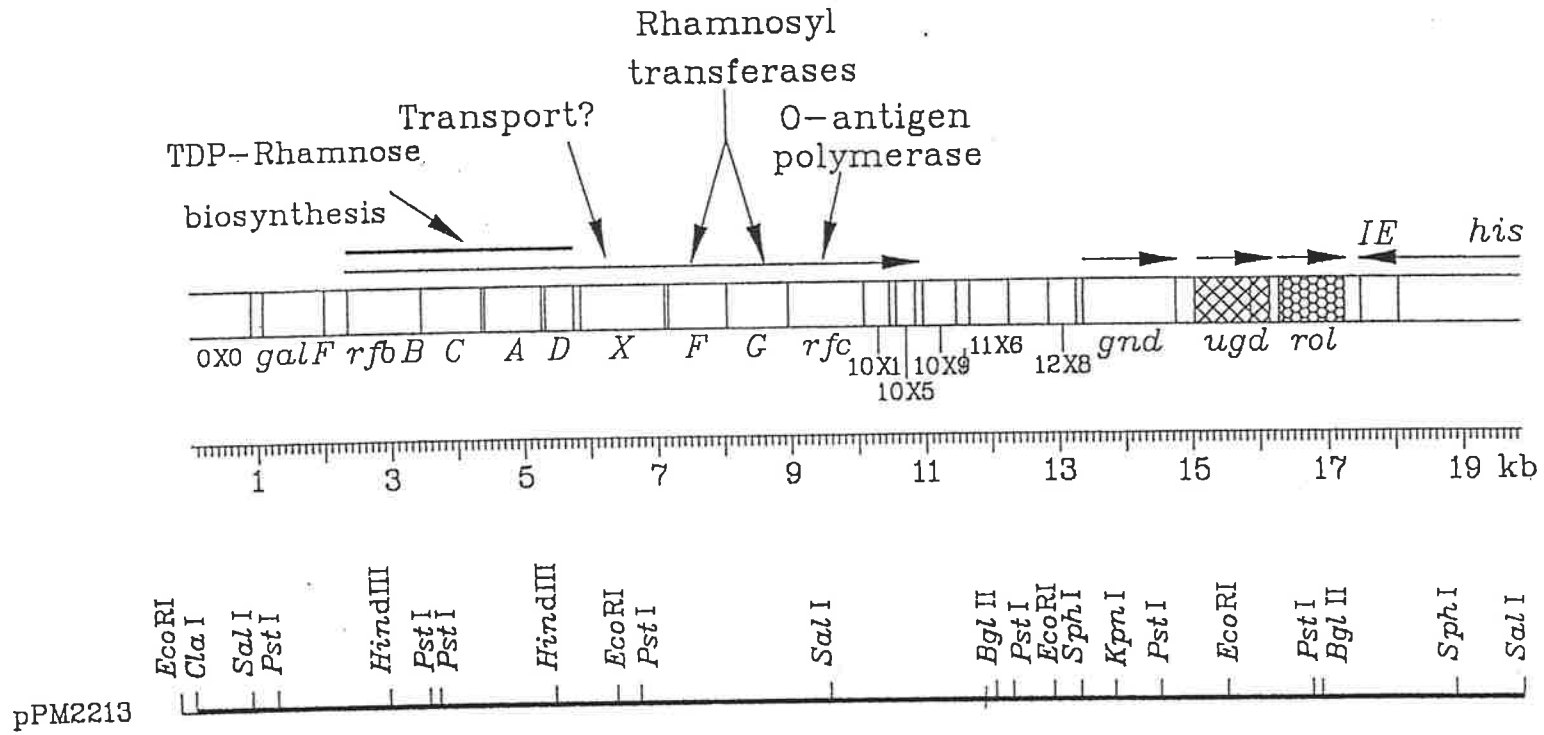
The *rfb* region of *S. flexneri* has been sequenced and characterised (Macpherson *et al.*, 1991; 1994). The organisation of the *rfb* region is similar to that of *S. enterica* (Reeves, 1993), *S. dysenteriae* (Klena and Schnaitman, 1993) and *E. coli* K-12 (Stevenson *et al.*, 1994). The dTDP-rhamnose biosynthetic genes (*rfbB,C,A,D*) are located upstream of the genes involved in assembly (*rfbX, F,G* and *rfc*) (Fig. 1.10). A high degree of homology is seen between *S. flexneri* and *S. enterica* with *rfbB*, *rfbC* and *rfbA* (85%, 81%, and 89% at the amino acid level) and 72% for *rfbD* (Macpherson *et al.*, 1994).

1.7.4.2 O-polysaccharide biosynthesis

Traditionally two pathways have been recognised for O-antigen biosynthesis and these have been classified according to whether or not the O antigen is polymerised by the product of the *rfc* gene (Jann and Jann, 1984; Klena and Schnaitman, 1993; Mäkelä and Stocker, 1984; Rick, 1987). The biosynthesis of O antigen was referred to as *rfc*-dependent or *rfc*-independent.

Figure 1.10 Map of the *rfb* region of *S. flexneri* from the *Cla*I site within *orf0x0* through to the *his* operon. The genes and the ORFs are shown in boxes, the dTDP-rhamnose biosynthetic genes indicated.

Diagram reproduced from Macpherson *et al.*, (1994)


Rhamnosyl
transferases
Transport?
O-antigen
polymerase
TDP-Rhamnose
biosynthesis
IE
his
0X0 galF rfb B C A D X F G rfc
10X1
10X5
10X9
11X6
12X8
gnd
ugd
rol
1
3
5
7
9
11
13
15
17
19 kb
pPM2213
EcoRI
Cla I
Sal I
Pst I
HindIII
Pst I
Pst I
HindIII
EcoRI
Pst I
Sal I
Bgl II
Pst I
EcoRI
Sph I
Kpn I
Pst I
EcoRI
Pst I
Bgl II
Sph I
Sal I

The *rfc* dependent pathway begins with synthesis of the component sugars of the O polysaccharide in the cytoplasm, followed by their assembly into repeat units. In order for polymerisation of these repeat units, into long chains, to occur, they must be translocated across the plasma membrane to the periplasmic face. In this location, they come into contact with the O antigen polymerase, Rfc, which polymerises the repeat units into long chains which are then ligated onto the lipid A- core structure.

Synthesis via the *rfc*- independent pathway is initiated at the cytoplasmic face of the plasma membrane by the *rfe* gene product. Rfe is a N-acetylglucosamine-1-phosphate transferase which transfers a GlcNAc onto the undecaprenol-phosphate carrier to form und-P-P-GlcNAc. This structure acts as a precursor for the biosynthesis of O-antigen and ECA, the enterobacterial common antigen (discussed later). Polymerisation, in this system, occurs without Rfc; sugars of the O antigen are sequentially transferred to the non-reducing end of the polymer. Translocation across the membrane to the periplasmic face is carried out by the ATP-binding cassette transporter (ABC) (Whitfield, 1995) followed by ligation to the lipid A- core occurs.

A third pathway has recently been discovered (Keenleyside and Whitfield, 1995) which is Rfc -independent and only requires the und-P-P-GlcNAc primer synthesised by Rfe. The remaining polymerisation occurs under the direction of the *rfbA* and *rfbB* genes. RfbA adds a single N-acetyl mannosamine sugar to the und-P-P-GlcNAc precursor. RfbB then continually adds glycosyl units to the growing polysaccharide chain. RfbB belongs to a family of enzymes which are believed to have dual function; possessing both transferase and export activity. Hence, it is possible that RfbB acts as a synthase, in polymerising the growing O chain and also may be involved in the export through the plasma membrane since homologues for either RfbX or the ABC transporter system have not been found (Whitfield, 1995).

1.7.4.2.1 Enterobacterial Common Antigen (ECA)

Enterobacterial common antigen is produced by all *Enterobacteriaceae* (Mäkelä and Mayer, 1976; Mayer and Schmidt, 1979; Kuhn *et al.*, 1988). It is an amphipathic molecule consisting of a hydrophilic amino sugar chain linked to a hydrophobic -L-glycerophosphatidyl residue. The sugar chain of ECA has been found to bind to the core in rough LPS mutants (Mayer and Schmidt, 1979; Ramia *et al.*, 1982). The amino sugar chain is composed of three sugars; N-acetyl glucosamine (GlcNAc), N-acetyl mannosaminuronic acid (ManNAcA) and 4-acetamido-4,6-dideoxy-D-galactose (4-FucNAc), and is responsible for the antigenicity of the molecule (Lugowski *et al.*, 1983).

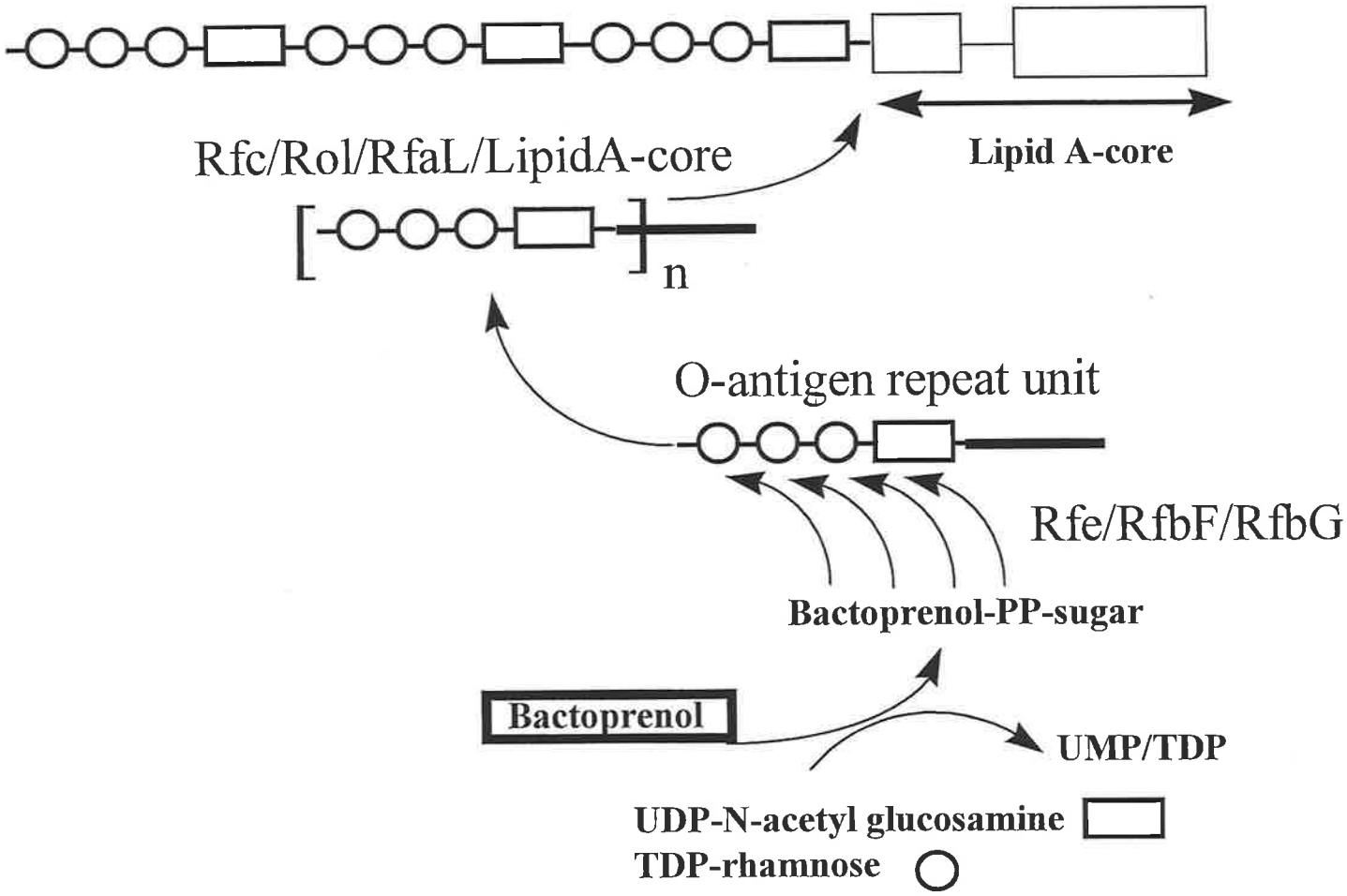
ECA is synthesised under the direction of the *rfe* and *rff* genes (Makela *et al.*, 1970; Mäkelä and Mayer, 1976; Rick and Young, 1982; Schmidt *et al.*, 1976) and in some species *rfb* genes (Mäkelä and Mayer, 1974; Mäkelä *et al.*, 1976; Lew *et al.*, 1986). *rfe* has been shown to also be involved in the biosynthesis of S-LPS in some species (Mäkelä *et al.*, 1974; Schmidt *et al.*, 1976; Mäkelä and Mayer, 1976; Lew *et al.*, 1986; Klena and Schnaitman, 1993; Stevenson *et al.*, 1994) whereas the *rff* locus is dedicated to ECA biosynthesis (Lew *et al.*, 1986).

1.7.4.3 Other genes required for O antigen synthesis

With the elucidation of the pathways for biosynthesis of lipid A, core and O antigen, interest has turned to the the understanding of O antigen export and polymerisation, transfer to lipid A-core and the distribution of the chain length of O antigen. In this respect, four enzymes are of most interest, RfbX (O antigen assembly or transport), Rfc (the O antigen polymerase), RfaL (the O antigen ligase) and Rol (the regulator of O antigen chain length) (Fig. 1.11).

Figure 1.11 Model for mechanism of action of RfbX, Rol and Rfc proteins.

Schematic diagram representing the pathway of LPS biosynthesis and the location of proteins involved in O -unit synthesis (RfbBCAD), and assembly (RfbX, RfbF and RfbG), ligation of the first O-unit to the LipidA -core (RfaL), polymerisation of O units (Rfc) and control of O chain length (Rol)


Rfc/Rol/RfaL/LipidA-core
Lipid A-core
n
O-antigen repeat unit
Rfe/RfbF/RfbG
Bactoprenol-PP-sugar
Bactoprenol
UMP/TDP
UDP-N-acetyl glucosamine
TDP-rhamnose

1.7.4.4 RfbX

The *rfbX* gene is predicted to encode a membrane bound protein with twelve potential transmembrane domains. The most likely role for RfbX in O-antigen biosynthesis is the export of O units to the periplasmic face of the cytoplasmic membrane (Reeves, 1993; Schnaitman and Klena, 1993; Macpherson *et al.*, 1995; Liu *et al.*, 1996). *rfbX* mutants of *S. dysenteriae* 1 were isolated and were found to have an accumulation of undecaprenol pyrophosphate linked O units on the cytoplasmic side of the cytoplasmic membrane, suggesting a flippase activity for RfbX (Liu *et al.*, 1996).

1.7.4.5 RfaL, O-antigen ligase

The O antigen ligase is responsible for the transfer of the growing O antigen chain to the lipid A -core structure (Mäkelä and Stocker, 1984). RfaL proteins from *E. coli* K-12 and *S. enterica* sv. Typhimurium are structurally similar but have little sequence identity (Schnaitman and Klena, 1993). Completion of the core requires the action of RfaK, this is then able to accept the newly synthesised O chains (Schnaitman and Klena, 1993). RfaL of different species can be used to ligate the O antigen of heterologous LPS in the presence of RfaK (Schnaitman and Klena, 1993). This may be due to a requirement for a species- specific completion of the core or it may reflect an interaction between RfaK and RfaL (Whitfield *et al.*, 1997).

1.7.4.6 Rfc, O-antigen polymerase

The *rfc* gene of *S. flexneri* is located inside the *rfb* region (Morona *et al.*, 1994) as is the case for *E. coli* O4 (Lukomski *et al.*, 1996) and *P. aeroginosa* (de Kievit *et al.*, 1995), this

contrasts the situation in *S. typhimurium* (Naide *et al.*, 1965; Stocker and Mäkelä, 1971; Collins and Hackett, 1991). *rfc* lacks its own promoter and is likely to be transcriptionally coupled with the upstream genes (Morona *et al.*, 1994; Lukomski *et al.*, 1996). Rfc proteins of various species share many characteristics; lack of an obvious promoter, the possibility of transcriptional coupling and the predominance of modulating or rare codons in the first 23 amino acids. The molecular mass of the Rfc proteins does not vary greatly either with *S. flexneri* (43.7 kDa), *S. enterica* sv. Typhimurium (47.5 kDa) and *E. coli* O4 (45.5 kDa); all are hydrophobic proteins with twelve potential transmembrane regions (Morona *et al.*, 1994). Despite the functional similarity, the overall sequences are different. In *E. coli* O4, complementation of *rfc* mutations by plasmid borne copies of *rfc* does not restore the phenotype to wildtype. It may be that large amounts of mRNA exhaust the limited pool of rare tRNAs from a high copy number complementing plasmid, in contrast, a poorly transcribed low copy number plasmid would allow translation to be completed (Lukomski *et al.*, 1996).

1.7.4.7 Rol, regulator of O antigen chain length.

LPS of many species exhibit a preference for particular chain lengths, referred to as the modal distribution (Grossman *et al*, 1987; Mills and Timmis, 1988; Goldman and Hunt, 1990. A protein, Rol (Cld), has been found that is responsible for the regulation of O-antigen chain length (Macpherson *et al.*, 1991; Batchelor *et al.*, 1991; Bastin *et al.*, 1993; Morona *et al.*, 1995). The gene encoding this protein, *rol* (*cld*) is located between *his* and *gnd*, near the *rfb* operon (Batchelor *et al.*, 1991; Bastin *et al.*, 1993; Klena and Schnaitman, 1993; Morona *et al.*, 1995) (Fig. 1.10), however, a plasmid-borne copy has also been identified (Stevenson *et al.*, 1995).

The Rol protein is anchored into the cytoplasmic membrane via its amino and carboxy terminal ends, however, the majority of the protein is located in the periplasmic space. Mutations in this protein lead to random lengths of O chains with no modal distribution as seen in wildtype strains. The mechanism by which this process occurs is the subject of debate. It has been suggested that Rol acts as a molecular chaperone which interacts with the RfaL protein to assemble a complex. This complex would give a specific ratio of RfaL to Rfc, altering the overall kinetics of the ligation reaction to give the modal chain length. In the absence of Rol, the ratio of RfaL to Rfc are not fixed and hence random interaction results (Morona *et al.*, 1995).

An alternative proposal for the action of Rol (or Cld) is that it acts in a time dependent manner with Rfc which can exist in two functional states (Bastin *et al.*, 1993). One state favours polymerisation and the other favours transfer to RfaL which then ligates the O chain to the lipid A core. The timing of the polymerisation over transfer is a function of Rfc and the different modal lengths observed result from an alteration in timing of the switching of states. This process is analogous to the mechanism used by ribosomes and fatty acid synthesis (Bastin *et al.*, 1993).

Although Rol proteins can be interchanged, each Rol will still be specific for its modal length and will impart this on any O antigen. This is currently being studied in the development of heterologous vaccines (Klee *et al.*, 1997).

1.8 Lipopolysaccharide and the distribution of IcsA

The importance of smooth LPS (S-LPS) as a virulence factor has been increasingly studied, in particular its role in the correct localisation of IcsA (Gemski *et al.*, 1972; Okamura *et al.*, 1983; Sansonetti *et al.*, 1983; Rajakumar *et al.*, 1994; Sandlin *et al.*, 1995, 1996).

Mutations in LPS biosynthetic genes were found not to affect the ability of *S. flexneri* to invade or to multiply intracellularly but did affect their ability to spread from cell to cell (Okada *et al.*, 1991 a and b). They identified three classes of mutants, those with i) altered core structures, ii) no O antigen (*rfb*) and iii) decreased O antigen chain length (*rfc*).

More recently, the relationship between the distribution of IcsA on the bacterial surface and the requirement for long O chains has been examined specifically (Rajakumar *et al.*, 1994; Sandlin *et al.*, 1995).

To date, many of the LPS mutants studied were spontaneous mutants which had not been characterised at a genotypic level. To demonstrate the role of LPS in the unipolar localisation of IcsA, two defined mutants (*rfe* and *galU*) were constructed. A mutation in *galU*, which acts at the inner core, does not allow the completion of the core or the addition of O antigen and results in the circumferential distribution of IcsA. Mutations in *rfe* results in the inability of the organism to synthesis O antigen and produces an intermediate phenotype, with some polar distribution and some IcsA on the sides of the bacterial body. The *rfe* mutant unlike the *galU* mutant produced small plaques on monolayers, whereas the *galU* mutant produced no plaques at all (Sandlin *et al.*, 1995). It was also demonstrated that the sugar composition (ie. glucosylation) of the O side chain did not affect the localisation of IcsA on the surface, unlike the need for long O chains (Sandlin *et al.*, 1996).

Mutations in *rol* and *rfbD* were constructed in *S. flexneri* of serotype 2a (2457T) by insertional inactivation using a kanamycin cartridge (Van den Bosch *et al.*, 1997). These mutants were examined with respect to distribution of IcsA and virulence. It was observed that the *rol* mutation affected the intra- and inter- cellular spreading ability of the organisms, and the expression of IcsA on the cell surface. *rol* mutants produced little or no IcsA with approximately 10% resembling the parent strain. The properties of the *rfbD* mutant were comparable to the *galU* mutant (Sandlin *et al.*, 1995) however, structurally it resembles the *rfe* mutant. Both mutants were unable to form plaques in HeLa cell monolayers, however, some

F actin tail formation was observed. The *rfbD* mutant had IcsA located over its entire surface, although it was more concentrated at one end (Van den Bosch *et al.*, 1997).

1.9 Chemical understanding of O-antigen of *S. flexneri*

Initially characterisation of the structure of *S. flexneri* O units was carried out using O polysaccharide purified by acid hydrolysis (Simmons, 1969). These polysaccharides were then subjected to chromatography and electrophoresis to determine the components comprising the repeat unit. A ratio of 1:1:2 of the hexose sugars, glucose, N-acetyl glucosamine and rhamnose was determined (Simmons, 1971). However, it was not until Kenne and colleagues carried out methylation studies coupled with techniques such as ^{1}H-NMR and ^{14}C-NMR that the actual composition of the O unit was elucidated (Lindberg *et al.*, 1973; Kenne *et al.*, 1977; 1978).

The molar ratio of L-rhamnose to N-acetylglucosamine was found to be consistently 3:1, and the structure of the basic tetrasaccharide repeat unit:

$$\rightarrow 3)\text{-}\beta\text{-D-GlcNAc-}(1\rightarrow 2)\text{-}\alpha\text{-L-Rha-}(1\rightarrow 2)\text{-}\alpha\text{-L-Rha-}(1\rightarrow 3)\text{-}\alpha\text{-L-Rha-}(1\rightarrow$$

I II III

Polysaccharides were subjected to a) methylation analysis which gives information regarding at which positions the neutral sugar residues are linked, b) N-deacetylation followed by methylation analysis reveals the glycosidic linkage of the modified amino sugar (ie positions through which the particular rhamnose sugar is substituted and c) N-deacetylation, deamination, which gives information on the positions to which the amino sugars are substituted (Kenne *et al.*, 1978).

Substitutions of the basic repeat unit were also determined which result in the type and group antigens (Kenne *et al.*, 1978). Confirmation of these structures was achieved using

monoclonal antibodies by Carlin and coworkers (Carlin *et al.*, 1984; Carlin *et al.*, 1986a; Carlin *et al.*, 1986b; Carlin *et al.*, 1987) (Table 1.3).

The structures that were recognised as the type antigens were determined: type I results from the addition of an α-linked glucose to the C4 of the GlcNAc (Carlin and Lindberg, 1986), type II antigen results from the addition of a glucose residue α-linked to the C4 of RhaIII (Carlin and Lindberg, 1983), type IV antigen is the α-linked glucose to C6 of GlcNAc and type V antigen results from an α-linked glucose to RhaII (Carlin and Lindberg, 1987). The group antigens have also been determined: group 3,4 (Carlin and Lindberg, 1987), group 7,8 resulting from the addition of an α-linked glucose to C3 of RhaI (Carlin and Lindberg, 1986) and the group 6 (Type III) antigen is the O-acetylation via C2 of RhaIII (Carlin and Lindberg, 1986).

1.10 Variation in O antigen

Variations in the O polysaccharide component of LPS of many bacterial species has been extensively studied. The O polysaccharide is the most antigenic component of the LPS and, as such, the most variable. Antigenic variation serves to enhance the virulence of the organism and to protect it from host response mechanisms. Many mechanisms exist by which alterations in O antigen can occur, including lysogenisation by temperate bacteriophages, spontaneous mutations in genes and horizontal gene transfer.

1.10.1 *Vibrio cholerae* and serotype conversion

V. cholerae can be divided into either the classical or the El Tor biotypes (Freeley, 1965; Sen *et al.*, 1979) which in turn can be further subdivided into different serotypes, Inaba

Table 1.3 Molecular structures of *S. flexneri* antigenic determinants

S. flexneri factor	Structure of determinant
I	α-glucosyl-(1→4)-β-N-acetylglucosamine
II	α-glucosyl-(1→4)-α–rhamnose (III)
III	2-O-acetyl-α-rhamnosyl-(1→3)-β-N-acetylglucosamine
IV	α-glucosyl-(1→6)-β-N-acetylglucosamine
V	α-glucosyl-(1→3)-α-rhamnose (II)
6	same as antigen III
7,8	α-glucosyl-(1→3)-α-rhamnose (I)

(reproduced from Simmons, 1986)

and Ogawa and the rarer Hikojima. The differentiation of these serotypes is determined by the expression of the antigens A, B and C. Inaba strains express A and C antigens, whereas Ogawa strains express A, B and some C antigens, Hikojima express high levels of all three antigens, however, these strains are unstable (Sakazaki and Tamura, 1971).

Interconversion between serotypes can occur, with Inaba strains gaining the ability to express B antigen and hence becoming Ogawa and Ogawa losing the B antigen and hence becoming Inaba. The latter being the most common conversion to occur (Shrivastava and White, 1947; Bhaskaran and Gorrill, 1957; Sheehy *et al.*, 1966; Nobechi and Nakamo, 1967).

Recently, a single gene, *rfbT*, was identified that was found to be responsible for the serotype switching observed in *V. cholerae* (Stroeher *et al.*, 1992). The *rfbT* gene is contained in both Inaba and Ogawa serotypes, however, differences between these genes results in the loss of expression of the B antigen in the Inaba serotype. Inaba strains arise from mutations in *rfbT* of Ogawa which results in a non-functional product. The reverse change requires a series of precise mutations and is less common (Stroeher *et al.*, 1992).

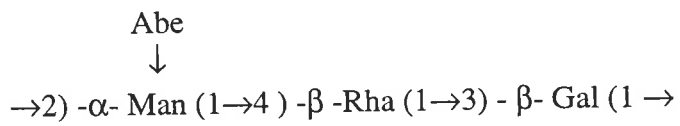
1.10.1.1 *V. cholerae* O139

Traditionally, epidemics due to *V. cholerae* have been caused by strains of serotype O1, the recent cholera epidemic, however, was caused by a strain of a new serotype, O139 (Shimada *et al.*, 1992). Genetic analyses of strains of this serotype led to the hypothesis that the O139 serotype arose from the transfer of DNA from a non-O1 to an O1 strain (Morris, 1994; Bik *et al.*, 1995). The evidence for this was based upon the identification of a locus named *otn* possessing 7 open reading frames. Two genes *otnA* and *otnB* previously thought to be involved in O antigen biosynthesis were mutated and found to affect capsule synthesis. *otnA* and *otnB* were also identified in *V. cholerae* O69 and O141 serotypes (Bik *et al.*, 1995; 1996)

The genes required for antigenic diversity were encoded by the *rfb* genes found to be linked to *rfaD* and located distal to the *otn* region (Stroeher *et al.*, 1997). The *rfb* region was sequenced and contains genes homologous to *rfb* genes of different serotypes. The *otn* region was found to be flanked by sequences homologous to O1 *rfb* DNA which may have been the sites involved in the recombination event which transferred the novel DNA into the O1 strain resulting in the O139 serotype (Stroeher *et al.*, 1997).

1.10.2 *Salmonella enterica* serovar Typhimurium and serotypic variation

Form variation of O antigens have been well characterised in *Salmonella enterica* sv. Typhimurium (Zinder, 1957). The structure of the repeat unit is:



O antigen factor 12_2 arises from the addition of an α–linked glucose residue onto the C4 of the galactose residue of the repeat unit (Tinelli and Staub, 1960; Hellerqvist *et al.*, 1969). Glucosylation of the galactose residue is not an essential step in the biosynthetic pathway of O unit and in fact it is an unstable phenotype, alternating between a 12_2 positive (12_2 +) form to a 12_2 negative (12_2 -) form (Kauffmann, 1941). The gene *oafR* has been found to be associated with the 12_2 glucosylating genes (Mäkelä and Mäkelä, 1966; Mäkelä, 1973) however, the molecular mechanism of this modification is still unknown (Helander *et al.*, 1992).

The abequose side group of the repeat unit is acetylated, conferring the O5 serotype (Slauch *et al.*, 1995). Recently, a gene *oafA* was identified which is repsonsible for this O-acetylation. Mutation in *oafA* results in the loss of the O-acetyl group and hence a change in serotype, however, virulence is not affected. *oafA* exhibits homology to the O-acetylase gene, *oac*, of *S. flexneri* bacteriophage Sf6 and the *nodX* gene of *Rhizobium legumonsarum*.

Linkage analyses determined *oac* to map at 48.5 min near the *rfb* region at 45 min (Slauch *et al.*, 1995).

2OAcAbe
↓ factor O5
→2) -α- Man (1→4) -β -Rha (1→3) - β- Gal (1 →

A second type of form variation exists in *S. enterica* sv. Typhimurium which also involves the α–linked glucosylation of the galactose residue, however, this linkage is attached to C6 (Iwashita and Kanegasaki, 1973). This modification was found to be the result of lysogenisation by bacteriophage P22 which recognises O antigen (Zinder, 1958; Eriksson and Lindberg, 1977; Kita and Nikaido, 1973; Israel *et al.*, 1972; Iwashita and Kanegasaki, 1976) (Fig. 1.12). Changes in O unit structure to express either $O12_2$ or O antigen factor 1 result in the inability of P22 to infect the strain (Iwashita and Kanegasaki, 1973). Neither of these antigens is normally fully expressed in the bacteria.

Abe Glc 1
↓ ↓ 4 factor 12_2
→2) -α- Man (1→4) -β -Rha (1→3) - β- Gal (1 →

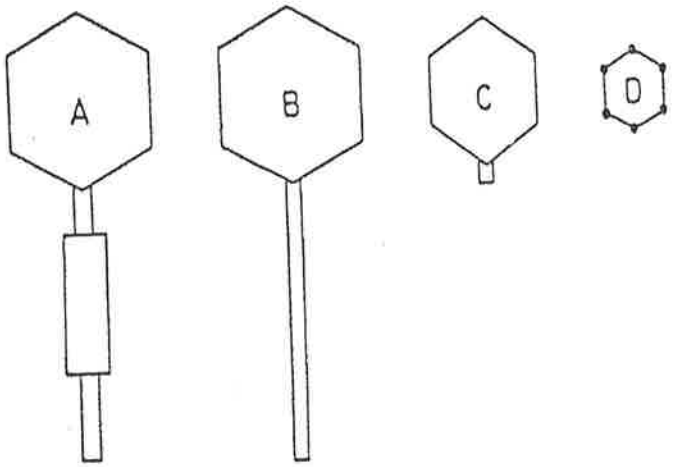
Abe Glc 1
↓ ↓ 6 factor 1
→2) -α- Man (1→4) -β -Rha (1→3) - β- Gal (1 →

1.11 Bacteriophages which have their receptor in the O-antigen

To date, serotype converting bacteriophages which recognise the O antigen as a receptor all belong to the group C of the Bradley classification (Fig. 1.12) (Lindberg, 1977). Members of this group possess a hexagonal shaped head and a small tail with tail spikes attached (Bradley, 1967). The best characterised members of this group include bacteriophage P22 which lysogenises *S. enterica* sv. Typhimurium (Vieu *et al.*, 1965; Israel *et al.*, 1967;

Figure 1.12 Basic morphological types of bacteriophages.

Diagram is reproduced from Bradley (1967).


A
B
C
D

King *et al.*, 1973) and the *S. anatum* bacteriophages ε^{15}, ε^{34} and g_{341} (Israel *et al.*, 1972; Iwashita and Kanegasaki, 1973; 1975; 1976; Kanegasaki and Wright, 1973; Lindberg, 1977). The *S. flexneri* serotype converting bacteriophage Sf6 also belongs to this group (Lindberg *et al.*, 1978).

1.11.1 Lysogenisation of group E *Salmonellae*

Bacteriophages which recognise the O- antigen as a receptor were originally identified in group E *Salmonellae* such as *S. anatum* (Bruner and Edwards, 1948). Bacteriophages ε^{15}, ε^{34} and g_{341} are able to mediate serotype conversion and all belong to group C of Bradley classification (Fig. 1.13) (Uetake *et al.*, 1955, 1958; Vieu *et al.*, 1965). These phages recognise their receptors in the O-antigen via their tail spikes (Lindberg, 1977).

The repeat unit of *S. anatum* is the tetrasaccharide:

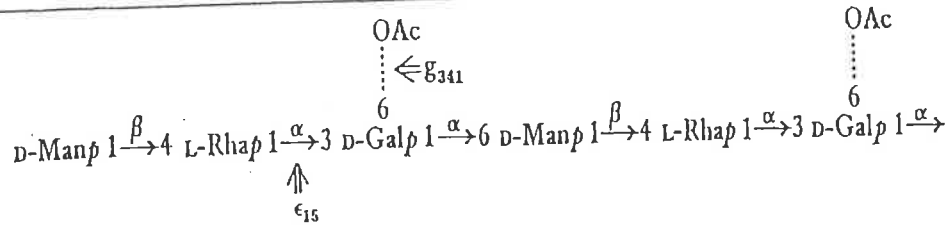
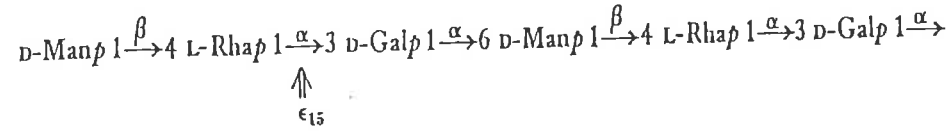
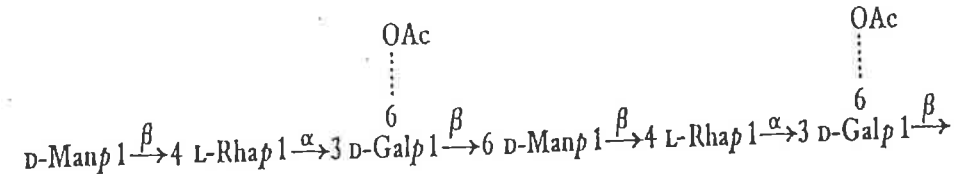
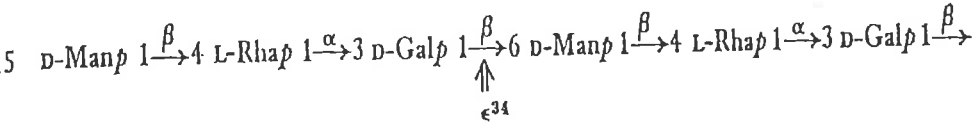
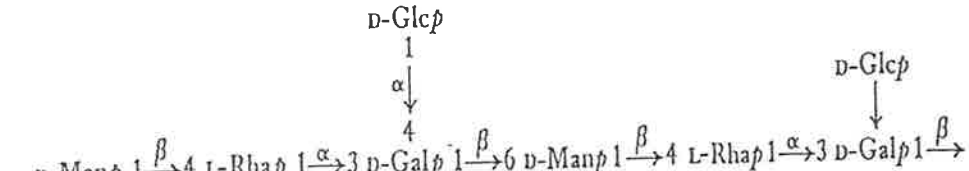
$$\rightarrow 6)\text{-}\alpha\text{-}\,\text{Man}\,(1\rightarrow 4)\text{-}\beta\text{-}\,\text{Rha}\,(1\rightarrow 3)\text{-}\alpha\text{-}\,\text{Gal}\,(1\rightarrow \qquad \begin{matrix}\text{OAc}\\ \downarrow\end{matrix}$$

composed of mannose, rhamnose and galactose and an O-acetyl group linked to the galactose residue which determines the O antigenic factor 3,10. Bacteriophage ε^{15} recognises S-LPS (Kanegasaki and Wright, 1973) and hydrolyses the linkage between the rhamnose and galactose sugars. Conversion of antigen 3,10 to antigen 3,15 occurs in a three step pathway which was determined by mutant analyses (Robbins and Uchida, 1962, 1965).

Bacteriophage ε^{15} encodes an enzyme which blocks the transacetylase synthesis so that O-acetyl groups are not transferred to the galactose residue of the O repeating unit (Robbins *et al.*, 1965). A bacteriophage encoded polymerase is produced which alters the α linkage between the repeat units to β linkages. Concurrently, an inhibitor of the host polymerase is also produced (Losick and Robbins, 1967; Bray and Robbins, 1967). The

Figure 1.13 Structures of *Salmonella anatum* (subgroup E) O antigen and modifications mediated by serotype converting bacteriophages, ε^{15}, ε^{34} and g_{341}.

Diagram is reproduced from Lindberg (1977)

Bacterial strain	O-antigen	Structure of O-polysaccharide and site for phage enzyme activity
S. anatum	3, 10	
S. anatum (g^{341})	3, 10	
S. anatum (ε^{15}a)	3, 15	
S. anatum (ε^{15})	3, (10), 15	
S. anatum (ε^{15}, ε^{34})	3, (10), (15), 34	

S. anatum[ε^{15}] lysogens are no longer susceptible to infection by the same phage, due to the new O-antigen structure; however, this is now recognised by bacteriophage ε^{34} (Uetake *et al.*, 1958).

Bacteriophage ε^{34} recognises and hydrolyses the galactose -mannose linkage in the repeat unit. Lysogenisation with ε^{34} results in the addition of a glucose group to the C-4 of the galactose residue which renders the strain resistant to superinfection due to a change in the receptor (Lindberg, 1977).

Lysogenisation of *S. anatum*, of serotype 3,10, by phage g_{341} results in the lack or greatly reduced number of O-acetyl groups on the galactose residue in the repeating unit. It appears that infection by phage g_{341} blocks transacetylase synthesis (Lindberg, 1977).

The three phages described have enzymatic activity, localised to their tail fibres, which enables them to cleave the O units at specific locations, thus providing access to the bacterial cell surface where they can then inject their genetic material. ε^{15} possesses endoglycosidase activity as does ε^{34}, however, g_{341} appears to have an esterase which deacetylates the O polysaccharide chain (Takeda and Uetake, 1973) resulting in the greatly reduced acetylation of the LPS.

1.11.2 Serotype converting bacteriophages of *S. flexneri*

The discovery of serotype converting bacteriophages in *Salmonella* coupled with the observation of antigenic changes in *S. flexneri*, led to the search for a similar mode of conversion in the latter species.

1.11.2.1 Identification of *S. flexneri* bacteriophages

Attempts to isolate temperate bacteriophage began with cultures of each serotype being subjected to a freeze-thawing process (Matsui, 1958). The filtrate of serotype 4c was found to partially lyse cultures of serotypes 1a and 3b. The surviving organisms were plated onto solid medium and then assessed for changes to their antigenic status. Agglutination of lysogens of serotypes 1a and 3b with type I or type III and type IV antisera showed that the majority of the colonies reacted positively with anti -type IV sera. This indicated a change in the type antigen expressed by these strains. Similarly, absorption studies of antisera raised against the original parent strains (1a and 3b) using cultures of the lysogens showed that the original type antigen (type I or type III) remained (Matsui, 1958).

Confirmation of these results was obtained when the lysate of the strain of serotype 4c was used with strains of serotype 1a, 1b, 2a, 3b and Y. Each of the strains were found to be converted by the lysate to express they type IV antigen (Iseki and Hamano, 1959). The conclusion was that the serotype conversion observed was caused by a temperate bacteriophage as in the case in group E *Salmonellae*.

1.11.2.2 Identification of bacteriophages fII , f7,8 and fV

It was not until ten years later that two other bacteriophages were identified. These phages were isolated from a strain of *S. flexneri* of serotype 2b, NTCC4, which has two modifications of its basic repeat unit (Fig. 1.9). After 18 hours of growth, a culture of strain NTCC4 was heated for a period of 30 minutes and the lysate was found to produce two plaque morphologies, large and small, when plated with an indicator strain of serotype Y. Each plaque type was purified and lysogens isolated were assessed for reactivity to specific antisera.

Lysogens isolated from the larger plaque type were found to be converted from serotype Y to express the group 7,8 antigen indicative of strains of serotype X, whereas the lysogens from the smaller plaque type were found to convert strains to express the type II antigen (Giammanco, 1968). These phages were then named f7,8 and fII respectively which indicates the group and type antigen they confer when they lysogenise strains of *S. flexneri* serotype X and Y.

Serotype conversion of a strain of serotype Y to 2b was achievable using phages f7,8 and fII irrespective of the order in which the lysogenisation occurred. Bacteriophage f7,8 was able to infect with equal efficiency strains of serotype Y and 2a, and phage fII was also able to infect strains of serotype Y as easily as serotype X.

Bacteriophage fV was isolated in the same manner as f7,8 and fII and was found to be capable of lysogenising strains of serotypes 1a, 2a, 2b, X and Y. Upon subsequent assessment of type antigens expressed by the lysogens, all were found to stably express type antigen 5. However, group antigens appeared to be expressed weaker than in wildtype strains of serotype 5 (Giammanco and Natoli, 1968). The reason for this was unknown.

1.11.2.3 Bacteriophage Sf6

To date, the best characterised *S. flexneri* bacteriophage is Sf6 (Gemski *et al.*, 1975). Lysogenisation by Sf6 results in the expression of the group 6 antigen (Lindberg *et al.*, 1972) due to the O-acetylation of the rhamnose III sugar of the repeat unit of strains of serotype X and Y (Clark *et al.*, 1991; Verma *et al.*, 1991). Sf6 also possesses endorhamnosidase activity and belongs to group C of the Bradley morphological classification (Lindberg *et al.*, 1978). The genome of Sf6 has been mapped and has been found to be approximately 40 kb in size (Clark *et al.*, 1991). The genome of Sf6 exhibits very good homology to that of *Salmonella* phage P22 with many genes found in identical locations (Chua, 1996).

1.11.3 Molecular basis for serotype conversion

Two genes have been identified which have been isolated from serotype converting bacteriophages of *S. flexneri*. The gene responsible for the O-acetylation, *oac*, has been cloned and sequenced and found upstream of the integrase gene. Transformation of a plasmid copy of the *oac* gene into strains of serotype X and Y is sufficient to convert these strains to express the group 6 antigen (Lindberg *et al.*, 1978; Clark *et al.*, 1991; Verma *et al.*, 1991), implying it does not require any accessory factors to mediate serotype conversion.

The second gene identified from a *S. flexneri* serotype converting phage was isolated from SfX, previously f7,8 (Giammanco, 1968; Verma *et al.*, 1993). Bacteriophage SfX mediates the glucosylation of the rhamnose I sugar of the repeat unit of strains of serotype 2a, 3b and Y, resulting in the expression of the group 7,8 antigen. The gene, *gtrX*, isolated from SfX, like *oac* has been identified as a single gene which acts alone (Verma *et al.*, 1993).

1.12 Aims of this study:

Although various serotype converting bacteriophages of *S. flexneri* have been isolated previously, few of these have been characterised to any extent. Primarily, the mechanism by which these phages mediate their serotype conversion is of utmost interest. In this study, the aim is to isolate the bacteriophage that encodes the type II antigen, SfII, and identify the gene(s) responsible. The mechanism of serotype conversion will be determined and characterisation of the proteins involved. Finally, attempts will be made to elucidate at which step in the complex *S. flexneri* biosynthetic pathway of LPS modification occurs.

Chapter Two

Materials and Methods

2.1 Bacterial strains, bacteriophages and plasmids

The *Shigella flexneri* strains used are listed in Table 2.1. Table 2.2 describes the *Escherichia coli* K-12 strains used in this study. The plasmids and phage cloning vectors which were used in this study are listed in Table 2.3. Bacteriophage Sf6 was provided by A. Lindberg, Stockholm, Sweden.

2.2 Maintenance of bacterial and bacteriophage strains

For long term storage, all strains were maintained as lyophilized cultures, stored *in vacuo* in sealed glass ampoules. When required, an ampoule was opened and its contents suspended in several drops of the appropriate sterile broth. Half the contents were then transferred to a 10 ml bottle of nutrient broth (NB) and incubated with aeration for 18 h at the appropriate temperature. The other half was streaked onto two nutrient agar plates and incubated for 18 h at the appropriate growth temperature. Antibiotics were added to the media when appropriate. If the colony form was uniform, single colonies were selected and picked off plates for subsequent storage or use.

Short-term storage of strains in routine use was as a suspension of freshly grown bacteria in glycerol (32% (v/v)) and peptone (0.6% (w/v)) at -70°C. Fresh cultures from glycerols were prepared by streaking a loopful of the glycerol suspension onto a nutrient agar plate (with or without antibiotic as appropriate) followed by incubation for 18 h just prior to use.

Table 2.1 *Shigella flexneri* strains used in this study

Strain	Serotype	Source
PE569	1a	L. Beutin [a]
PE568	1b	L. Beutin
PE523	2a	C. Murray[b]
PE655	2a	WRAIR[c]
PE567	2a	L. Beutin
PE574	2a	L. Beutin
PE642	2a	L. Beutin
PE790	2a	Alice Springs Hospital[d]
PE824 (NCTC4)	2b	NTCC[e]
PE571	3a	L. Beutin
PE844	3b	L. Beutin
PE566	4a	L. Beutin
PE572	4b	L. Beutin
PE780	5a	WRAIR
PE565	5b	L. Beutin
PE576	X	C. Murray
PE577	Y	C. Murray
PE870	Y	WRAIR

[a] L. Beutin, *Escherichia coli* Reference Laboratory, Robert Koch Institute, Berlin

[b] C. Murray, *Salmonella* Reference Laboratory, Institute of Medical and Veterinary Sciences, Adelaide, South Australia

[c] WRAIR, Walter Reed Army Institute for Research, Washington, DC., Virginia, USA

[d] Alice Springs Hospital Isolate, Alice Springs, Northern Territory, Australia

[e] NCTC, National collection of Type Cultures, Central Public Health Laboratory, London U.K.

Table 2.2 *Escherichia coli* strains used in this study

Strain	Description	Source/ Reference
DH5	F⁻ *recA1 endA1 hsdr17* (r_k-m_k^+) *supE44*λ- *thiI gyrA relA1*	B.R.L.[a]
DH5α	F⁻ *supE*44 Δ*lacU*169 (ϕ80*lacZ* ΔM15) *hsdR*17 *recA*1 *endA*1 *deoR gyrA*96 *thi*-1 *rel*A1	B.R.L.
S17-1	*pro hsdR* RP4-2-Tc::Mu Km::Tn7	U. Priefer [b]
SM10λpir	A lysogen of SM10 (*thi thr leu tonA lacY supE supE recA*::RP4-2-Tc::Mu) used for conjugal transfer of plasmids with R6k replicon.	Kaniga *et al.*, (1991)
E1196	Km^R, Ap^R	Taylor *et al.*, (1989)
E2096	DH5α + pGP1-2	Laboratory Strain
C75A	*tonA22 pho-64 ompF627* ($T2^R$) *relA1*	CGSC[c]
CC118	Δ(*ara,leu*)7697 Δ*lacX74* Δ*phoA*20 *galE galK thi rpsE rpoB argE*(am) *recA1*	Manoil, (1991)
Sϕ874	F⁻ *lacZ*2286 *trp*49 *upp*12 *rel*A1 D(*sbcB-rfb*)86 *rpsL*150 λ-	CGSC

[a] Bethesda Research Laboratories, Gaithersburg, Maryland USA
[b] Max Planck-Institut für Biologie, Tübingen, FRG
[c] Coli Genetic Stock Centre, Yale University, New Haven, Conn.

Table 2.3 Plasmids and cloning vectors

Plasmid	Description	Reference or Source
pUC18/19	Ap^R	Vieira and Messing (1982)
pBluescript S/K	Ap^R	Stratagene
pBC-KS	Cml^R derivative of pBluescript	Stratagene
pK184/194	Km^R	Hohn and Collins, (1980)
pGP1-2	Km^R	Tabor and Richardson (1985)
pGEM-T	Ap^R, PCR product cloning vector 3kb	Promega
pJRD215	Km^R, 10.2 kb cosmid vector	Davison *et al.*, (1987)
pGEM5Zf+	Ap^R, 3 kb	Promega
pPM2101	Ap^R Tc^R	Sharma *et al.*, (1989)
pWSK29	low copy number pBluescript derivative	Wang and Kushner, (1991)
pRMCD28	*E. coli phoA*' in pWSK29	Daniels *et al.*, (1998). (In press)
pRMCD70	*E. coli lacZ* in pWSK29	Daniels *et al.*, (1998) (In press)
pUT/Km	mini-Tn*5* Km^R cartridge in pUT	De Lorenzo *et al.*, (1990)

Bacterial strains were prepared for long-term storage by suspension of several loopfuls in a small volume of sterile skimmed milk. Approximately 0.2 ml aliquots of this thick bacterial suspension were dispensed into sterile 0.25 x 4 inch freeze drying ampoules and the end of each ampoule was plugged with cotton wool. The samples were then lyophilized in a freeze drier. After the vacuum was released, the cotton wool plugs were pushed well down the ampoule and a constriction was made just above the level of the plug. The ampoules were evacuated to a partial pressure of 30 microns and then sealed at the constriction without releasing the vacuum. Finally the ampoules were labelled and stored at 4°C.

Bacteriophage stocks were passed through 0.45 µm Millipore membrane filters and stored at 4°C over 0.5% (v/v) chloroform.

2.3 Growth Media

The following nutrient media were used for bacterial cultivation. Nutrient broth (NB) (Oxoid), consisted of 3 g Bacto-beef extract, 5 g Bactopeptone with added sodium chloride (NaCl) (5 g) per litre distilled water. Nutrient agar (NA) was NB with the addition of 1.5% Oxoid Bacto-Agar. Luria broth (LB), composed of Bacto-tryptone (10 g/l) (Difco), Bacto-yeast (5 g/l) (Difco) and NaCl (5 g/l). Soft agar contained equal volumes of LB and LA. Minimal medium was also prepared as described by Miller (1972) and supplemented prior to use with $MgSO_4$ (0.2 mg/ml), glucose (2 mg/ml) and thiamine-HCl (5 mg/ml). Methionine assay medium (Difco) was reconstituted according to manufacturers instructions.

Antibiotics were added to broth and solid media at the following final concentrations: ampicillin (Ap), 50 µg/ml; chloramphenicol (Cm), 25 µg/ml; kanamycin (Km), 50 µg/ml; rifampicin (Rif), 200 µg/ml.

Incubations were at 37°C unless otherwise specified. Liquid cultures, were normally grown in 20 ml McCartney bottles. Optical densities (OD) were measured at 600nm.

2.4 Chemicals and reagents

Chemicals were analytical grade. Ethanol, methanol, propan-2-ol, iso-amyl-alcohol, hydrochloric acid, glycerol, phenol, polyethylene glycol-8000 (PEG), sodium dodecyl sulphate (SDS), sodium chloride, ammonium acetate and sucrose were from BDH Chemicals. Adenosine-5'-triphosphate sodium salt (ATP), dithiothreitol (DTT), herring sperm DNA, ethidium bromide, and Tris (Trizma base) were from Sigma (St. Louis, MO). Caesium chloride, ethylene-diamine-tetra-acetic-acid, disodium salt (EDTA), citric acid, calcium chloride, magnesium chloride and sodium hydroxide were obtained from Ajax Chemicals, NSW, Australia. Sarkosyl was obtained from Geigy and Tween 20 from Boehringer Mannheim.

Antibiotics were purchased from Sigma (ampicillin, kanamycin sulphate, rifampicin), and Calbiochem (tetracycline, chloramphenicol). All other anti-microbial agents (dyes, detergents and antibiotics) were purchased from Sigma Chemical Co., BDH Chemicals Ltd., Glaxo, or Calbiochem.

Electrophoresis grade reagents were obtained from Boehringer-Mannheim (acrylamide and ammonium persulphate) and BRL (ultra pure N,N'-methylene bis-acrylamide and urea).

The four deoxyribonucleotide triphosphates (dATP, dCTP, dGTP and dTTP) and their corresponding dideoxy-ribonucleotide triphosphate homologues (ddATP, ddCTP, ddGTP and ddTTP), X-gal (5-Bromo-4-chloro-3-indolyl-β-D-galacto-pyranoside), IPTG (isopropyl-β-D-thiogalacto-pyranoside), ρ-nitrophenyl phosphate and 2-nitrophenyl-β-D-galactopyranoside (ONPG) were purchased from Boehringer-Mannheim.

Sequencing kits using either dye-labelled primer or dye-labelled terminators were purchased from Perkin Elmer Applied Biosystems (Foster City, California). [^{35}S]-Methionine (1,270 Ci/mmole) was purchased from Amersham. Digoxigenin (DIG) DNA labelling and detection kits were purchased from Boehringer-Mannheim.

2.5 Enzymes and Immunoconjugates

Deoxyribonuclease I (DNaseI) was obtained from Bresatec. Lysozyme from Sigma and pronase and proteinase K from Boehringer-Mannheim. All restriction endonucleases were purchased from either Boehringer-Mannheim, New England Biolabs or Progen and used according to the suppliers instructions.

Other DNA modifying enzymes were purchased from the following suppliers: Progen (T4 DNA ligase, calf intestinal phosphatase) and Boehringer-Mannheim (DNA polymerase I, Klenow fragment of DNA polymerase I, and molecular biology grade alkaline phosphatase). Taq polymerase (Ampli Taq)was purchased from Perkin Elmer Cetus Corp.

Horseradish peroxidase-conjugated goat anti-rabbit IgG was obtained from Kirkegaard and Perry Laboratories Inc. Anti-digoxigenin-AP (Fab fragments), anti-PhoA and anti-LacZ were from Boehringer Mannheim.

2.6 Transformation procedure

Transformation was performed essentially according to the method described by Brown *et al.* (1979). *E. coli* K-12 strains were made competent for transformation with plasmid DNA as follows: an overnight culture (in NB) was diluted 1:20 into NB and incubated with aeration until the culture reached an A_{600} OD of 0.6 (4x 10^8 cells/ml). The cells were chilled on ice for 20 min, pelleted at 4°C in a bench centrifuge, resuspended in half volume of cold 100 mM $MgCl_2$, centrifuged again and resuspended in a tenth volume of cold 100 mM $CaCl_2$. The cells were allowed to stand for 60 min on ice before addition of DNA. Competent cells (0.2 ml) were then mixed with DNA (volume made to 100 µl with 1 x TE buffer (10 mM Tris-HCl, 1 mM EDTA, pH 8.0) and left on ice for a further 30 min. The cell/DNA mixture was heated at 42°C for 2 min and then 3 ml NB was added followed by incubation with shaking at 37°C for 1-2 h. The culture was then plated onto selection plates

directly or concentrated by centrifugation and plated. Cells with sterile buffer were included as a control.

2.6.1 Super competent cells

A 10 ml overnight culture in LB was diluted 1:20 into LB and incubated with aeration until an A_{600} OD of 4 x 10^8 cells/ml was reached. The cells were chilled on ice for 5 min, pelleted at 4°C in a bench centrifuge and resuspended in 10 ml of solution a (30 mM KAc, 100 mM KCl, 10 mM $CaCl_2$, 50 mM $MnCl_2$, 15% glycerol). The solution was pelleted for 15 min at 4°C in a bench centrifuge and resuspended in 1 ml of solution b (10 mM MOPS, 75 mM $CaCl_2$, 10 mM KCl, 15% glycerol) and left on ice for 1-2 h. The final solution was aliquoted (100 µl) into 0.5 ml reaction tubes and stored at -70°C or used immediately.

2.7 Electroporation of *S. flexneri* and *E. coli.*

Electrocompetent DH5α and *S. flexneri* cells were freshly prepared according to the Bio-Rad protocol. An overnight broth of DH5α (500 µl) was used to inoculate 10 ml Luria broth and incubated at 37°C with aeration until the cells reached an OD_{600} 0.5-0.8. The cells were centrifuged for 10 min at 5000 rpm and the supernatant discarded. The cells were resuspended in 5 ml of ice-cold sterile 10% (v/v) glycerol and then centrifuged again for 5 min at 5000 rpm. Finally, the cell pellet was resuspended in 1 ml of ice-cold 10% (v/v) glycerol and kept on ice. The cells were either stored at -70°C or used immediately.

In a sterile microfuge tube on ice, ca. 1-2 µl PCR product or plasmid DNA (in TE or sterile Milli-Q water) were mixed with 100 µl of electrocompetent *E. coli* or *S. flexneri* and then transferred to an ice-cold sterile *E. coli* Pulser ™ cuvette (0.2 cm electrode gap, Bio-Rad). The gene pulser (Bio-Rad) was set at 25 µF and the pulse controller at 200 Ω. The *E. coli* and *S. flexneri* cells were pulsed at 2.5 kV with time constants of 4.6 - 4.8 msec.

Immediately after electroporation, 1 ml of LB was added to the cuvette, the contents mixed and transferred to a sterile microfuge tube, and then incubated at 37°C for 60-90 min. After centrifugation at 15,000 rpm for 1 min, the supernatant was discarded and the cells gently resuspended in 200 µl of sterile LB and plated onto NA containing appropriate antibiotic.

2.8 Bacterial conjugation

Overnight broth cultures grown in NB or LB were diluted 1:20 and grown to early exponential phase. Donor and recipient bacteria were mixed at a ratio of 1:10 and the cells pelleted by centrifugation (5000 rpm, 5 min, IEC bench centrifuge). The pellet was gently resuspended in 200 µl of broth and spread onto a cellulose acetate membrane filter (0.45 µm, type HA, Millipore Corp.) on a NA plate. This plate was incubated for 4 h at 37°C, when the bacteria on the filter were collected by vortexing the filter in 10 ml NB. After removing the filter, the cell suspension was centrifuged as described above, the cell pellet resuspended in 200 µl of sterile saline, and samples plated onto selective agar.

2.9 Plasmid DNA extraction procedures

Plasmid DNA was isolated by one of the three following procedures:

Method 1: Small scale plasmid purification was performed by the three step alkali lysis method using a modification of Garger *et al.*, (1983). Overnight bacterial cultures (1.5 ml) were transferred to a microfuge tube, harvested by centrifugation (45 sec, Eppendorf), and resuspended in 0.1 ml of solution 1 (50 mM glucose, 25 mM Tris-HCl, pH 8.0, 10 mM EDTA). The addition of 0.2 ml of solution 2 (0.2 M NaOH, 1% (w/v) SDS), followed by a 5 min incubation on ice, resulted in cell lysis. After the addition of 0.15 ml of solution 3 (60 ml of 5 M potassium acetate, pH 4.8, 11.5 ml of glacial acetic acid and 28.5 ml of H_2O) and a 5 min incubation on ice, protein, chromosomal

DNA and high molecular weight RNA were collected by centrifugation (90 sec, Eppendorf). The supernatant was transferred to a fresh tube and extracted once with TE-equilibrated phenol and once with diethyl ether. Plasmid DNA was precipitated by the addition of 2 volumes of 100% ethanol and a 2 min incubation at room temperature. The DNA was collected by centrifugation (15 min, Eppendorf), washed with 70% (v/v) ethanol and dried *in vacuo*. The pellet was resuspended in 50 µl of 1x TE.

Method 2: Small scale plasmid preparations were also prepared essentially as above however, following the removal of protein, chromosomal DNA and high molecular weight RNA, the supernatant was transferred to a fresh tube to which was added 0.25 ml 7.5 M Ammonium acetate pH 7.8. This was kept on ice for a further 15 min and following centrifugation (15 min, Heraeus Biofuge), the supernatant was again transferred to a fresh tube. Plasmid DNA was precipitated by the addition of 0.8 ml propan-2-ol with a 15 min incubation on ice. The DNA was collected by centrifugation (15 min, Heraeus Biofuge), washed with 70% (v/v) ethanol and dried *in vacuo*. The pellet was resuspended in 50 µl 1 x TE or MQ.

Method 3: Large scale plasmid purification was performed by the three step alkali lysis method (Garger *et al.*, 1983). Cells from a one litre culture were harvested (6,000 rpm, 15 min, 4°C, GS-3, Sorvall) and resuspended in 24 ml of solution 1 (50 mM glucose, 25 mM Tris-HCl, pH 8.0, 10 mM EDTA). Freshly prepared lysozyme (4 ml of 20 mg/ml in solution 1) was mixed with the cell suspension and incubated at room temperature for 10 min. Addition of 55 ml of solution 2 (0.2 M NaOH, 1% (w/v) SDS), followed by a 5 min incubation on ice resulted in total lysis of the cells. After the addition of 28 ml solution 3 (60 ml 5 M potassium acetate, pH 4.8, to which was added 11.5 ml glacial acetic

acid and 28.5 ml of H_2O) and incubation on ice for 15 min, protein, chromosomal DNA and high molecular weight RNA were removed by centrifugation (8,000 rpm, 20 min, 4°C, GSA, Sorvall). The supernatant was then extracted with an equal volume of a TE saturated phenol, chloroform, isoamyl alcohol mixture (25:24:1). Plasmid DNA from the aqueous phase was precipitated with 0.6 weight of 100% (v/v) propan-2-ol at room temperature for 10 min and collected by centrifugation (10,000 rpm at 4°C, 35 min, GSA, Sorvall). After washing in 70% (v/v) ethanol, the pellet was dried *in vacuo* and resuspended in 4.8 ml 1 x TE. Plasmid DNA was purified from contaminating protein, chromosomal DNA and RNA by centrifugation on a two step CsCl ethidium bromide gradient according to Garger *et al.*, (1983). The DNA band was removed by side puncture of the tube with a 19 gauge needle attached to a 1 ml syringe. The ethidium bromide was extracted using isoamyl alcohol. CsCl was then removed by dialysis overnight against three changes of 5 litres 1x TE at 4°C. DNA was stored at 4°C.

Method 4: Triton X-100 cleared lysates were prepared from 10 ml overnight cultures by a modification of the procedure of Kahn *et al.* (1979). Cells were resuspended in 0.4 ml 25% (w/v) sucrose in 50 mM Tris-HCl, pH 8.0. Lysozyme (50 µl, 10 mg/ml freshly prepared in H_2O) and 50 µl of 0.25 M EDTA, pH 8.0 were added to cells in Eppendorf tubes and left to stand on ice for 15 min. 0.5 ml TET buffer (50 mM Tris-HCl, 66 mM EDTA, pH 8.0, 0.4% Triton X-100) was added followed by a brief mixing by inversion of the tubes. The chromosomal DNA was then pelleted by centrifugation (20 min, 4°C, Eppendorf). The supernatant was extracted twice with TE saturated phenol (pH 7.5) and twice with diethyl-ether. Plasmid DNA was precipitated by the addition of 0.6 volumes of propan-2-ol and allowed to stand at -70°C for 30 min. The

precipitate was collected (10 min, Eppendorf), washed once with 1 ml 70% (v/v) ethanol, dried *in vacuo* and resuspended in 50 µl 1 X TE buffer.

2.10 Preparation of *S. flexneri* or *E. coli* genomic DNA

Whole genomic DNA from either *S. flexneri* or *E. coli* was prepared according to Manning *et al.* (1986). Cells from a 20 ml overnight culture were pelleted in a bench centrifuge for 10 min and washed once with TES buffer (50 mM Tris-HCl, pH 8.0, 5 mM EDTA, 50 mM NaCl). The pellet was then resuspended in 2 ml of 25% (w/v) sucrose, 50 mM Tris-HCl, pH 8.0 and 1 ml of lysozyme (10 mg/ml in 0.25 mM EDTA, pH 8.0) was added and the mixture incubated on ice for 20 min. TE buffer (0.75 ml) and 0.25 ml of lysis solution (5% (w/v) sarkosyl, 50 mM Tris-HCl, pH 8.0, 0.25 mM EDTA, pH 8.0) were added, together with 2 mg solid pronase. The mixture was gently mixed and incubated at 56°C for 60 min. This was followed by three extractions with TE-saturated phenol and two extractions with diethyl-ether. The genomic DNA was precipitated with four volumes of 100% ethanol and resuspended in 1 ml of 1 x TE.

2.10.1 Quick method for genomic DNA extraction

Cells from a 10 ml overnight culture were pelleted in a bench centrifuge for 10 min and resupended in 3 ml saline. An equal volume of TE-saturated phenol was added and the mixture vortexed intermittently for 2 min. Following centrifugation at 5 K for 5 min, the aqueous phase was transferred to a clean 20 ml McCartney bottle and 3 ml cold 100% ethanol added. The genomic DNA was spooled using a pasteur pipette and washed in 500 µl of 70% ethanol and resuspended in 1 ml of TE or Milli Q water.

2.11 Analysis and manipulation of DNA

2.11.1 DNA quantitation

The concentration of DNA in solutions was determined by measurement of absorption at 260 nm and assuming an A_{260} of 1.0 is equal to 50 µg DNA/ml (Miller, 1972).

2.11.2 Restriction endonuclease digestion of DNA

Most cleavage reactions were done using the restriction enzyme buffer SPK (10x: 200 mM Tris-HCl pH 7.5, 50 mM $MgCl_2$, 5 mM dithiothreitol, 1 mM EDTA, 500 mM KCl and 50% glycerol). The remaining restriction digests were carried out using EB buffer (10 mM Tris-HCl, pH7.5, 6 mM $MgCl_2$, 1 mM DTT) as a basis, with either the addition of NaCl or KCl as described by the manufacturers. 0.1-0.5 µg of DNA or purified restriction fragments were incubated with 2 units of each restriction enzyme in a final volume of 20 µl, at 37°C, for 1-2 hr. The reactions were terminated by heating at 65°C for 10 min. Prior to loading onto a gel, a one tenth volume of tracking dye (15% (w/v) Ficoll, 0.1% (w/v) bromophenol blue, 0.1 µg/ml RNase A) was added.

2.11.3 Analytical and preparative separation of restriction fragments

Electrophoresis of digested DNA was carried out at room temperature on horizontal, 0.6%, 0.8% or 1% (w/v) agarose gels (Seakem HGT). Gels were run at 100 V for 4-5 hr in either 1x TBE buffer (67 mM Tris base, 22 mM boric acid and 2 mM EDTA, final pH 8.8), or 1 x TAE buffer (40 mM Tris acetate and 2 mM EDTA). After electrophoresis the gels were stained in distilled water containing 2 µg/ml ethidium bromide. DNA bands were visualised by trans-illumination with UV light and photographed using either Polaroid 667 positive film or Thermal paper (K65HM) for Mitsubishi Video Copy Processor.

For preparative gels Sea Plaque (Seakem) low-gelling-temperature agarose at a concentration of 0.6% (w/v) was used for separation of restriction fragments, which were recovered by the following methods:

Method 1: DNA bands were excised and the agarose melted at 65°C. Five volumes of 20 mM Tris-HCl, 1 mM EDTA, pH 8.0 buffer were added and the agarose extracted with phenol:water (1:1) and then phenol:chloroform (1:1). Residual phenol was removed with chloroform and the DNA precipitated with two volumes of ethanol and one tenth volume of 3 M sodium acetate, pH 5.0. DNA was collected by centrifugation (15 min, Eppendorf), washed once with 70% (v/v) ethanol and dried *in vacuo* before being resuspended in 1 x TE buffer.

Method 2: After electrophoresis the required DNA bands were excised and then placed inside dialysis tubing. This was then positioned in an electrophoretic tank filled with 0.5 x TAE buffer. A current was applied causing the DNA to move out of the gel and into the buffer contained in the dialysis tubing. The DNA was then extracted with an equal volume of TE saturated phenol and precipitated with two volumes of ethanol and one tenth volume of 3 M sodium acetate, pH 5.0.

Method 3: The Qiagen gel extraction kit was used according to the instructions provided by the manufacturer.

2.11.4 Calculation of restriction fragment size

The sizes of restriction enzyme fragments were calculated by comparing their relative mobility with that of *Eco*RI digested *Bacillus subtilis* bacteriophage SPP1 DNA. The calculated sizes of the SPP1 *Eco*RI standard fragments used differ from those published (Ratcliff *et al.*, 1979) using bacteriophage lambda and plasmid pBR322 as standards. The

sizes (kilobases, kb) used were: 8.5; 7.35; 6.1; 4.84; 3.59; 2.81; 1.95; 1.86; 1.51; 1.39; 1.16; 0.98; 0.72; 0.48; 0.36; 0.09.

2.12 DNA cloning procedures

2.12.1 Dephosphorylation of DNA using alkaline phosphatase

Restriction enzyme digested DNA was treated with alkaline phosphatase by the following method. 0.1-0.5 µg of digested plasmid DNA was incubated with 1 unit of alkaline phosphatase (Calf intestinal: CIP), for 30 min at 37°C. The reaction was terminated by the addition of EDTA, pH 8.0 to a final concentration of 3 mM followed by heating at 65°C for 10 min. The reaction mix was then extracted twice with TE saturated phenol and twice with diethyl ether. DNA was precipitated overnight at -20°C with two volumes of ethanol and 1/10 volume of 3 M sodium acetate pH 8.0. The precipitate was collected by centrifugation (15 min, Eppendorf), washed once with 1 ml 70% (v/v) ethanol, dried *in vacuo* and dissolved in 1x TE buffer.

2.12.2 Ligation of DNA

Ligation reactions with T4 DNA ligase were performed in 1 x ligase buffer (20 mM Tris-HCl, 10 mM $MgCl_2$, 0.6 mM ATP, 10 mM DTT and BSA (100 mg/ml)) for cohesive ends, or 1 mM Tris, pH 7.5, 1 M $MgCl_2$, 50% PEG, 0.1 M ATP and 1 M DTT for blunt end ligations, and incubated at 10°C for 16 h. Restriction enzymes were heat inactivated at 65°C prior to ligation.

2.12.3 *In vitro* cloning

DNA to be subcloned (200 ng) was cleaved in either single or double restriction enzyme digests. This was combined with 20 ng of similarly cleaved vector DNA, then ligated with 2 units of T4 DNA ligase in a volume of 50 µl in a final buffer concentration of 20 mM

Tris-HCl, pH 7.5, 10 mM $MgCl_2$, 10 mM dithiothreitol (DTT), 0.6 mM ATP for 16 h at 4°C. The ligated DNA was then used directly for transformation of *E. coli* strains. Transformants were screened for insertional inactivation of the appropriate drug resistance gene (eg. Ap or Tc), wherever possible, prior to plasmid DNA isolation.

2.12.4 Cosmid Cloning

High molecular weight genomic DNA prepared from strain PE655 was partially digested with *Sau*3AI. Samples were taken at specific time intervals and aliquots were electrophoresed on a 0.8% (w/v) agarose gel in TAE buffer. DNA fragments of approximately 35-45 kb were excised from the gel, electro-eluted and extracted using TE-saturated phenol/chloroform. The purified DNA was ligated to pPM2101 which had previously been completely digested with *Bam*HI and dephosphorylated with CIAP. Ligation was allowed to proceed initially at room temperature for 10 h, and then overnight at 4°C. The ligation mix was packaged into bacteriophage λ (Collins and Hohn, 1978) using the *in vitro* Packagene System (Promega) and then transduced into *E. coli* S17-1.

2.13 Sequencing methods

2.13.1 Sequencing using dye labelled primers

Sequencing reactions were carried out on 1 μg of double stranded plasmid DNA using the protocol provided Applied Biosystems. In dye-labelled primer sequencing the DNA was split into four tubes containing 160 ng (A and C) and 320 ng (G and T) of DNA respectively. To each tube Ready reaction mix and DNA template were added:

Reagent	A	C	G	T
Ready Reaction Mix	4µl	4µl	8µl	8µl
DNA Template	1µl	1µl	2µl	2µl
Total Vol.	5µl	5µl	10µl	10µl

Each reaction was overlayed with 20 µl of light mineral oil and centrifuged briefly.

Samples underwent 15 cycles (96°C 10 sec; 55°C 5 sec; 70°C for 60 sec), followed by 15 cycles (96°C 10 sec; 70°C 60 sec; 15 cycles total), and were then held at 4°C. Reactions were combined in 80 µl of 95% (v/v) ethanol with 3 µl of 3 M sodium acetate and precipitated on ice. DNA was pelleted at 13,000 rpm for 15 min (Hereaus bench microfuge). Samples were dried *in vacuo* and stored at -20°C.

2.13.2 Sequencing with dye-labelled terminators

Plasmid DNA was purified prior to dye terminator sequencing with kits supplied by Boehringer Mannheim. 0.5 ml thin walled tubes (Gene Amp, Perkin Elmer) containing 1-2 µg of template DNA and 3.2 pmol primer, made up to a final volume of 20 µl with 9.5 µl of "Go" pre-mix (Boehringer Mannheim) and sterile water, were overlaid with mineral oil (Nujol, Perkin Elmer) and subjected to 25 cycles (96°C 30 sec; 50°C 15 sec; 60°C 4 min) before adding 2 µl of 3 M sodium acetate and 50 µl of ice cold 100% ethanol and precipitating for 2 h at -20°C then washing with 70% ethanol and drying *in vacuo*.

2.13.3 Analysis of DNA sequences

The dried pellets for sequencing were stored at -20°C until required, when they were resuspended in 4.5 µl loading buffer (83% deionised formamide, 8.3 mM EDTA pH 8.0),

heated (95°C for 2 min), and electrophoresed on a 6% polyacrylamide-8M urea gel in an Applied Biosystems 373A DNA sequencer. Raw sequencing data from the 373A automated sequencer were analysed using the Applied Biosystems Seq Ed program version 6.0. Service provided by Sequencing Laboratory, IMVS, Adelaide.. Sequencing data were analysed using the LKB DNA and protein analysis programs, DNASIS and PROSIS (Hitachi Software).

2.14 Polymerase Chain Reaction Protocol (PCR)

The protocol used for PCR is that described by Delidow (1993) for the generation of PCR products with cohesive ends. The PCR reaction was performed in reaction tubes (0.5 ml, Perkin Elmer) in a 50 µl volume containing Taq buffer (50 mM KCl; 10 mM Tris-HCl pH 8.3; 1.1 mM $MgCl_2$, 0.01% (w/v) gelatin), 2 µM each deoxynucleoside triphosphate (dNTP), 100 pmol each primer, 200 ng of plasmid template or genomic DNA and 2.5U Taq polymerase (Perkin Elmer). The reaction was overlaid with a drop of light mineral oil (Nujol, Perkin Elmer) and following an initial denaturation period of 5 min at 95°C, was subjected to 25 cycles of amplification (95°C for 30 sec, 55°C for 30 sec, 72°C for 1 min followed by a final extension at 72°C for 5 min) using a DNA thermal cycler (Perkin Elmer). Following PCR, the reaction was carefully removed from under the oil and the DNA precipitated by the addition of 0.5 volumes of 3 M sodium acetate plus 2.5 volumes of 95% ethanol and incubated at RT for 10 min. The DNA was collected by centrifugation at 15,000 rpm for 15 min (Heraeus Biofuge 15), washed with 70% ethanol, dried *in vacuo* and resuspended in 20 µl of sterile water.

2.14.1 Synthesis of oligodeoxynucleotides

Oligodeoxynucleotides were synthesized on an Applied Biosystems 381A DNA synthesizer in the trityl-off mode and butanol extracted prior to use. Reagents were purchased

from Applied Biosystems or Ajax Chemicals. The oligonucleotides used in this study are listed in Table 2.4. Also purchased from Sequencing Laboratory, IMVS, Adelaide.

2.15 Southern techniques

2.15.1 Preparation of DIG-labelled DNA probes

DNA fragment and plasmid probes were labelled with digoxigenin-11-dUTP (Boehringer Mannheim) according to the manufacturers protocol, using random-labelling or end-labelling (oligonucleotides and small fragments). Random-primed labelling was performed with heat denatured (95°C 10 min) DNA (10 ng - 3 µg) chilled on ice (3 min) prior to addition of 2 µl each of hexanucleotide mix and dNTP labelling mix (Boehringer Mannheim) and 2 U Klenow fragment DNA polymerase I. This was made up to 20 µl with sterile distilled water and held at 37°C for 60 minutes. The reaction was stopped with 2 µl of 0.2 M EDTA pH 8.0, and DNA precipitated with ethanol and LiCl (75 µl ethanol 100%; 2 µl LiCl 4.0 M) on ice before washing, vacuum drying and resuspension in 20 µl of TE (10 mM Tris-HCl, 1 mM EDTA pH 8.0).

2.15.1.1 DIG labelled PCR

The protocol used for DIG-labelled PCR is essentially that described in Section 2.14. The PCR reaction was performed in 0.5 ml reaction tubes in a 50 µl volume containing Taq buffer, 200µM each of deoxynucleoside triphosphate dATP, dCTP and dGTP,190 µM of dTTP and 10 µM of DIG-11-dUTP, 200 ng of plasmid template or genomic DNA and 2.5 U of Taq polymerase (Perkin Elmer). The reaction was overlaid with a drop of light mineral oil and subjected to the cycle detailed in Section 2.14.

Table 2.4 Oligonucleotides used in this study

Oligo	Sequence	Description
747	CCGGAATTCGGATCTTATGAAGATATTC	*gtrX* primer with *Eco*RI site
748	CGCGGATCCCGTTTGCATTTAGCATTAC	*gtrX* primer with *Bam*HI site
860	TTCCCTATTTTTGGATCCTTTATTTTGCTC	*rfc* primer with *Bam*HI site
2003	TTAGGGATCCGGACGATATTTGG	*rfc* primer with *Bam*HI site
2059	TTCCCTATTTTTGCATGCTTTATTTTGCTCCAG	*rfc* primer with *Sph*I site
2060	TTAGGCATGCGGACGATATTTGG	*rfc* primer with *Sph*I site
2210	AGATTTAGCCCAGTCGGC	primer in Tn*phoA*
2254	TACGCCAGCTGGCGAAAG	primer in *lacZ*
2211	CCATCGCCAATCAGCAAA	primer in Tn*phoA*
2325	CTTGAAAAAGGGAGGCGC	nt. 5051 → 5034 [a]
2326	TACAGGAAATGGGGAGGC	nt. 1834 → 1851
2327	CCAATCCCGATCAGTTGC	nt. 3457 → 3440
2328	GCTTGGGCGGTGGTTTCA	nt. 3711 → 3693
2329	GAAAGGCATACTGAGCTGG	nt. 3150 → 3167
2330	GCGGGTCTGAAACAGCC	nt. 2796 → 2780
2331	CCCAGTGTATAAGTGTGTTTCAGC	nt. 2320 → 2300
2345	AGAGCGAAAATTGCTTAAGC	nt. 2546 → 4527
2346	CGATAAGCTGAAATAAATGGTT	nt. 4932 → 4952
2347	GTTTAAACCTATACAAGTGG	nt. 4320 → 4339
2348	ACCGCATCTTCCTGACCG	nt. 1711 → 1694
2349	TTAGCTTCTTCGCGAATGC	nt. 2402 → 2420
2350	AACAATCACGCTTGGGCG	nt. 3684 → 3702
2369	GCAACCCAATGACGAATGC	nt. 4073 → 4055
2615	TCAGGTATTCACCAAGTT	nt. 1001 → 982
2623	CGCCAGTTTCACATTGCC	nt. 867 → 884
2624	AGCTTCGCGTTCATCTGG	nt. 443 → 426
2625	GCTTATGAAATCGCACTCC	nt. 390 → 408
2370	CATTACACGCAGATGCAGC	binds to *proA* (ECAE000132)
2371	GCTGACCACCGGTGAAC	binds to *yagB* (ECAE000132)
2719	GGCTGCAGAACTTGTGATACC	Primer for *phoA*/*lacZ* fusions of Bgt
2720	GCCTGCAGGGTTACCAAAGAC	Primer for *phoA*/*lacZ* fusions of Bgt
2721	TCCTGCAGTACCTCGATGAGA	Primer for *phoA*/*lacZ* fusions of Bgt
2722	ATTGTCTAGAGGGATGCG	Primer for *phoA*/*lacZ* fusions of Bgt

[a] nucleotide ranges refer to Figure 4.3.

2.15.2 Southern transfer and hybridisation

Unidirectional transfer of DNA from agarose gels to Hybond-N+ nylon transfer membrane (Amersham) were performed as described by Southern (1975) and modified by Maniatis *et al.* (1982).

Prior to hybridization with DIG-labelled probe, filters were incubated for 4 hr at 42°C in a pre-hybridization solution containing 50% (v/v) formamide, 1% (w/v) skim milk, 7% (w/v) SDS, 250 µg/ml single stranded herring sperm DNA (Sigma), 5 x SSPE (Maniatis *et al.*, 1982). Pre-hybridization fluid was discarded and replaced with fresh hybridization buffer. Denatured probe was added and hybridization allowed to occur for 16-24 h at 42°C.

Filters were washed twice with shaking at room temperature (RT) for 5 min in 2 x SSC, containing 0.1% (w/v) SDS. This was followed by two further 15 min washes in 0.1 x SSC plus 0.1% (w/v) SDS at 65°C. After drying in the air (15 min, room temperature), the filters were washed with buffer 1 solution (0.1 M Tris-HCl, 0.15 M NaCl pH 7.5) and then incubated with 5% skim milk in buffer 1 for 60 min at RT. Anti-DIG AP (alkaline phosphatase coupled to anti-DIG Fab fragments) (2 µl in 10 ml buffer 1) is then added for 30 min at RT. This is followed by 2 x 15 min washes with buffer 1 and 1 x 2 min wash with Buffer 3 (100 mM Tris-HCl pH 9.5, 100 mM NaCl, 50 mM $MgCl_2$). Alkaline phosphatase-labelled goat anti-rabbit antibody was detected by the addition of nitroblue-toluidine (NBT) and bromochloroindolyl phosphate (BCIP) as described.

2.16 SDS-polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (SDS-PAGE) and Western transfer

2.16.1 SDS-PAGE

For analysis by SDS-PAGE, bacterial suspensions (ca. 10^9/ml) were prepared by resuspending bacterial pellets in saline and then adding an equal volume of 2 x sample buffer (0.25 mM Tris-HCl pH 6.8, 2% (w/v) glycerol, 5% (v/v) β-mercaptoethanol, 15% (w/v)

bromophenol blue) prior to loading. Samples were heated at 100°C for 3 min before loading 10 µl/well onto a 15% polyacrylamide gel.

SDS-PAGE was performed on a 5% stacking and 15% separating polyacrylamide gels using a modification of the procedure described by Lugtenberg *et al.*, (1975). Gels were 15 cm long, 11 cm wide and 1.5 mm thick. Samples heated at 100°C for 3 min in SDS sample buffer consisting of 25 mM Tris-HCl (pH 6.8), 2% (w/v) SDS, 10% (v/v) glycerol, 5% (v/v) β-mercaptoethanol, and 15% (w/v) bromophenol blue prior to loading. Gels were electrophoresed through the gel at 150 V for 2-3 hr. Gels were stained overnight with Coomassie Brilliant Blue G250 in 50% (v/v) methanol and 10% (v/v) acetic acid, 10% (v/v) methanol and 10% (v/v) ethanol over 24 h.

Size markers (Pharmacia) were phosphorylase B (94 kD), bovine serum albumin (67 kD), ovalbumin (43 kD), carbonic anhydrase (30 kD), soybean trypsin inhibitor (20.1 kD) and alphalactalbumin (14.4 kD).

2.16.2 Western transfer and detection

Protein were transferred to nitrocellulose (Schleicher and Schuell) at 200 mA for 2 h in a Trans-blot cell (Bio-Rad). LPS is transferred onto nitrocellulose (Schleicher and Schuell) at 500 mA for 1 h at 4°C in a Trans-blot cell. The transfer buffer used consisted of 25 mM Tris-HCl, pH 8.3, 192 mM glycine and 20% (v/v) methanol (Towbin *et al.*, 1979). The blot was incubated for 1 h in blotto (5% skim milk powder in TTBS (0.05% (v/v) Tween 20, 20 mM Tris-HCl, pH 7.4, 0.9% (w/v) NaCl)) to block non-specific binding sites before incubating in primary antiserum (diluted in blotto) for 2- 16 h at RT. Unbound antibody was removed by washing the filter (3 x 10 min) in TTBS before incubation with HRP- conjugated goat anti-rabbit IgG (diluted 1:5000 in blotto) for 90 min at RT. Prior to detection, the filter was washed (4 x 5 min) with TTBS and then (2 x 5 min) with TBS (20 mM Tris-HCl, pH 7.4, 0.9% (w/v) NaCl).

The antigen-antibody complexes were then visualised using peroxidase substrate (9.9 mg 4-chloro-1-napthol dissolved in 3.3 ml -20°C methanol added to 16.5 ml TBS containing 15 µl hydrogen peroxide) which was added and allowed to incubate for 10-15 min with shaking as described by Hawkes *et al.*, (1982).

For ECL detection, filters were washed prior to detection in 20 ml PBS for 2 x 5 min, and then soaked in ECL detection reagent (Boehringer Mannheim) for 1 min in a transparent plastic bag. Finally, the filters were exposed to X-ray film at room temperature.

2.17 Lipopolysaccharide (LPS) preparation

LPS for analysis by SDS-PAGE followed by silver staining was prepared as follows. A volume of 1 ml of cells grown in liquid culture to the stationary phase (ca. 5 x 10^9 cells/ml) was pelleted in an Eppendorf tube. The pellet was suspended in 50 µl of lysing buffer (2% (w/v) SDS, 4% (v/v) β-mercaptoethanol, 10% (v/v) glycerol, 1 M Tris-HCl pH 7.6, 0.1% (w/v) bromophenol blue), and boiled for 5 min. Proteinase K (10 µl of a 2.5 mg/ml solution in lysing buffer) (Hitchcock and Brown, (1983) was added and the mixture was incubated at 55°C for 2 h. Samples (10-20 µl) were heated to 100°C for 3 min prior to SDS-PAGE.

2.17.1 LPS-specific silver staining

Silver staining of LPS was performed using a modification of the method described by Tsai and Frasch (1982). Following electrophoreseis the procedure used was to fix SDS-PAGE gels for 2-18 h in a solution of 40% (v/v) ethanol, 10% (v/v) acetic acid, then oxidised for 5 min with in a solution of 0.7% (v/v) periodic acid in 40% (v/v) ethanol, 10% (v/v) acetic acid. After oxidation the gels were washed 4 times for 30 min each with water and then stained for 10 min in a solution composed of 28 ml sodium hydroxide (0.1 M), 2 ml ammonium hydroxide (30% (w/v)) and 5 ml of silver nitrate (20% (w/v)). The stained gels were developed in a prewarmed (37°C) solution of 50 mg/ml citric acid and 0.05% (w/v)

formaldehyde. Staining was stopped using a solution of 20% (v/v) methanol and stored in Milli Q water.

2.17.2 Colony immunoblotting of LPS

The procedure used was a modification of that described by Towbin *et al.*, (1979). 1 ml of overnight samples were centrifuged (5000 rpm, 10 min, bench centrifuge) and resuspended in 100 µl of saline. 5 µl of each sample was spotted onto nitrocellulose membrane (Scheicher and Schuell) and treated in the same manner as described for western immunoblotting, using 1: 1000 dilution of primary antiserum and 1: 5000 dilution of secondary antiserum goat anti-rabbit HRP. Detection was carried out using the hydrogen peroxide (as described in 2.16.2).

2.17.3 Bacterial agglutination assays

Fifty microlitres of appropriate antisera were diluted (serially) in 96 well round bottom microtitre trays. Overnight cultures were washed in 1 x PBS and resuspended to a final concentration of 5 x 10^9 cells/ml, and 50 µl added to each well containing antiserum. The tray was incubated for 1-2 h at 37°C followed by incubation at 4°C for 2-16 h. Extent of agglutination was determined visually.

2.17.4 O antigen hydrolysis assay

2.17.4.1 Preparation of formaldehyde (formalin)-fixed cells

Overnight cultures of cells grown in 10 ml LB at 37°C were pelleted (5,000 rpm, 10 min, IEC bench centrifuge) and washed twice with saline. The pellet was then resuspended in a 1 ml of a 1% formalin solution in saline and place at 37°C for 1 h with aeration. Treated cells were pelleted (10^{10} cells), resuspended in 1 ml of saline and stored at 4°C.

2.17.4.2 O antigen hydrolysis assay

0.1 ml of formalin-fixed cells were mixed with equal volumes of Sf6c phage (10^{12} pfu) and TM buffer (10 mM Tris HCl pH 7.1, 10 mM $MgSO_4$). The suspension was then incubated at 37°C for 30 min. The cells were then centrifuged (15,000 rpm, 1 min, Hereaus microfuge) and washed twice in Milli-Q water. LPS samples were then prepared, subjected to SDS-20% PAGE and visualised by silver staining.

2.18 T7 polymerase / promoter expression system and L-[^{35}S]-methionine labelling

The plasmid pGP1-2 carries the T7 RNA polymerase under the control of the lambda P_L promoter (Tabor and Richardson, 1985). This plasmid was transformed into *E. coli* strains containing a plasmid with the specific gene of interest under control of the T7 RNA polymerase promoter. A 10 ml LB broth with ampicillin and kanamycin was inoculated with a single colony and grown with aeration at 30°C overnight. The culture was subcultured 1:10 and incubated with constant aeration at 30°C. When an A_{600} OD of 0.6 was reached, the cells were pelleted and resuspended in 1.5 ml of M9 media supplemented with 0.01% of 18 amino acids (minus methionine) and grown with aeration at 30°C for a further 120 min. The cells are then incubated at 42°C for 20 min to induce the pGP1-2 P_L promoter by the inactivation of cI_{ts}, allowing expression from the λP_L promoter. Rifampicin was added to a final concentration of 200 mg/ml to inactivate the *E. coli* RNA polymerase and incubation was continued at 42°C for a further 20 min. The culture was then left for at least 2 h shaking at 37°C. Samples were then pulsed with 10 µCi of L-[^{35}S]-methionine for 5 min at 30°C. 1 ml of culture was transferred to microfuge tubes, centrifuged (15 K, 2 min, Heuraeus microfuge) to pellet the cells and resuspended in 100 µl of 1 x SDS sample buffer. 10 µl of sample was heated at 100°C for 2 min and loaded onto SDS-PAGE gels for analysis. Gels were subsequently stained with Coomassie G250.

2.18.1 Cell Fractionation

The cell fractionation procedure was a modification of that described by Osborn *et al.*, (1972). Cells were grown in LB to mid-exponential phase at 37°C (50 ml, OD_{600} of 0.6). Cells were pelleted in a Beckman SS-34 rotor, (10,000 rpm, 10 min, 4°C) and resuspended in 1 ml of 20% (w/v) sucrose, 30 mM Tris-HCl pH 8.1, transferred to SM-24 tubes and chilled on ice. Cells were converted to sphaeroplasts with 0.1 ml of 1 mg/ml lysozyme in 0.1 M EDTA pH 7.3 for 30 min on ice. Cells were centrifuged as above and the supernatant collected (periplasmic fraction). The cell pellet was frozen in an ethanol dry ice bath for 30 min, thawed and dispersed vigorously in 3 ml 3 mM EDTA, pH 7.3. Cells were lysed with a Branson Ultrsonifier (45% cycle, intermittent), by successive freeze- thawing. Unlysed cells and large cell debris were removed by low speed centrifugation (7,000 rpm, 5 min, 4°C). The supernatant containing the membranes and the cytoplasm was centrifuged at 35, 000 rpm in a 50 Ti rotor for 60 min at 4°C in a Beckman L8-80 ultracentrifuge. The supernatant (cytoplasmic fraction) was collected and the membrane pellet was resuspended in 1 ml 25 mM Tris-HCl pH 7,5. Five hundred microlitres of Triton solution (4% Triton X-100, 2 mM $MgCl_2$, 50 mM Tris pH 7.5) was added to an equal volume of the membrane sample which was vortexed for 30 min. The inner (soluble) membrane fraction was separated from the outer (insoluble) membrane fraction by centrifugation at 35,000 rpm for 90 min in a 50 Ti rotor (Beckman L8-80) at 4°C. The outer membrane fraction was dissolved in 0.25 M Tris pH 7.5.

2.18.2 Autoradiography

SDS-PAGE gels were dried on Whatman 3MM chromatography paper at 60°C for 2 h on a Bio-Rad gel drier. [^{35}S]-methionine autoradiography was performed at room temperature for 1 -7 days without intensifying screens using Kodak XR-100 film.

2.19 Alkaline phosphatase and β-galactoside assays

2.19.1 Alkaline phosphatase assays

Alkaline phosphatase assays were performed by a method modified from that previously described by Manoil (1991). Cultures were grown in LB with Ap at 37°C for 16 h then subcultured 1/20 into fresh LB containing Ap and incubated until the OD_{600} ca. 0.5. 1 ml of culture was centrifuged for 3 min at 14,000 rpm and washed in cold 10 mM Tris-HCl, pH 8.0, 10 mM $MgSO_4$ and the final pellet resuspended in 1 ml of cold 1 M Tris-HCl, pH 8.0, 1 mM iodoacetamide. The OD_{600} was measured by placing 300 µl in the well of a 96 well microtitre tray and reading on a DYNATECH MR 7000 microplate reader. Washed culture (200 µl) was added to 800 µl of 1 M Tris-HCl, pH 8.0, 0.1 mM $ZnCl_2$, 1 mM iodoacetamide and permeabilised by the addition of 50 µl 0.1% SDS and 50 µl chloroform. 275 µl of permeabilised cells were placed in duplicate wells of a microtitre tray and the reaction was started by the addition of 25 µl of 0.4% *p*-nitrophenyl phosphate (in 1 M Tris-HCl, pH 8.0). Optical densities were recorded at 410 nm (colour change) and 570 nm (cell debris). PhoA units were calculated using the standard equation (Manoil 1991), shown below.

2.19.2 β-galactosidase assays

β-galactosidase assays were performed as described in Baker *et al.*,1997. Cultures were grown inLB at 37°C with aeration for 16 h. They were cooled on ice for 20 min and their OD_{600} was measured (Pharmacia LDB-Ultraspec Plus Spectrophotometer). Dilutions were made using cold LB so as all cultures had an OD_{600} of 0.550 - 0.850. Diluted cultures were then aliquoted (300µl) into 96 well flat-bottomed microtitre trays and the OD_{600} read immediately. In a microfuge tube, diluted culture (500 µl) was added to 500 µl of Z buffer (60 mM $Na_2HPO_4.7H_20$, 40 mM $NaH_2PO_4.H_2O$, 10 mM KCl, 1 mM $MgSO_4.7H_2O$, 50 mM β-mercaptoethanol adjusted to pH 7.0 and stored at 4°C). Cels were opened by addition of 2

drops of chloroform and 1 drop of SDS (0.1% w/v) and vortexing for 10 s. Aliquots (100 µl) of the bacterial lysates were placed in duplicate wells of a 96 well microtitre tray. The tray was incubated at 28°C for 15 min and the reaction started by addition of 2-nitrophenyl-β-D-galactopyranoside (ONPG) (200 µl) (0.7 mg/ml in Z buffer) to each well, with mixing. Optical densities were recorded at 410 nm (O-nitrophenol colour change) and 570 nm (cell debris). Enzyme units were calculated for each strain at the time point when the OD_{410} first exceeded 0.6 using the following equation.

β- galactosidase units =

$$\frac{1000 \times (OD_{410} - 1.75 \times OD_{570})}{\text{Time} \times \text{Volume} \times OD_{600}}$$

2.20 Bacteriophage techniques

2.20.1 Construction of lysogens

The phage (10^9/ml) were spotted for single plaques onto a soft agar lawn of the bacterial strain to be lysogenized and the plates incubated at the appropriate temperature for 6 h. The centre of a turbid plaque was streaked for single colonies on the appropriate agar and the plate incubated at 37°C for 16 h. Single colonies were selected and purified three times by streaking for single colonies before assessing reactivity to type II antiserum by colony immunoblotting.

2.20.2 Phage assays

SfII phage lysates were assayed for phage titre by mixing 0.1 ml of phage diluted in LB, 0.1 ml of log phase indicator bacteria and incubating for 15 min in a 37°C water bath. 3 ml of melted (0.7% (w/v)) soft agar overlay was added and the mixture poured onto pre-warmed LA plates and incubated at 37°C for 16 h.

2.20.3 Preparation of phage stocks

2.20.3.1 Low titre phage stocks

Low titre stocks (10^9 -10^{10} pfu/ml) of SfII were prepared by the Plate Lysate Method (Maniatis). Plate stocks were prepared from a single plaque. A single phage plaque was removed with a sterile pasteur pipette and resuspended in 1 ml of LB for 2 h at 4°C. The required bacterial cells (*S. flexneri* Y serotype PE577) were cultured in LB to late log phage (A_{600} = 0.8), 0.1 ml of cells were mixed with 0.1 ml of eluted bacteriophage for 15 min at 37°C. The mixture was then plated with 3 ml of soft agar onto pre-warmed LA plates and incubated for 6 h at 37°C. The soft agar overlay was then scraped off and added to 10 ml LB and centrifuged (6,000 rpm, 10 min) to remove agar and bacterial debris. The supernatant was stored with 0.5% (v/v) chloroform at 4°C.

2.20.3.2 High titre phage stocks by liquid infection

Essentially as described by Maniatis *et al.*, (1989), a fresh overnight culture of PE577 was diluted one hundred fold into two aliquots of 500 µl of LB and incubated at 37°C with aeration to A_{600} = 0.5. The culture was infected at a multiplicity of addition of 0.1 with phage from a low titre SfII stock and incubation was continued at 37°C for 4 h or until lysis was evident. Chloroform (0.5% (v/v)) was then added, the culture was returned to 37°C for 15 min to lyse remaining cells. Bacterial debris was removed by centrifugation (10, 000 rpm, 4°C 20 min, JA-20 rotor) and the supernatant decanted. NaCl and PEG-8000 were added to a final concentration of 0.5 M and 10% (w/v) respectively, and precipitation was allowed to proceed overnight at 4°C. The precipitate was collected by centrifugation (9,000 rpm, 4°C, 20 min, JA-20 rotor), resuspended in 5 ml of TM buffer. If required the phage were purified by CsCl block gradient centrifugation.

2.20.3.3 CsCl block density gradient for preparation of high titre phage stocks

CsCl block density gradient centrifugation was used to prepare high titre SfiI phage stocks for the preparation of DNA by phenol extraction.

Three CsCl solutions of density 1.45 g/ml, 1.5 g/ml and 1.70 g/ml were prepared in sterile TM and were used to form a block gradient by adding 4 ml of 1.45 g/ml solution and underlaying it with 1 ml of the 1.5 g/ml followed by the 1.7 g/ml solution in a 10 ml polycarbonate Oakridge tube. The high titre phage suspension in TM was carefully layered on top of the gradient and the tube centrifuged (45,000 rpm, 90 min, 4°C, Beckman Ti-50 rotor). The opaque phage band was collected by piercing the side of the tube with a syringe and dialysed three times against one litre of TM and stored at 4°C. A titre of 10^{12} - 10^{13} pfu/ml was usually obtained by this method.

2.20.3.4 Phenol extraction of bacteriophage DNA

A high titre phage stock (10^{12} - 10^{13} pfu/ml) was diluted to 0.9 ml in TE and then 0.1 ml of 100 mM Tris-HCl pH8.0, 100 mM NaCl, 100 mM EDTA, 5.0% SDS was added, followed by 5 mg of Proteinase K. After incubation at 37°C for 60 min, the solution was again diluted (to 5 ml) with TE, and an equal volume of TE-equilibrated phenol added. The mixture was gently shaken for 5 min and the phases were separated by centrifugation (7,000 rpm, 5 min, 20°C, JA-20 rotor). The aqueous phase was collected and re-extracted at least twice with an equal volume of TE-equilibrated phenol. The phenol phases were washed with an equal volume of TE, and sodium acetate (pH 4.6) was added to the pooled aqueous phases to a final concentration of 0.3 M, followed by 2.5 volumes of ethanol. DNA was precipitated at -20°C for 30 min and was collected by centrifugation (18,000 rpm, 20 min, 4°C, JA-20 rotor). The pellet was washed in 70% and 95% ethanol (v/v), dried *in vacuo* and dissolved in 1 ml TE and stored at 4°C.

2.20.3.5 Bacteriophage sensitivity tests

Bacteria were grown to stationary phase in either NB or LB and swabbed across a NA plate. Bacteriophages were spotted (ca. 10^6 pfu in 5µl NB) onto the bacteria and the plates were incubated at 37°C for 16 h. Strains were scored as bacteriophage sensitive if a turbid plaque or lysis resulted.

2.21 Electron microscropy (EM)

For EM, bacteriophage were spotted onto a lawn of indicator bacteria and incubated for 6 h at 37°C or CsCl purified phage were spotted (5 µl) onto Whatman parafilm and Colloidin-coated copper grids (300 mesh, TAAB) were place coated side down for 1 min. The grid was then transferred to a 40 µl drop of 2% phosphotungstic acid (PTA) for 10 sec, blotted and stored in a dust free environment. Grids were examined using a Phillips TM-100 electron microscope.

Chapter Three

Isolation and characterisation of *S. flexneri* serotype converting bacteriophage SfII.

3.1 Introduction

Bacteriophage SfII encodes the gene(s) required for the expression of the type II antigen. The type II antigen is characterised by the addition of a glucosyl residue to rhamnose III of the repeating units of the O polysaccharide of *S. flexneri*. In comparison with the other serotypes, strains of serotype 2a are of particular interest due to their greater prevalence, which may be an indication of their relative virulence (Noriega *et al.*, 1995). Many factors, including bacteriophage-encoded functions or an alteration in LPS, may be contributing to this feature.

The isolation of bacteriophage SfII and its characterisation is required in order to understand the mechanism by which it infects and modifies the LPS. Determination of the gene(s) involved in serotype conversion and other functions encoded by this phage could provide information relating to its evolution and potential role in virulence of the organism.

This chapter describes the isolation of bacteriophage SfII from a strain of serotype 2b, NCTC4 (Giammanco, 1968). The host range of the phage is assessed and the genome and region involved in serotype conversion are characterised. Bacteriophage SfII lysogens have also been isolated and their LPS characterised by silver staining of PAGE gels and western immunoblotting.

3.2 Results

3.2.1 Attempts to isolate bacteriophage SfII.

Strains expressing the type II antigen contain the genome of the temperate phage SfII integrated into their chromosome and, therefore, the genes responsible for serotype conversion. Isolation of bacteriophage SfII was initially attempted by various techniques using PE655 of serotype 2a. Bacteriophage are often released spontaneously from lysogens (Lwoff and Gutmann, 1950); the supernatant of a culture of PE655 was harvested and used in a plaque assay with the indicator strain PE577 (serotype Y). As bacteriophage plaques were not obtained by this method, several other approaches were taken to induce phage from the lysogen. Physical and chemical stresses such as heat, chloroform, U.V. irradiation and the addition of mitomycin C all proved to be unsuccessful in the induction of bacteriophage. These methods did not result in release of bacteriophage from a variety of serotype 2a strains (PE523, PE567, PE574, PE642 and PE790) from the laboratory collection.

3.2.2 Cosmid cloning of serotype conversion genes from strain PE655

A cosmid bank was constructed using DNA from strain PE655, and the cosmid vector pPM2101 (Table 2.3) and mobilised into PE577. Colony immunoblotting with anti-type II serum was used to screen for serotype conversion from Y to 2a. Three cosmids, pRMM163, pRMM164 and pRMM165 which converted PE577 to serotype 2, were isolated. Subsequent attempts at subcloning these cosmids were unsuccessful as they were unstable, with spontaneous deletions occurring, resulting in loss of the serotype-converting ability.

3.2.3 Isolation of bacteriophage SfII from NCTC4

NCTC4, of serotype 2b, is lysogenised by phages SfX (f7,8) and SfII (fII) which are responsible for group 7,8 and type II antigens, respectively (Giammanco, 1968). A lysate from heat-induced NCTC4, when used in plaque assays, gave two plaque types; these were either large or small. Isolation and purification of either plaque type consistently resulted in the appearance of plaques of both types. It was previously reported that the two plaque morphologies could be separated, with large plaques being caused by SfX and small plaques by SfII (Giammanco, 1968), however, this could not be confirmed.

Lysogenisation of PE577 with the phage propagated from either large or small plaques resulted in the expression of the type II antigen. No conversion to serotype X was seen with PE577 (500 colonies screened, 492 type II positive, 8 remained group 3,4 positive only). Upon induction, the lysates from these lysogens were also able to mediate serotype conversion to serotype 2. The bacteriophage in the lysate from one lysogen RMM273 was therefore named SfII.

3.2.4 Purification and characterisation of bacteriophage SfII.

Bacteriophage SfII was purified by plating the heat-induced lysate from RMM273 with the indicator strain PE577 and isolating a single plaque. This procedure was repeated three times to ensure only a single plaque was isolated. The lysogens resulting from infection with plaque-purified SfII were assayed by colony immunoblotting with anti-type II serum and shown to express the type II antigen. Propagation of the phage was carried out on solid media followed by liquid media once a titre of 10^{10} pfu/ml had been reached. The purified phage were examined by electron microscopy (Fig. 3.1) and it was seen that SfII belonged to the

Figure 3.1 Electron micrograph of SfII.

Electron micrograph of bacteriophage SfII, stained with 3% phosphotungstic acid. Magnification 205 K. The head, neck and contractile tail are clearly visible. Two 'curled' tail fibres can also be seen. Morphologically, SfII belongs to the Bradley group A (1967).


50nm

group A of Bradley's classification possessing a hexagonal shaped head, a tail with a contractile sheath and tail fibres (Bradley, 1967).

3.2.4.1 Proteins of bacteriophage SfII

Purified SfII phage was solubilised in sample buffer, electrophoresed in an SDS-15% PAGE gel and stained with Coomassie Blue. Figure 3.2 shows three major protein bands at approximately 35, 36 and 40 kDa and minor bands at 15, 17, 19 and 67 kDa. The structures corresponding to these protein bands are unknown, however, in bacteriophage Mu, belonging to the same morphological group, the major head protein is 33 kDa, tail sheath protein 55 kDa and tail proteins range between 16 and 64 kDa (Howe, 1987). The bands shown in figure 3.2 may also be representative of these structures due to the morphological similarity between SfII and phage Mu.

3.2.4.2 O-antigen hydrolysis assays

O-antigen hydrolysis assays assess the ability of the bacteriophage to cleave at specific positions along tetrasaccharide repeat units. A shortened LPS results from the cleavage of the O-antigen which provides access to the surface of the bacterium. The phage then adsorbs to the surface and ejects its DNA. Bacteriophage Sf6 possesses the ability to cleave the O-antigen of strains of *S. flexneri* of serotypes Y and X (Lindberg *et al.*, 1978, Van den Bosch *et al.*, 1997). Assays using bacteriophage SfII were carried out with strains PE577 of serotype Y and PE576 of serotype X (Fig 3.3). It can be seen that no differences could be detected in O-chain length between the control lanes (PE577 and PE576) without phage and the lanes (PE577 + SfII and PE576 + SfII) with SfII added. Therefore, it can be concluded that during infection with phage SfII, cleavage of the O-antigen is unlikely to occur.

Figure 3.2 Coomassie Blue stained SDS-15% PAGE displaying the structural proteins of bacteriophage SfII. Major proteins of sizes 35, 36 and 40 kDa and minor proteins of 15, 17, 19 and 67 kDa were detected and are arrowed.

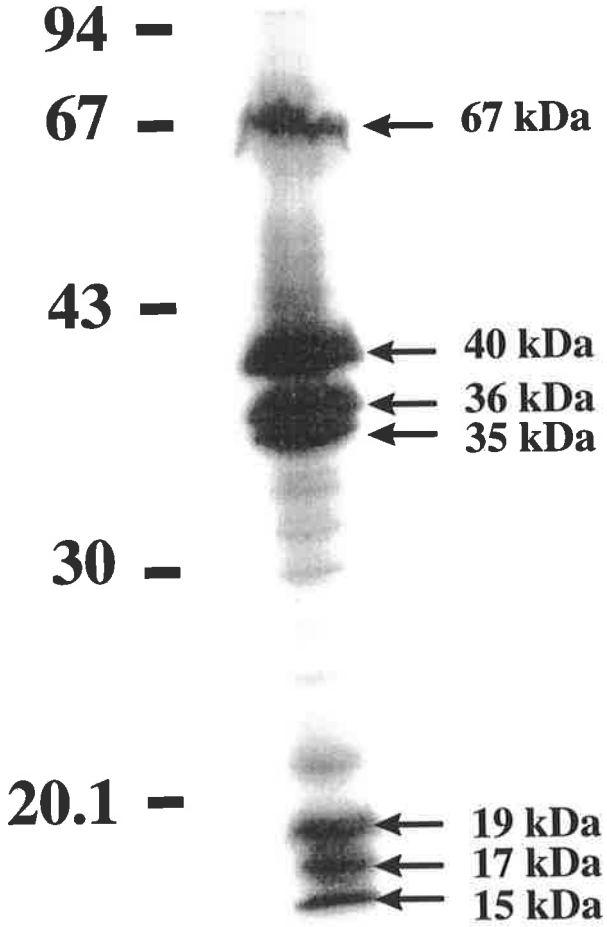

94
67
43
30
20.1
67 kDa
40 kDa
36 kDa
35 kDa
19 kDa
17 kDa
15 kDa

Figure 3.3 O-antigen hydrolysis assay. Silver stained SDS-15% PAGE showing LPS profiles of formalin-fixed *S. flexneri* PE577 and PE576 treated with whole SfII phage. Whole cell lysates of *S. flexneri*, treated with Proteinase K and subjected to electrophoresis.

Lanes contain PE577 (serotype Y) untreated

PE577 treated with SfII

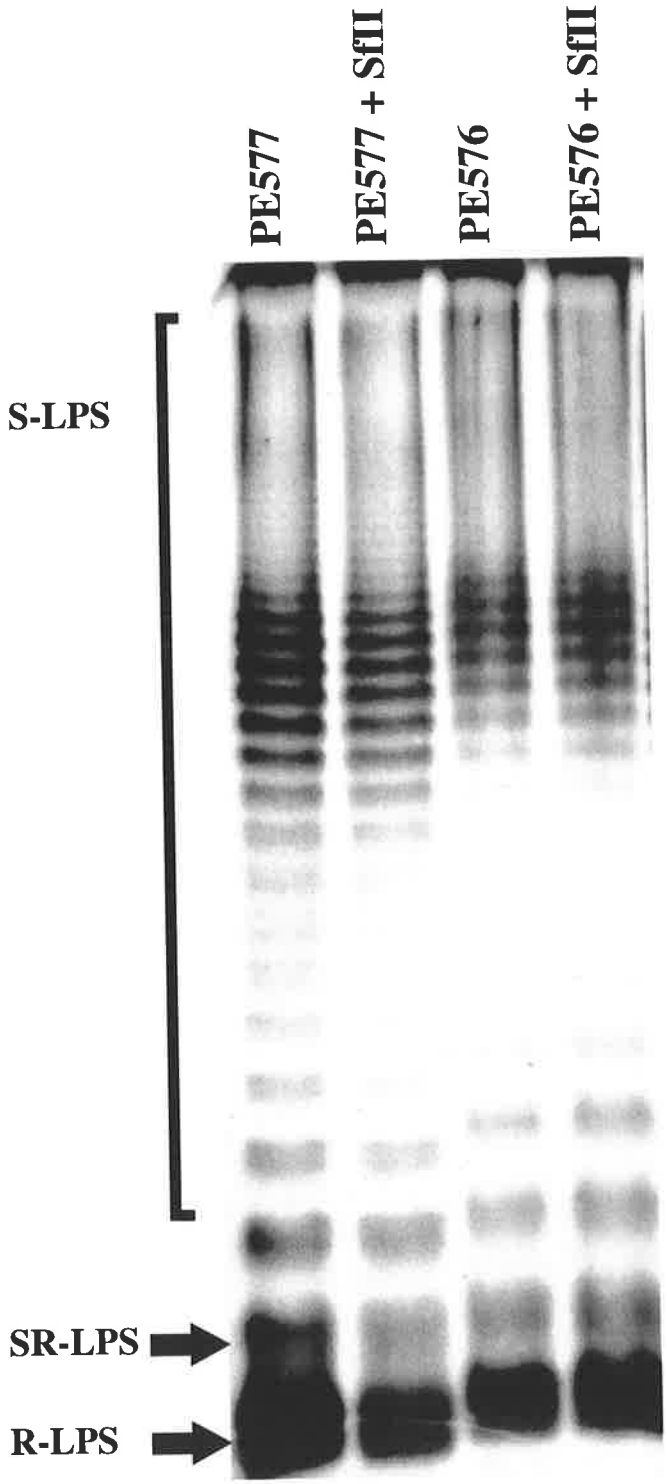
PE576 (serotype X) untreated

PE576 treated with SfII

R-LPS - Lipid A-core alone

SR-LPS - Lipid A-core with a single repeat unit

S-LPS - Lipid A-core with long O-antigen chains


PE577
PE577 + SfII
PE576
PE576 + SfII
S-LPS
SR-LPS
R-LPS

3.2.4.3 SfII lysogenisation of *rfc* mutant RMM109 of serotype Y

Bacteriophage SfII was used to infect *rfc* strain RMM109, turbid plaques were observed and single colonies isolated. Colony immunoblotting of these single colonies exhibited reactivity to type II antiserum, indicating that a single O-antigen repeat unit can be modified. It seems, therefore, that SfII phage does not require long O antigen chains to recognise its receptor, and in fact a single O unit is sufficient. Conversely, SfII did not plaque on an *rfbD* strain (Van den Bosch *et al.*, 1997) lacking O antigen chains.

3.2.5 Characterisation of lysogens of bacteriophage SfII

Assessment of the host range of phage SfII revealed that strains of serotypes 1b, X and Y were susceptible to infection by phage SfII and could be serotype-converted (Table 3.1). Lysogenisation by SfII resulted in the expression of the type II antigen in serotypes 1b, X and Y as determined by colony immunoblotting. Further confirmation of the type II modification was achieved by bacterial agglutination using a specific type II antiserum (Table 3.2). The serotype converted lysogens were compared with a wildtype strain of serotype 2a, PE877 (2457T) which still agglutinates at a titre of 1:20 whereas the lysogens continue to agglutinate at a titre of 1:40, implying a significant and increased level of type II expression.

Strains of serotype Y are sensitive to lysogenisation by bacteriophage Sf6, which recognises receptors in the O-antigen and cleaves at particular positions along the polysaccharide chain. Strains of serotype 2a are not susceptible to infection by Sf6 phage and therefore lysogens of SfII would be expected to no longer be sensitive. However, when the SfII lysogens were assessed for their sensitivity to Sf6 phage by cross streaking, some residual sensitivity was observed.

Table 3.1: Host range of bacteriophage SfII. Bacteriophage SfII has the ability to convert strains of serotypes 1b, X and Y to express the type II antigen. The serotype (Roman numerals) and serogroup (Arabic numerals) of the strains are indicated in brackets for both the original and lysogenised organisms.

	Reactivity to antisera in colony immunoblots							
Strain	**Type I**	**Type II**	**Type IV**	**Type V**	**group 6**	**group 3,4**	**group 7,8**	**Resultant Serotype**
PE569 1a (I:4)	+	-	-	-	-	-	-	unchanged*
PE568 1b (I:6)	-	+	-	-	+	+	-	2a (II: 3,4)
PE655 2a (II:3,4)	-	-	-	-	-	+	-	unchanged
NCTC4 2b (II:7,8)	-	-	-	-		-	+	unchanged
PE571 3a (6, 7,8)	-	-	-	-	+	-	+	unchanged
PE645 3b (6, 3,4)	-	-	-	-	+	+	-	unchanged
PE566 4a (IV:3,4)	-	-	+	-	-	+	-	unchanged
PE572 4b (IV:6)	-	-	+	-	+	-	-	unchanged
PE780 5a (V:3,4)	-	-	-	+	-	+	-	unchanged
PE565 5b (V:7,8)	-	-	-	+	-	-	+	unchanged
PE756 X (7,8)	-	+	-	-	-	-	+	2b (II: 7,8)
PE577 Y (3,4)	-	+	-	-	-	+	-	2a (II: 3,4)

* An unchanged resultant serotype implies that bacteriophage SfII is unable to recognise the O-antigen as a receptor in strains of that serotype.

Table 3.2 Bacterial agglutination assay using anti-type II serum.

Serial dilutions of antiserum were incubated with 5 x 10^9 bacteria/ml of control strain PE877 (serotype 2a), parent strain PE577 (serotype Y) and independent SfII lysogens of PE577; RMM181, RMM182, RMM189, RMM268 and RMM273. The final titre of antiserum at which the bacteria still agglutinated is shown.

Strains	Titre	Serotype
PE877	1/20	2a
PE577	-	Y
RMM181	1/40	2a
RMM182	1/40	2a
RMM189	1/40	2a
RMM268	1/40	2a
RMM273	1/40	2a

- indicates negative agglutination

The LPS of strain PE577 (serotype Y) and SfII lysogens (RMM181, RMM182, RMM189, RMM268 and RMM273) were silver stained (Fig. 3.4, panel A). Compared with the PE577 LPS profile, the lysogens exhibit LPS bands with a slightly slower migration presumably due to the addition of the glucose residue which alters the LPS profile. The Western immunoblot (Fig 3.4, panel B) using anti-type II serum confirms that the lysogens have been converted to express the type II antigen when compared to the parent strain.

3.2.6 Isolation and cloning of *Pst*I fragments of SfII genome

Bacteriophage SfII DNA was isolated and digested with the restriction enzymes *Bam*HI, *Bgl*II, *Eco*RI and *Pst*I (Fig. 3.5) to determine a restriction map. The genome of SfII was found to be 42.3 kb in size and the organisation of its *Pst*I fragments is shown in figure 3.6. Each *Pst*I fragment was isolated and cloned into pBluescript-SK or pBC-KS (Table 2.3) (Table 3.3), and individual restriction maps determined. Subsequently, each *Pst*I clone was DIG-labelled and used in Southern hybridisations with *Bam*HI, *Eco*RI and *Pst*I digested SfII DNA to assign adjacent fragments. In this way, the genome was mapped and the order of fragments determined.

Difficulties were encountered in the cloning of *Pst*I fragment 3, and several approaches were used. The 7.2 kb fragment was purified, followed by restriction with enzyme *Bam*HI in an attempt to clone two separate *Pst*I-*Bam*HI fragments of sizes 2.4 and 4.8 kb, however, a 7.2 kb fragment flanked by *Bam*HI ends was obtained (Fig. 3.7). Sequencing from both ends of this clone revealed homology to the integrase gene of bacteriophage P22, and subsequent analysis revealed a rearrangement had taken place during ligation.

Each *Pst*I clone was transformed into PE577 and assessed for expression of type II antigen; it was found that none of these clones possessed the ability to mediate the serotype conversion from Y to 2a (Table 3.3).

Figure 3.4 Silver stained SDS-15%PAGE and Western immunoblot of lysogens of bacteriophage SfII.

Panel A: Silver stained gel of parent and SfII lysogens.

Lanes contain PE577, parent strain of serotype Y and SfII lysogens RMM181, RMM182, RMM189, RMM268 and RMM273. The addition of a glucose residue to the repeat unit alters the migration pattern of the individual LPS molecules. The different migration rates of the O-units of the Y serotype (closed arrow) and the 2a lysogens (open arrow) are particularly apparent at the level of one and two repeat units.

Panel B: Western immunoblot using anti-type II serum. The LPS of parent strain PE577 of serotype Y did not react with anti-type II serum, whereas the LPS of the SfII lysogens reacted with anti-type II serum.

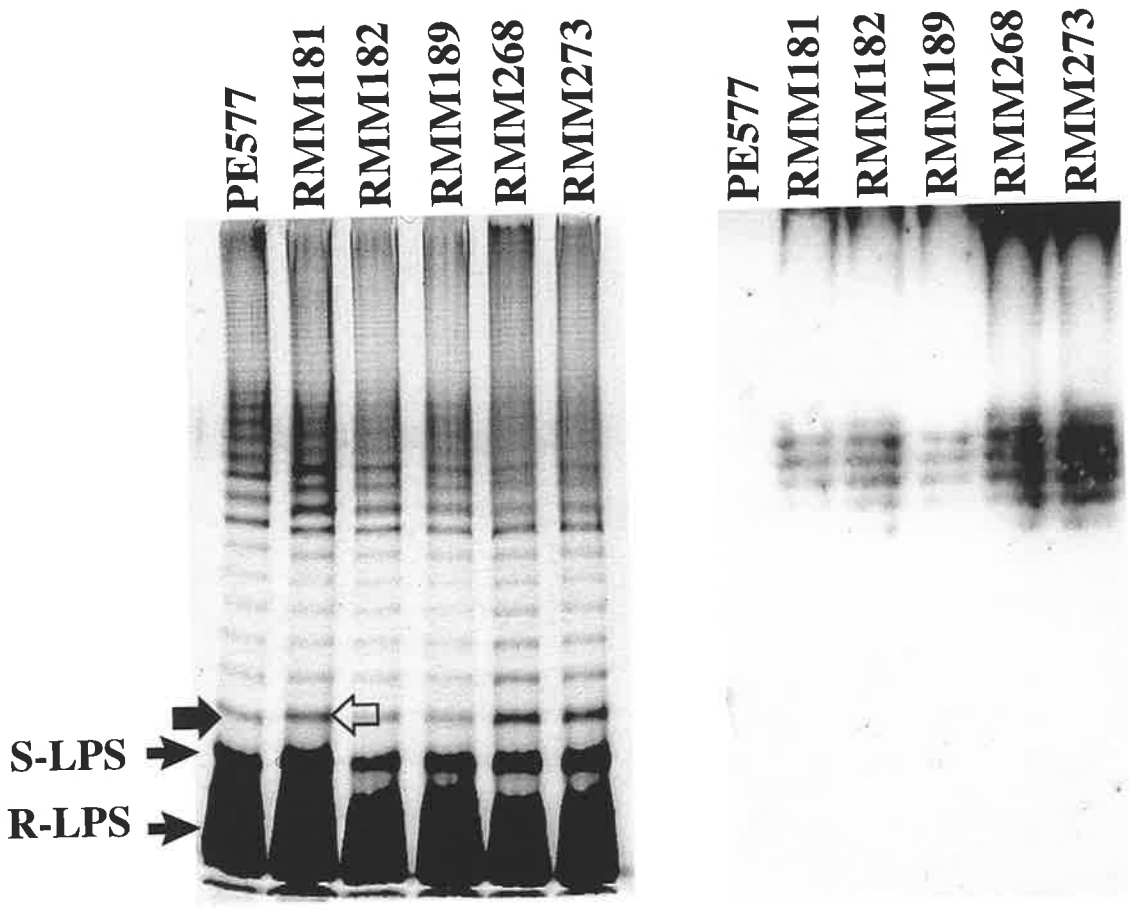

PE577
RMM181
RMM182
RMM189
RMM268
RMM273
S-LPS
R-LPS
A
PE577
RMM181
RMM182
RMM189
RMM268
RMM273
B

Figure 3.5 Restriction digests of DNA from bacteriophage SfII. The genome of SfII was digested with the restriction enzymes *Bam*HI, *Bgl*II, *Eco*RI and *Pst*I. The marker track (SPP-1) has the sizes indicated in kilobase pairs (kb).

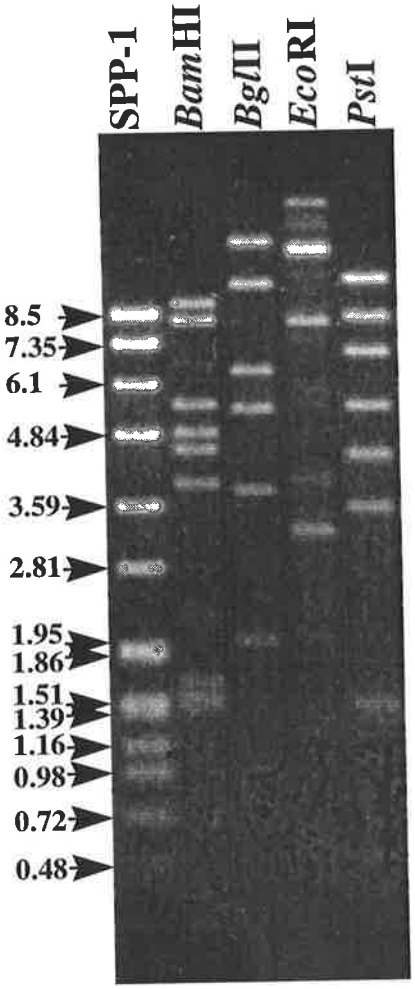

SPP-1
BamHI
BglII
EcoRI
PstI
8.5
7.35
6.1
4.84
3.59
2.81
1.95
1.86
1.51
1.39
1.16
0.98
0.72
0.48

Figure 3.6 Bacteriophage SfII genome map

The SfII phage genome was restricted with various enzymes (Fig. 3.5) which were used to generate a restriction map. The organisation of the *Pst*I fragments of the SfII genome is shown.

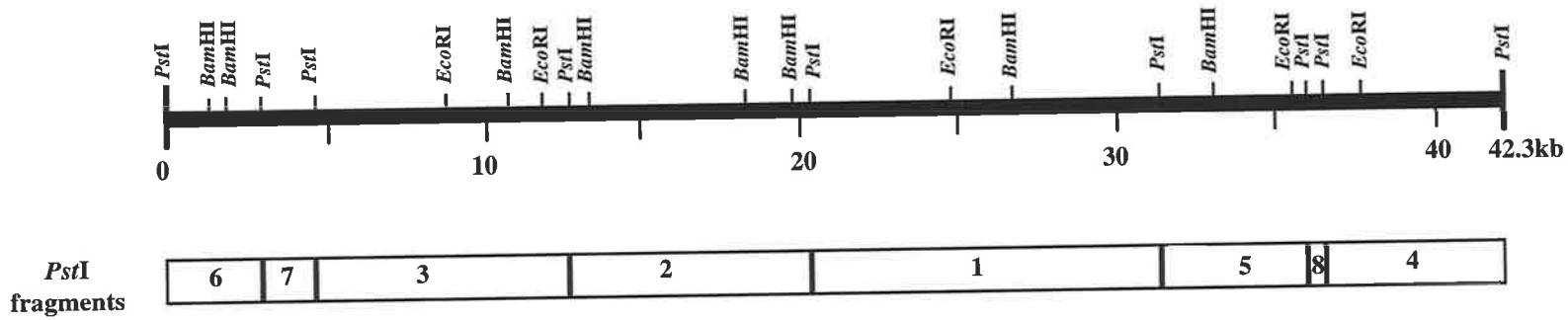
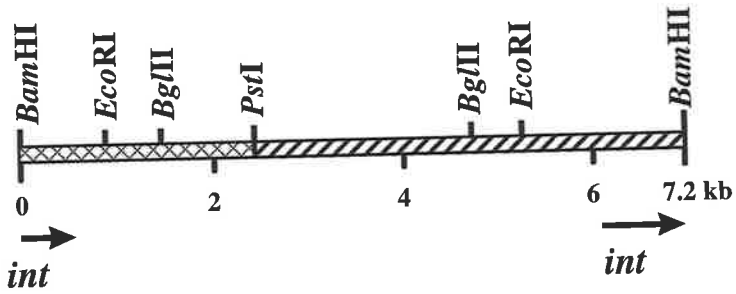

PstI
BamHI
BamHI
PstI
PstI
EcoRI
BamHI
EcoRI
PstI
BamHI
BamHI
BamHI
PstI
EcoRI
BamHI
PstI
BamHI
EcoRI
PstI
PstI
EcoRI
PstI
0
10
20
30
40
42.3kb
PstI fragments
6
7
3
2
1
5
8
4

Figure 3.7 Isolation of fragment 3 of *Pst*I digested SfII DNA.

A: Fragment 3 was initially obtained flanked by *Bam*HI restriction sites at the ends. Dye primer sequencing using M13 forward and reverse primers revealed homology to the P22 integrase gene.

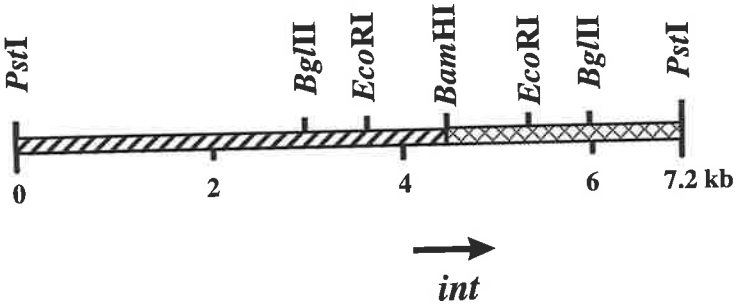
B: The correct orientation of fragment 3 and the direction of the integrase gene.

A



Re-arranged *Pst*I-3 fragment

B



Correct arrangement of *Pst*I-3

Table 3.3 *Pst*I fragments of bacteriophage SfII

Plasmid	Fragment	Size (kb)	Vector[a]	Serotype Converting[b]
pRMM219	1	11	pBS-SK	-
pRMM220	2	8.4	pBS-SK	-
pRMM228	3	7.2	pBC-KS	-
pRMM221	4	5.5	pBS-SK	-
pRMM222	5	4.6	pBS-SK	-
pRMM224	6	3.6	pBS-SK	-
pRMM225	7	1.55	pBS-SK	-
pRMM269	8	0.48	pBC-KS	-

[a] corresponds to the vector that the particular *Pst*I fragment was cloned into
[b] corresponds to ability of clone to mediate serotype conversion of a Y serotype to 2 as determined by colony immunoblotting.
- indicates no serotype converting ability

3.2.7 Characterisation of *Pst*I fragments of SfII genome

DNA sequence from the ends of each of the 8 SfII *Pst*I fragments was obtained by dye primer sequencing of the subclones using M13 forward and reverse primers. Analysis of the sequence(s) obtained by comparison with BLASTN and BLASTX databases identified similarities with other genes and proteins (Table 3.4).

Significant homology to different sections of the *E. coli* K-12 chromosome was seen with fragments *Pst*I-3, *Pst*I-6 and *Pst*I-7, and some homology to known phage sequences was observed with *Pst*I fragments 4 and 8. Table 3.4 and Figure 3.8 detail the homology observed between the sequences obtained from the *Pst*I fragments (nt.) and the proteins identified by BLAST searches (aa).

E. coli K-12 ORF o189 (ECAE000214) was identified which spans fragments 3 and 7 ending in the latter which also encodes ORFs o112 (ECAE000214) and o445 (ECAE000214). Also encoded in fragment 7 is a homologue of the *E. coli* K-12 replication protein O (f122) (ECAE000324), and ORF f164 (ECAE000324) of unknown function which continues into fragment 6. A homologue of phage H-19B gene Q (AFO34975), involved in transcription of late genes via antiterminator activity (Mahdi *et al.*, 1996), is shared by fragments 4 and 6. *Pst*I fragment 8 encodes a holin homologue involved in lysis functions of bacteriophage phi-105 (L35561).

Figure 3.8 shows the location of sequence homology in relation to the *Pst*I fragments of the SfII genome. The preliminary mapping of the replication protein O, gene Q and the holin lysis gene and their position in the genome is consistent with the organisation of phages such as λ, P22 and Mu.

Various subclones of the rearranged *Pst*I-3 pRMM228, pRMM253, pRMM254, pRMM255, pRMM256 and pRMM257, were isolated (Fig. 3.9) and the ends sequenced using dye primer sequencing. A P22 *int* homologue is encoded in the region flanking the *Bam*HI

Table 3.4 Homologies exhibited by *Pst*I fragments of bacteriophage SfII

Fragment	Homology search[a]	Nucleotide position in sequence[b]	Amino acid position in search sequence[c]	% homology[d]	Function[e]
*Pst*I-6	**F:** f164 (ECAE000324)	nt. 1 - 264	f164 - aa 37-124	98% - 85/87	unknown
pRMM224	**R:** f362 (ECAE000253)	nt. 70-237	f362 - aa 307-362	91% - 50/55	unknown
	H-19B (AF034975)	nt. 2- 49	H-19B - aa 1- 16	75% - 12/16	Q protein - late gene synthesise
*Pst*I-7	**F:** o112 (ECAE000214)	nt. 117-437	o112 - aa 1-106	70% - 74/106	unknown
	o189 (ECAE000214)	nt. 1-117	o189 - aa 149-189	85% - 34/40	unknown
pRMM225	o455 (ECAE000214)	nt. 470-520	o455 - aa 1- 17	76% - 13/17	unknown
	R: f122 (ECAE000324)	nt. 114-398	f122 - aa 28-122	94% - 88/94	replication protein O
	f164 (ECAE000324)	nt. 1-114	f164 - aa 1- 38	97% - 37/38	unknown
*Pst*I -3	**F:** o306 (ECAE000323)	nt. 1-303	o306 - aa 1-303	86% - 261/303	Unknown
	dpm1 (D90915)	nt. 35-240	dpm1 - aa 54-259	44% - 91/206	dolichol-P mannosyl synthase
*pRMM228	**R:** o189 (ECAE000214)	nt. 1 - 431	o189 - 11- 150	94% - 114/121	unknown
*Pst*I-2	**F:** *S. cholerasuis* galactosyl transferase	nt. 52- 83	transferase - aa 60-155	37% - 12/32	galactosyl transferase
pRMM220	(S22623)				
	R: N.S.H.				

Table 3.4 cont..

Fragment	Homology search[a]	Nucleotide position in sequence[b]	Amino acid position in retrieved sequence[c]	% homology[d]	Function[e]
*Pst*I -1 pRMM219	**F:** N.S.H. **R:**				
*Pst*I -5 pRMM222	**F:** N.S.H. **R:**				
*Pst*I -8 pRMM269	**F:** phi-105 holin (L35561) **R:** N.S.H.	nt. 40-279	holin - aa 6-82	42% - 32/76	lysis function
*Pst*I -4 pRMM221	**F:** H-19B (AF034975) **R:** N.S.H.	nt. 3-242	H-19B - aa 29-108	41% - 32/79	Q protein - late gene synthesis

[a] Homology searches were all performed in BLASTX
[b] nucleotides correspond to PstI fragment sequenced
[c] amino acids position correspond to amino acid number in retrieved sequence
[d] Percentage homology over the amino acids in c
[e] function of gene retrieved by BLASTX search
* *Pst*-3 fragment is flanked by *Bam*HI ends
N.S.H. - no significant homology
R- Dye primer sequencing using M13 reverse primer
F- Dye primer sequencing using M13 forward primer

Figure 3.8 Map of fragments generated by *Pst*I digestion of bacteriophage SfII genome.

The alignment of the 8 *Pst*I fragments was determined by cloning each of these fragments into vectors (pBLUESCRIPT or pBC-KS) in the orientation as indicated (f represents the M13 forward primer and r represents the M13 reverse primer). The fragments are aligned with respect to each other and homologies (DNASIS) exhibited by sequence obtained by partial dye primer sequencing to known sequences is indicated in the diagram.

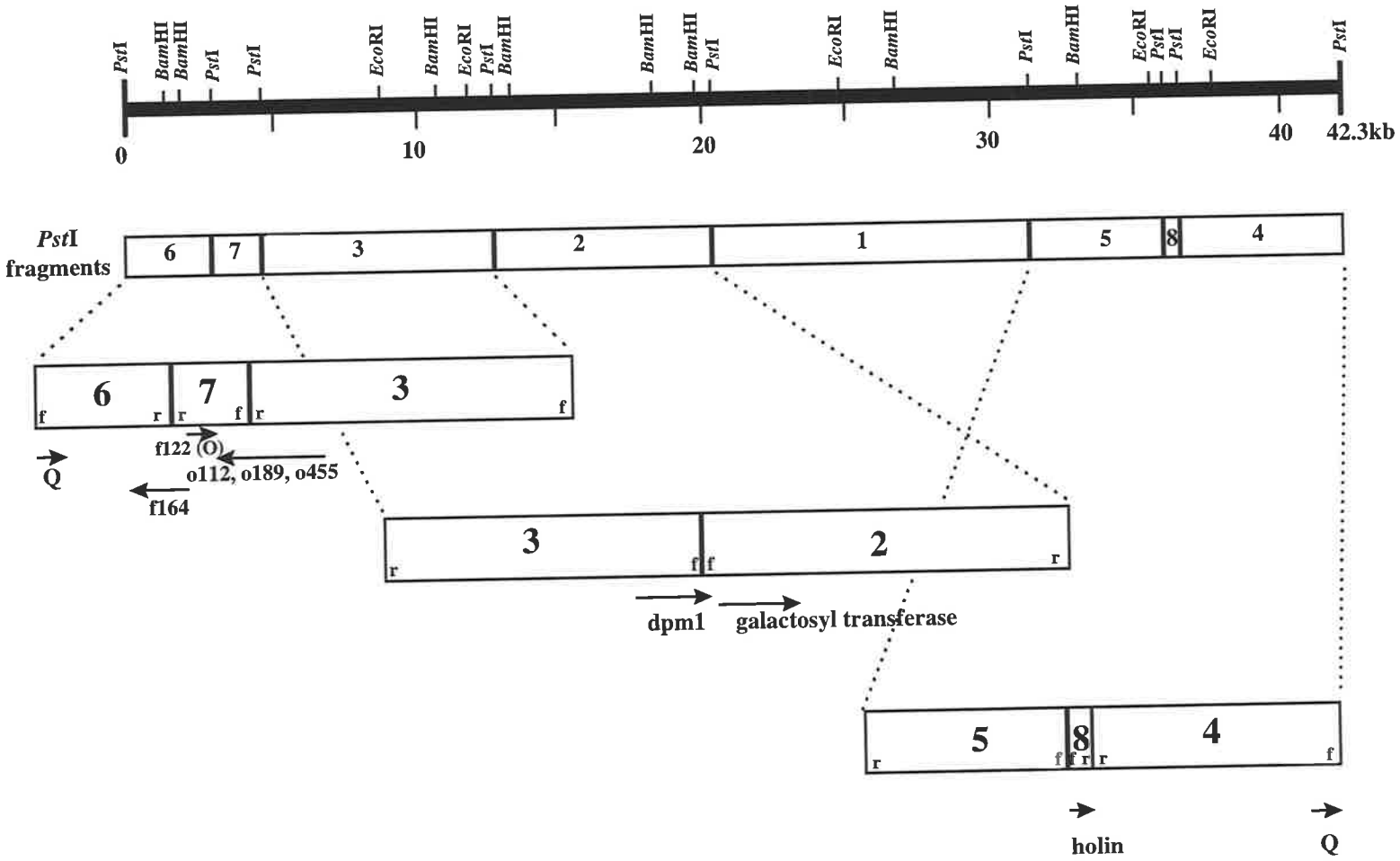
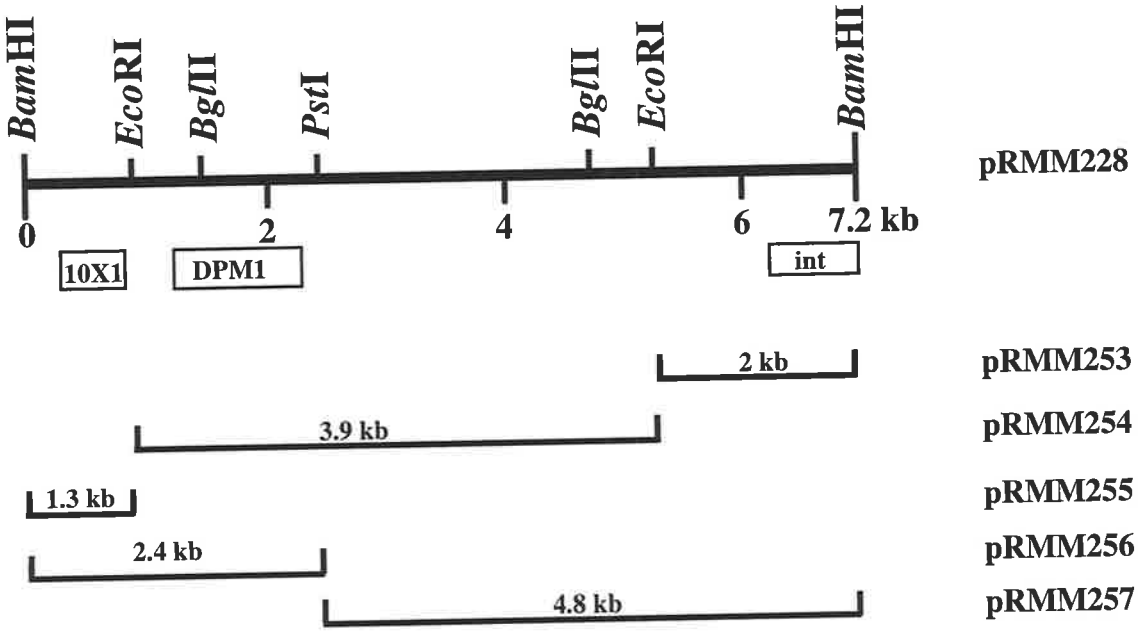

PstI
BamHI
BamHI
PstI
PstI
EcoRI
BamHI
EcoRI
PstI
BamHI
BamHI
BamHI
PstI
EcoRI
BamHI
PstI
BamHI
EcoRI
PstI
PstI
EcoRI
PstI
0
10
20
30
40
42.3kb
PstI fragments
6
7
3
2
1
5
8
4
f122
o112, o189, o455
f164
Q
dpm1
galactosyl transferase
holin
Q

Figure 3.9 Subclones of rearranged *Pst*I fragment 3.

Subclones pRMM253, pRMM254, pRMM255, pRMM256 and pRMM257 of the rearranged fragment 3 pRMM228 were partially sequenced using dye primer sequencing. Region of homology with P22 integrase, orf10X1 of *S. flexneri* and Dpm1 of *S. cerevisiae* are indicated.


BamHI
EcoRI
BglII
PstI
BglII
EcoRI
BamHI
0
2
4
6
7.2 kb
10X1
DPM1
int
pRMM228
2 kb
pRMM253
3.9 kb
pRMM254
1.3 kb
pRMM255
2.4 kb
pRMM256
4.8 kb
pRMM257

site. A homologue to the *S. flexneri* ORF10x1 (Morona *et al.*, 1994) was found near the *Eco*RI site. Homology to the dolichol phosphate mannosyl synthase gene (*dpm*1) of *Saccharomyces cerevisae* (Orlean *et al.*, 1988) was also seen when sequencing was carried out from the 3' end of pRMM257 and weak homology to a *Salmonella* galactosyl transferase gene was identified in the *Pst*I-2 fragment. The region of DNA encompassing encompassing *Pst*I-2 and *Pst*I-3 was subsequently isolated.

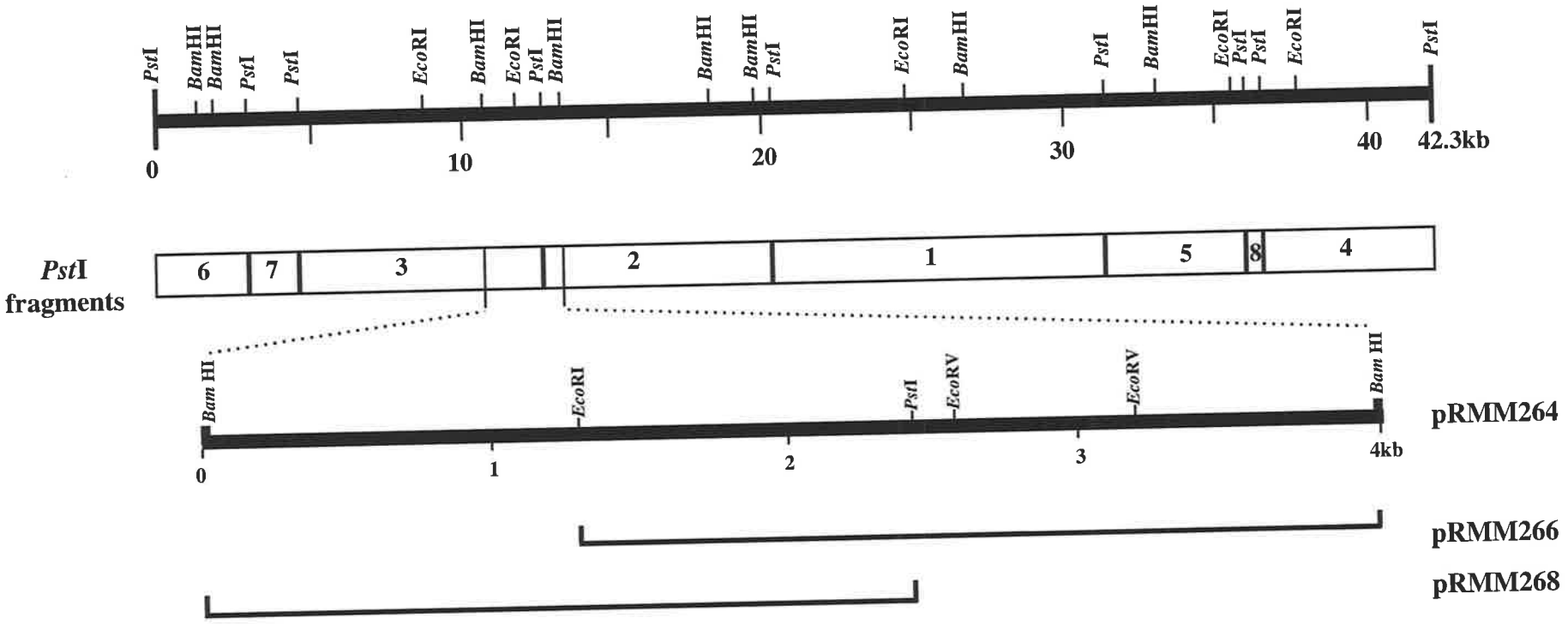
3.2.8 Identification of a region of bacteriophage SfII with serotype-converting ability

A 4 kb *Bam*HI fragment overlapping the *Pst*I-2 and *Pst*I-3 junction was isolated and cloned into pBC-KS resulting in pRMM264 (Fig. 3.10). Upon transformation of pRMM264 into PE577 conversion from Y to 2a was seen by colony immunoblotting using type II antiserum. Two derivatives of pRMM264, pRMM266 and pRMM268 (Fig. 3.10), which are *Eco*RI and *Pst*I deletions respectively, were unable to mediate conversion to serotype 2 when introduced into PE577 as determined by slide agglutination and colony immunoblotting.

3.3 Summary

This chapter described the isolation of the serotype converting bacteriophage SfII which is responsible for the addition of a glucose residue to the RhaIII of the tetrasaccharide repeat unit of the LPS of *S. flexneri*, resulting in expression of the type II antigen. Morphologically bacteriophage SfII belongs to the group A of the Bradley classification and does not exhibit O-antigen hydrolytic activity. Characterisation of the genome of SfII phage revealed homology to regions of the *E. coli* K-12 chromosome and bacteriophage P22. A 4 kb region of DNA in pRMM264 which was able to mediate serotype conversion to type II.

Figure 3.10 Map of genome of SfII phage and serotype-converting plasmid pRMM264. pRMM264 is a 4kb *Bam*HI fragment encompassing the junction of *Pst*I-2 and *Pst*I-3, which contains the gene(s) required for conversion to type II. Plasmids pRMM266 and pRMM268 are subclones of pRMM264 and do not possess serotype converting ability.


PstI
BamHI
BamHI
PstI
PstI
EcoRI
BamHI
EcoRI
PstI
BamHI
BamHI
BamHI
PstI
EcoRI
BamHI
PstI
BamHI
EcoRI
PstI
PstI
EcoRI
PstI
0
10
20
30
40
42.3kb
PstI fragments
6
7
3
2
1
5
8
4
Bam HI
EcoRI
PstI
EcoRV
EcoRV
Bam HI
0
1
2
3
4kb
pRMM264
pRMM266
pRMM268

Chapter Four

Sequence of pRMM264 and identification of the attachment region of bacteriophage SfII

4.1 Introduction

Temperate bacteriophages possess several features which allow them to integrate and excise from their hosts chromosome: an attachment site (*attP*), an integrase gene (*int*) and an excisionase gene (*xis*). Similarly, the bacterial host must possess the corresponding attachment site (*attB*) and must encode an integration host factor (IHF) (Campbell, 1992).

Integration of the phage genome into the bacterial chromosome occurs by site-specific recombination at the attachment sites and is mediated by the function of the integrase gene product. Excision of a temperate phage requires the action of both the integrase (*int*) and excisionase (*xis*) which are often located adjacent to the *attP* site.

This chapter describes the DNA sequencing of the serotype converting plasmid pRMM264. In addition, plasmid pRMM273 was isolated which encompasses the region upstream of the 5' *Bam*HI site in pRMM264. Five open reading frames were identified: *xis*, *int*, ORF2, ORF3 and ORF4. The attachment site, *attP*, was also identified and localised to *Pst*I fragment 3.

4.2 Results

4.2.1 DNA sequencing of the *Bam*HI-*Bam*HI insert in pRMM264

DNA sequencing of the insert in pRMM264 (Section 3.2.7) was carried out using three clones derived from *Bam*HI, *Pst*I and *Eco*RI subclones of the 4 kb *Bam*HI fragment: pRMM267, pRMM262 and pRMM255 (Fig. 4.1). Dye primer sequencing was carried out on each of these plasmids using M13 forward and reverse primers. Oligonucleotide primers (Fig. 4.1, Table 2.4) were designed from the sequence obtained and used in Dye Terminator reactions to sequence the remainder of the fragment.

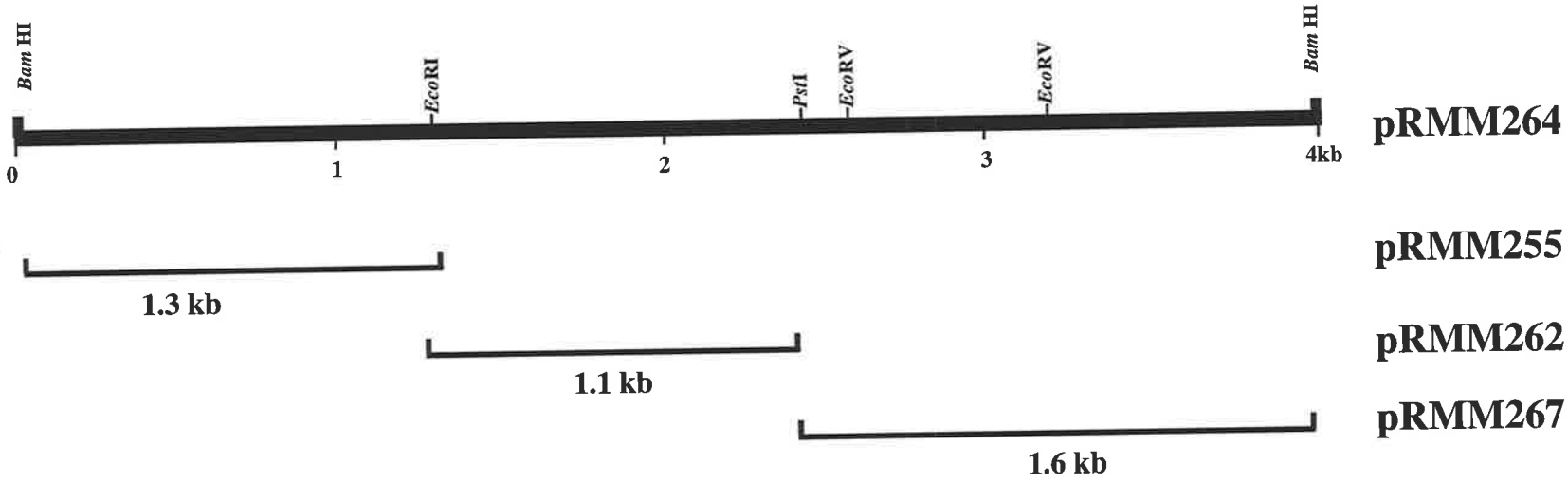
4.2.2 Open reading frames in 4 kb *Bam*HI fragment of pRMM264

Three complete ORFs were found in the 4 kb *Bam*HI fragment of pRMM264, with a further ORF located at the 5' end which was found to be partial. By comparison with databases, this ORF was found to encode an integrase homologue (Section 4.2.3). In order to clone the complete *int* gene, plasmid pRMM273 (*Bam*HI-*Bgl*II) was isolated. pRMM273 lies entirely within fragment *Pst*I-3 and contains the fragment adjacent to pRMM264, sharing the *Bam*HI site and containing the 5' end of the partial ORF. Sequencing of this 1.4 kb fragment was carried out using oligonucleotide primers (Fig. 4.2, Table 2.4) and resulted in the identification of a fifth ORF (*xis*).

The combined 5.2 kb sequence of pRMM264 and pRMM273 is shown in Figure 4.3. The GenBank Accession number is AF021347.

Figure 4.1 Sequencing strategy for pRMM264.

Three subclones of pRMM264 were constructed: pRMM255 (1.3 kb *Bam*HI-*Eco*RI), pRMM262 (1.1 kb *Eco*RI-*Pst*I) and pRMM267 (1.6 kb *Pst*I-*Bam*HI). M13 dye primer sequencing was used on pRMM264 and subclones and based on the sequence obtained, oligonucleotide primers (numbered) were designed to facilitate sequencing of both strands of the entire fragment.


Bam HI
EcoRI
PstI
EcoRV
EcoRV
Bam HI
0
1
2
3
4kb
pRMM264
pRMM255
1.3 kb
pRMM262
1.1 kb
pRMM267
1.6 kb

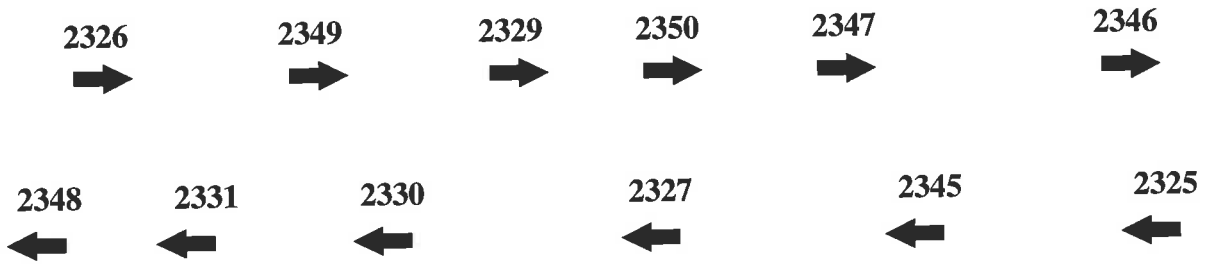

2326
2349
2329
2350
2347
2346
2348
2331
2330
2327
2345
2325

Figure 4.2 Sequencing strategy of ORF1- integrase region

A 1.4 kb *Bam*HI-*Bgl*II fragment encompassing the 5' end of the integrase gene (*int*) was isolated and cloned into pBC-KS. Oligonucleotide primers (numbered) were designed to sequence both strands.

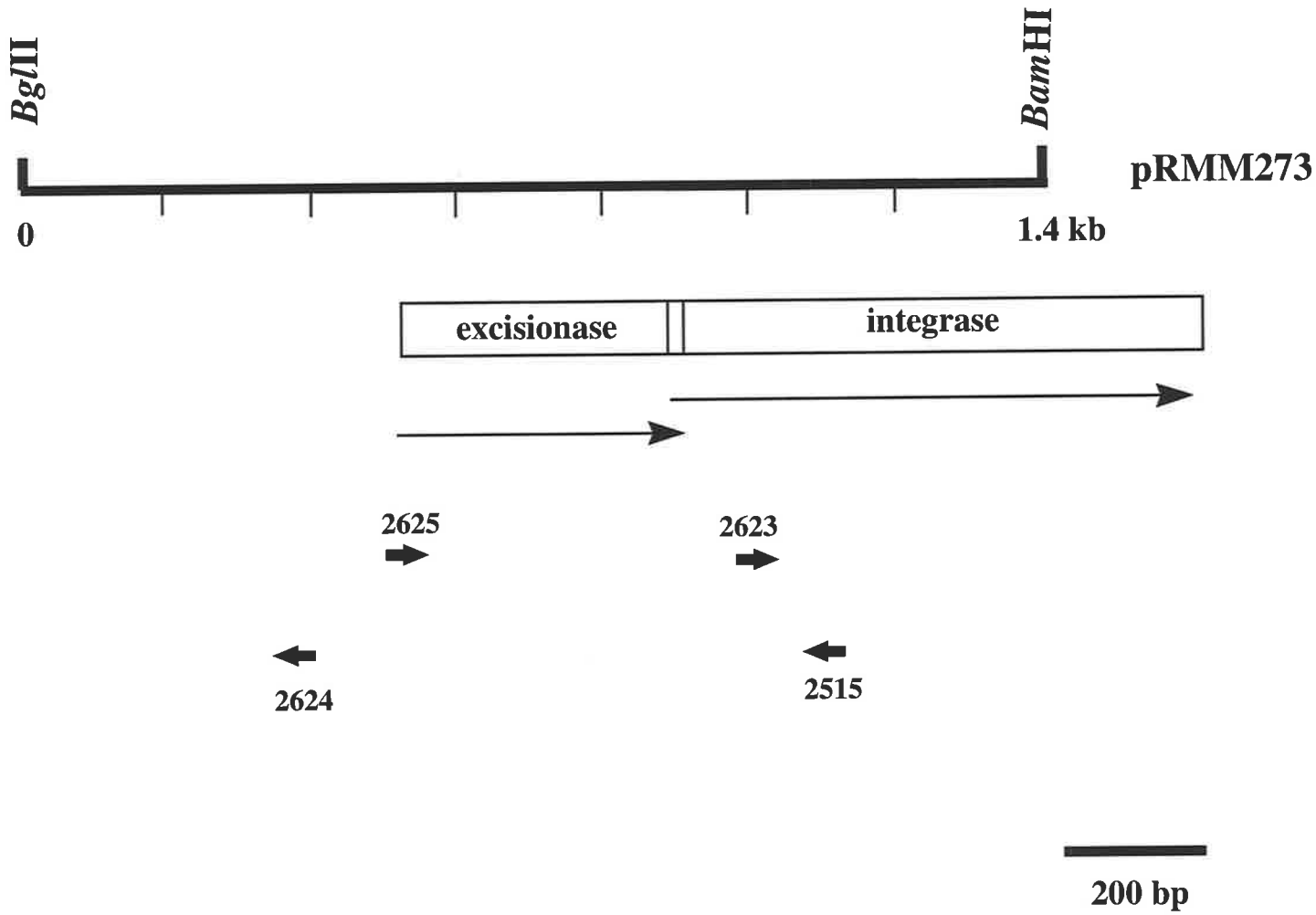
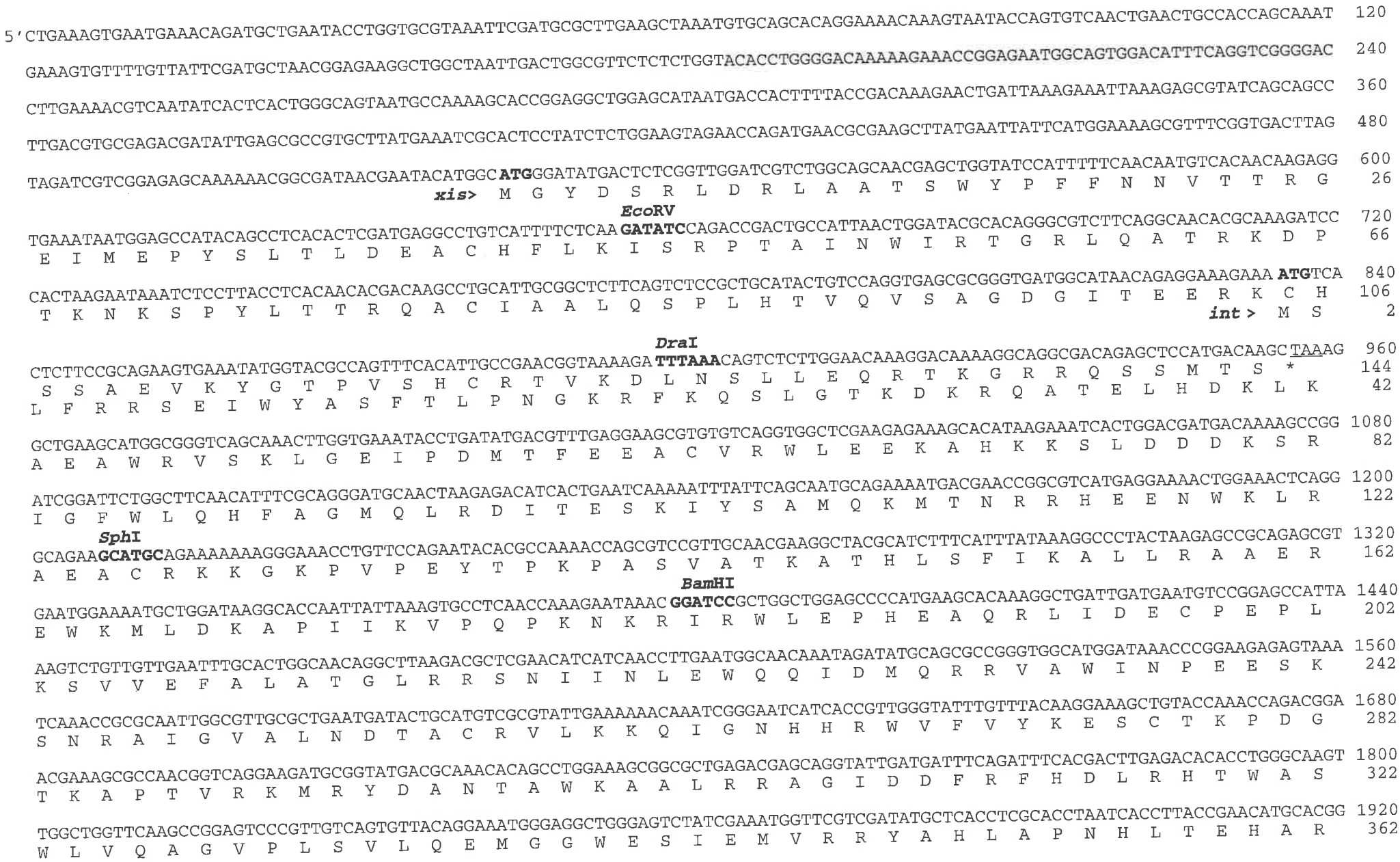
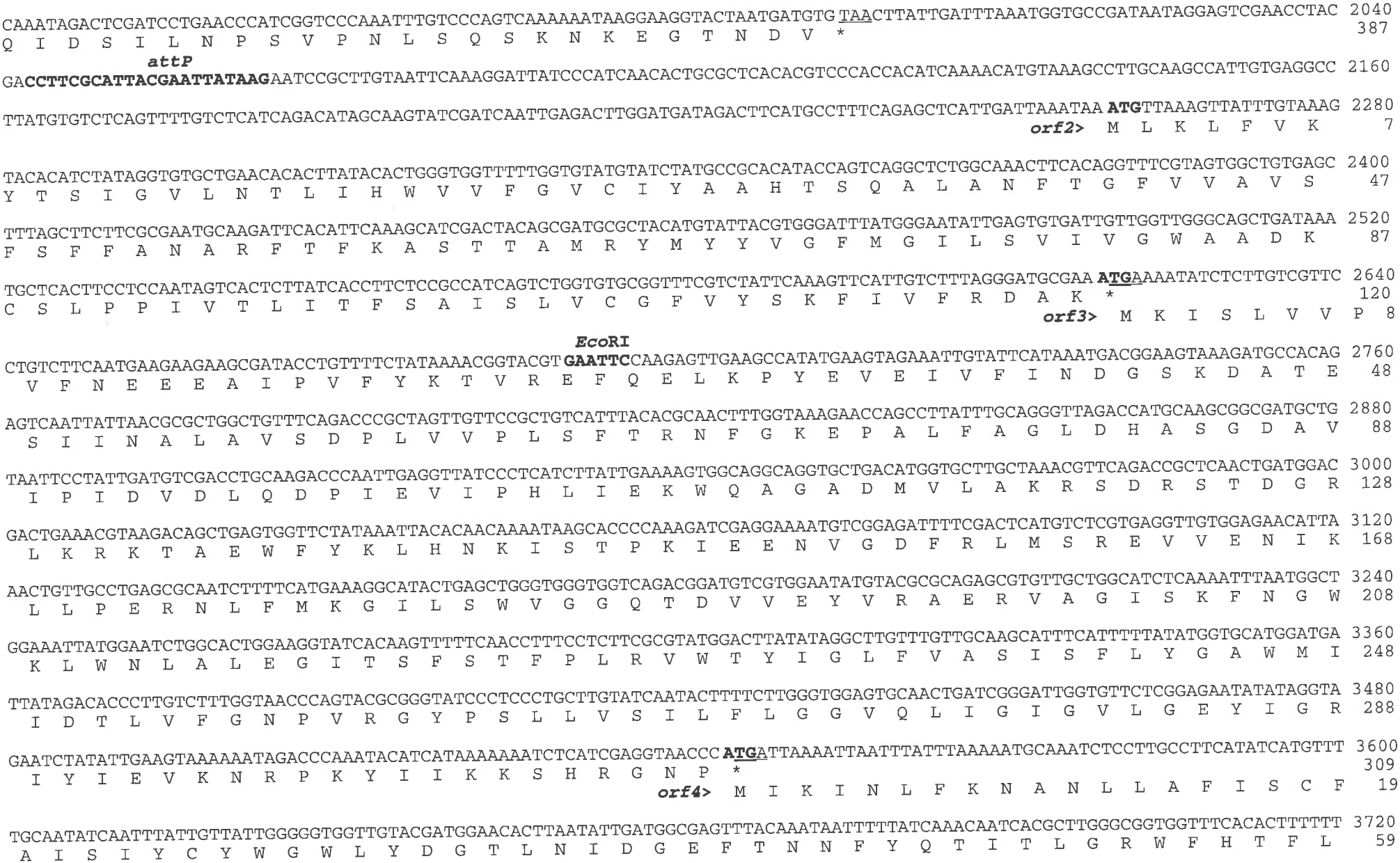
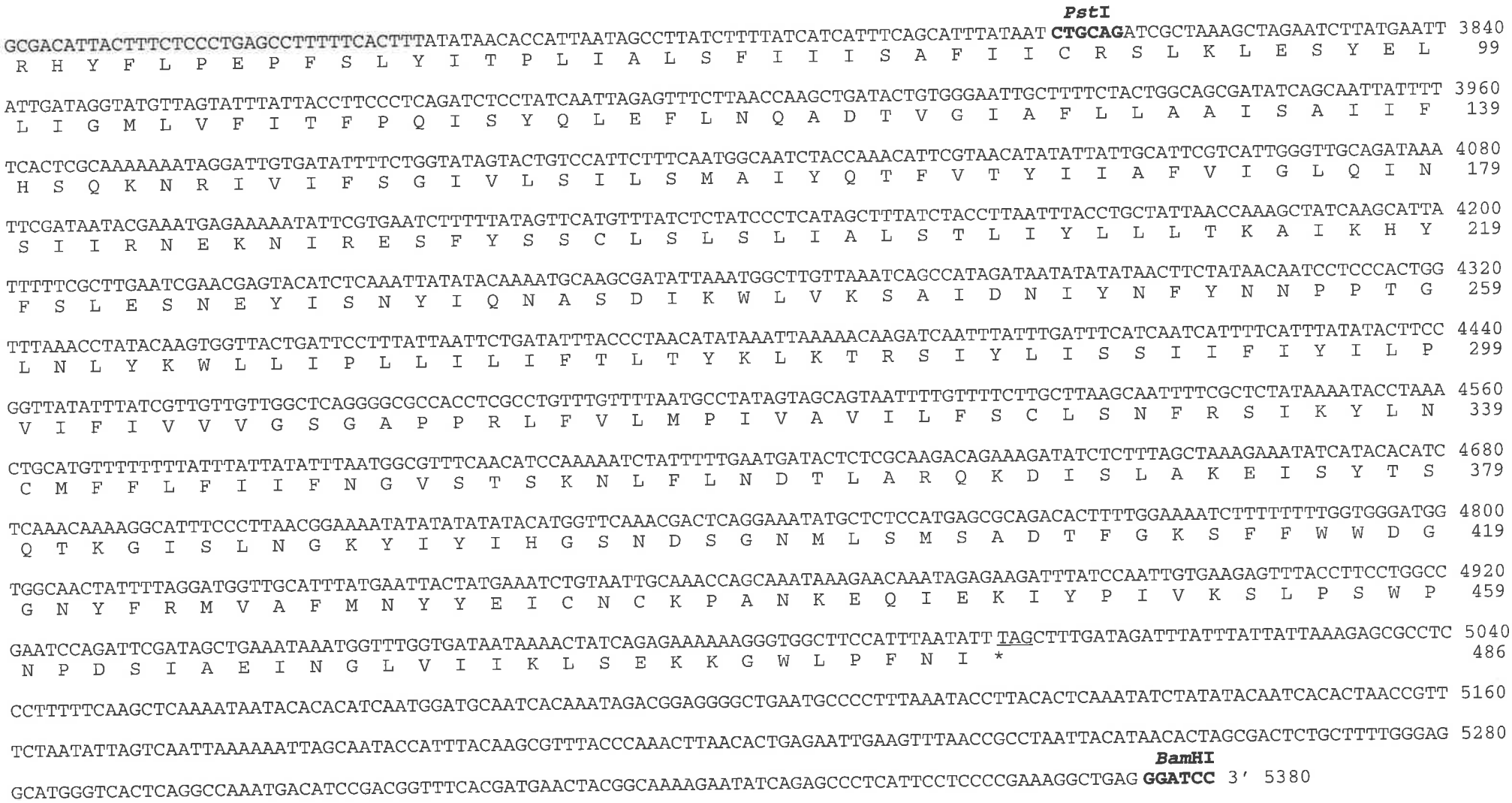

BglII
BamHI
pRMM273
0
1.4 kb
excisionase
integrase
2625
2623
2624
2515
200 bp

Figure 4.3 Combined sequence of inserts in pRMM264 and pRMM273

The sequence data generated in the manner shown in Figures 4.1 and 4.2 were linked together via the *Bam*HI site that is shared by the inserts in the two plasmids. The open reading frames and the translation in one letter amino acid code are shown. Start codons and restriction sites are indicated in bold and stop codons are underlined. The name of the ORF is shown before the start codon.


5'CTGAAAGTGAATGAAACAGATGCTGAATACCTGGTGCGTAAATTCGATGCGCTTGAAGCTAAATGTGCAGCACAGGAAAACAAAGTAATACCAGTGTCAACTGAACTGCCACCAGCAAAT 120
GAAAGTGTTTTGTTATTCGATGCTAACGGAGAAGGCTGGCTAATTGACTGGCGTTCTCTCTGGTACACCTGGGGACAAAAAGAAACCGGAGAATGGCAGTGGACATTTCAGGTCGGGGAC 240
CTTGAAAACGTCAATATCACTCACTGGGCAGTAATGCCAAAAGCACCGGAGGCTGGAGCATAATGACCACTTTTACCGACAAAGAACTGATTAAAGAAATTAAAGAGCGTATCAGCAGCC 360
TTGACGTGCGAGACGATATTGAGCGCCGTGCTTATGAAATCGCACTCCTATCTCTGGAAGTAGAACCAGATGAACGCGAAGCTTATGAATTATTCATGGAAAAGCGTTTCGGTGACTTAG 480
TAGATCGTCGGAGAGCAAAAAACGGCGATAACGAATACATGGCATGGGATATGACTCTCGGTTGGATCGTCTGGCAGCAACGAGCTGGTATCCATTTTTCAACAATGTCACAACAAGAGG 600
xis> M G Y D S R L D R L A A T S W Y P F F N N V T T R G 26
EcoRV
TGAAATAATGGAGCCATACAGCCTCACACTCGATGAGGCCTGTCATTTTCTCAAGATATCCAGACCGACTGCCATTAACTGGATACGCACAGGGCGTCTTCAGGCAACACGCAAAGATCC 720
E I M E P Y S L T L D E A C H F L K I S R P T A I N W I R T G R L Q A T R K D P 66
CACTAAGAATAAATCTCCTTACCTCACAACACGACAAGCCTGCATTGCGGCTCTTCAGTCTCCGCTGCATACTGTCCAGGTGAGCGCGGGTGATGGCATAACAGAGGAAAGAAAATGTCA 840
T K N K S P Y L T T R Q A C I A A L Q S P L H T V Q V S A G D G I T E E R K C H 106
int > M S 2
DraI
CTCTTCCGCAGAAGTGAAATATGGTACGCCAGTTTCACATTGCCGAACGGTAAAAGATTTAAACAGTCTCTTGGAACAAAGGACAAAAGGCAGGCGACAGAGCTCCATGACAAGCTAAAG 960
S S A E V K Y G T P V S H C R T V K D L N S L L E Q R T K G R R Q S S M T S * 144
L F R R S E I W Y A S F T L P N G K R F K Q S L G T K D K R Q A T E L H D K L K 42
GCTGAAGCATGGCGGGTCAGCAAACTTGGTGAAATACCTGATATGACGTTTGAGGAAGCGTGTGTCAGGTGGCTCGAAGAGAAAGCACATAAGAAATCACTGGACGATGACAAAAGCCGG 1080
A E A W R V S K L G E I P D M T F E E A C V R W L E E K A H K K S L D D D K S R 82
ATCGGATTCTGGCTTCAACATTTCGCAGGGATGCAACTAAGAGACATCACTGAATCAAAAATTTATTCAGCAATGCAGAAAATGACGAACCGGCGTCATGAGGAAAACTGGAAACTCAGG 1200
I G F W L Q H F A G M Q L R D I T E S K I Y S A M Q K M T N R R H E E N W K L R 122
SphI
GCAGAAGCATGCAGAAAAAAAGGGAAACCTGTTCCAGAATACACGCCAAAACCAGCGTCCGTTGCAACGAAGGCTACGCATCTTTCATTTATAAAGGCCCTACTAAGAGCCGCAGAGCGT 1320
A E A C R K K G K P V P E Y T P K P A S V A T K A T H L S F I K A L L R A A E R 162
BamHI
GAATGGAAAATGCTGGATAAGGCACCAATTATTAAAGTGCCTCAACCAAAGAATAAACGGATCCGCTGGCTGGAGCCCCATGAAGCACAAAGGCTGATTGATGAATGTCCGGAGCCATTA 1440
E W K M L D K A P I I K V P Q P K N K R I R W L E P H E A Q R L I D E C P E P L 202
AAGTCTGTTGTTGAATTTGCACTGGCAACAGGCTTAAGACGCTCGAACATCATCAACCTTGAATGGCAACAAATAGATATGCAGCGCCGGGTGGCATGGATAAACCCGGAAGAGAGTAAA 1560
K S V V E F A L A T G L R R S N I I N L E W Q Q I D M Q R R V A W I N P E E S K 242
TCAAACCGCGCAATTGGCGTTGCGCTGAATGATACTGCATGTCGCGTATTGAAAAAACAAATCGGGAATCATCACCGTTGGGTATTTGTTTACAAGGAAAGCTGTACCAAACCAGACGGA 1680
S N R A I G V A L N D T A C R V L K K Q I G N H H R W V F V Y K E S C T K P D G 282
ACGAAAGCGCCAACGGTCAGGAAGATGCGGTATGACGCAAACACAGCCTGGAAAGCGGCGCTGAGACGAGCAGGTATTGATGATTTCAGATTTCACGACTTGAGACACACCTGGGCAAGT 1800
T K A P T V R K M R Y D A N T A W K A A L R R A G I D D F R F H D L R H T W A S 322
TGGCTGGTTCAAGCCGGAGTCCCGTTGTCAGTGTTACAGGAAATGGGAGGCTGGGAGTCTATCGAAATGGTTCGTCGATATGCTCACCTCGCACCTAATCACCTTACCGAACATGCACGG 1920
W L V Q A G V P L S V L Q E M G G W E S I E M V R R Y A H L A P N H L T E H A R 362


attP
orf2>
EcoRI
orf3>
orf4>


PstI
GCGACATTACTTTCTCCCTGAGCCTTTTTCACTTTATATAACACCATTAATAGCCTTATCTTTTATCATCATTTCAGCATTTATAAT CTGCAGATCGCTAAAGCTAGAATCTTATGAATT 3840
R H Y F L P E P F S L Y I T P L I A L S F I I I S A F I I C R S L K L E S Y E L 99
ATTGATAGGTATGTTAGTATTTATTACCTTCCCTCAGATCTCCTATCAATTAGAGTTTCTTAACCAAGCTGATACTGTGGGAATTGCTTTTCTACTGGCAGCGATATCAGCAATTATTTT 3960
L I G M L V F I T F P Q I S Y Q L E F L N Q A D T V G I A F L L A A I S A I I F 139
TCACTCGCAAAAAAATAGGATTGTGATATTTTCTGGTATAGTACTGTCCATTCTTTCAATGGCAATCTACCAAACATTCGTAACATATATTATTGCATTCGTCATTGGGTTGCAGATAAA 4080
H S Q K N R I V I F S G I V L S I L S M A I Y Q T F V T Y I I A F V I G L Q I N 179
TTCGATAATACGAAATGAGAAAAATATTCGTGAATCTTTTTATAGTTCATGTTTATCTCTATCCCTCATAGCTTTATCTACCTTAATTTACCTGCTATTAACCAAAGCTATCAAGCATTA 4200
S I I R N E K N I R E S F Y S S C L S L S L I A L S T L I Y L L L T K A I K H Y 219
TTTTTCGCTTGAATCGAACGAGTACATCTCAAATTATATACAAAATGCAAGCGATATTAAATGGCTTGTTAAATCAGCCATAGATAATATATATAACTTCTATAACAATCCTCCCACTGG 4320
F S L E S N E Y I S N Y I Q N A S D I K W L V K S A I D N I Y N F Y N N P P T G 259
TTTAAACCTATACAAGTGGTTACTGATTCCTTTATTAATTCTGATATTTACCCTAACATATAAATTAAAAACAAGATCAATTTATTTGATTTCATCAATCATTTTCATTTATATACTTCC 4440
L N L Y K W L L I P L L I L I F T L T Y K L K T R S I Y L I S S I I F I Y I L P 299
GGTTATATTTATCGTTGTTGTTGGCTCAGGGGCGCCACCTCGCCTGTTTGTTTTAATGCCTATAGTAGCAGTAATTTTGTTTTCTTGCTTAAGCAATTTTCGCTCTATAAAATACCTAAA 4560
V I F I V V V G S G A P P R L F V L M P I V A V I L F S C L S N F R S I K Y L N 339
CTGCATGTTTTTTTTATTTATTATATTTAATGGCGTTTCAACATCCAAAAATCTATTTTTGAATGATACTCTCGCAAGACAGAAAGATATCTCTTTAGCTAAAGAAATATCATACACATC 4680
C M F F L F I I F N G V S T S K N L F L N D T L A R Q K D I S L A K E I S Y T S 379
TCAAACAAAAGGCATTTCCCTTAACGGAAAATATATATATATACATGGTTCAAACGACTCAGGAAATATGCTCTCCATGAGCGCAGACACTTTTGGAAAATCTTTTTTTTGGTGGGATGG 4800
Q T K G I S L N G K Y I Y I H G S N D S G N M L S M S A D T F G K S F F W W D G 419
TGGCAACTATTTTAGGATGGTTGCATTTATGAATTACTATGAAATCTGTAATTGCAAACCAGCAAATAAAGAACAAATAGAGAAGATTTATCCAATTGTGAAGAGTTTACCTTCCTGGCC 4920
G N Y F R M V A F M N Y Y E I C N C K P A N K E Q I E K I Y P I V K S L P S W P 459
GAATCCAGATTCGATAGCTGAAATAAATGGTTTGGTGATAATAAAACTATCAGAGAAAAAAGGGTGGCTTCCATTTAATATT TAGCTTTGATAGATTTATTTATTATTAAAGAGCGCCTC 5040
N P D S I A E I N G L V I I K L S E K K G W L P F N I * 486
CCTTTTTCAAGCTCAAAATAATACACACATCAATGGATGCAATCACAAATAGACGGAGGGGCTGAATGCCCCTTTAAATACCTTACACTCAAATATCTATATACAATCACACTAACCGTT 5160
TCTAATATTAGTCAATTAAAAAATTAGCAATACCATTTACAAGCGTTTACCCAAACTTAACACTGAGAATTGAAGTTTAACCGCCTAATTACATAACACTAGCGACTCTGCTTTTGGGAG 5280
BamHI
GCATGGGTCACTCAGGCCAAATGACATCCGACGGTTTCACGATGAACTACGGCAAAAGAATATCAGAGCCCTCATTCCTCCCCGAAAGGCTGAG GGATCC 3′ 5380

4.2.3 Open reading frames in 5.2 kb sequence

Five open reading frames were found in the 5.2 kb sequence which were all transcribed in the same direction (Fig. 4.4). Potential ribosome binding sites have been identified upstream of the start codons of the five ORFs (Table 4.1), however no sequences resembling *E. coli* consensus promoter sequences for the "Pribnow box" (TTGACA) and the "-35 region" (TATAAT) were observed. The start and stop codons of *int*, *xis* and the latter three ORFs; ORF2, ORF3 and ORF4 overlap, resulting in a shift in the reading frame for the next gene; this arrangement suggests that translation of these genes may be coupled.

4.2.4 Integrase (*int*) and Excisionase (*xis*)

Two open reading frames were identified between nt. 524-958 and nt. 835-1998 and were found to be transcribed in the same direction. The first of these exhibited a 87.8% (nucleotide level) and 87.9% (amino acid level) and homology to the excisionase gene (*xis*) of bacteriophage P22 and 68.8% homology to the region upstream of the integrase gene in the defective phage DLP12 which is located at 12 min on the *E. coli* K-12 chromosome. The second ORF also exhibited a high degree of homology to the integrase gene of phage P22 (X04052) and the defective phage DLP12 (M31074) (Table 4.2). The organisation of the two ORFs (*xis* and *int*) in bacteriophage SfII is identical to phage P22 (Poteete, 1988).

4.2.5 The attachment site, *attP*

Lysogens of SfII were further characterised by Southern hybridisation as shown in Figure 4.5. Chromosomal DNA of lysogens RMM181 and RMM273, the parent strain

Figure 4.4 Open reading frames of 5.4 kb sequence.

Plasmid pRMM264, spans *Pst*I fragments 2 and 3 of the SfII genome. Plasmid pRMM273 is located upstream of pRMM264 and contained within *Pst*I fragment 3. Sequencing of the total 5.4 kb of DNA identified five ORFs transcribed in the same direction. The first two ORFs show homology to excisionase and integrase genes of known phages and the latter three ORFs are discussed (Chapter 5).

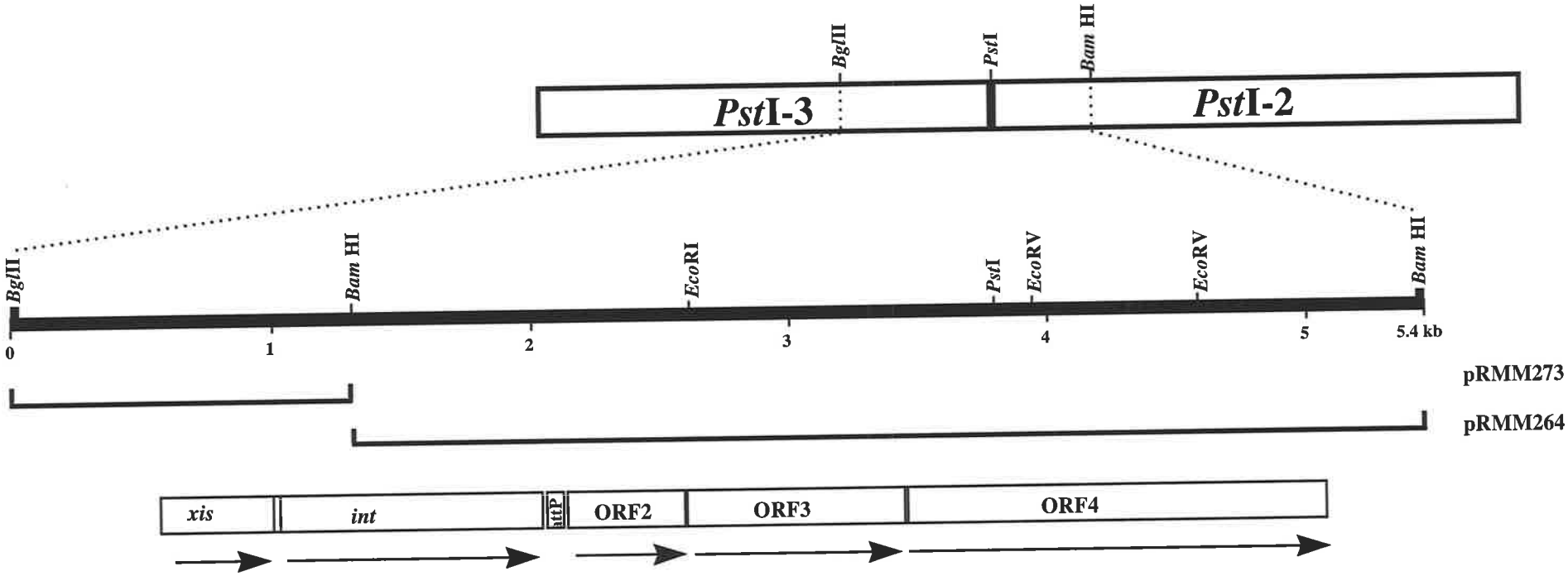

BglII
PstI
Bam HI
PstI-3
PstI-2
BglII
Bam HI
EcoRI
PstI
EcoRV
EcoRV
Bam HI
0
1
2
3
4
5
5.4 kb
pRMM273
pRMM264
xis
int
attP
ORF2
ORF3
ORF4

Table 4.1 Table of properties of ORFs encoded by 5.4 kb sequence

	Coding Region	M.W. [a]	aa[b]	pI [c]	Hydropathy Index[d]	G+C%	rbs[e]
xis	nt. 524-958	16,249	144	9.86	-0.64	47.6	nt. 511 AC**GAATA**CATGGCATG
int	nt 835-1998	44,942	387	10.23	-0.71	46.9	nt. 822 CA**GAGG**AAAGAAATG
ORF2	nt 2260-2622	13,298	120	9.86	1.03	43.0	nt 2250 ATT**GATT**AAATAATG
ORF3	nt 2619-3548	34,844	309	7.68	0.09	42.4	nt 26079 TAG**GGAT**GCGAAATG
ORF4	nt 3545-5005	55,775	486	9.11	0.54	31.8	nt 3534 C**GAGG**TAACCCATG

[a] - molecular weight
[b] - number of amino acids the ORF
[c] - determined using PROSIS
[d] - determined according to Kyte and Doolittle as implemented in PROSIS
[e] - potential ribosome binding site identified at nucleotide position indicated

Table 4.2 Similarity of *int* to other ORFs

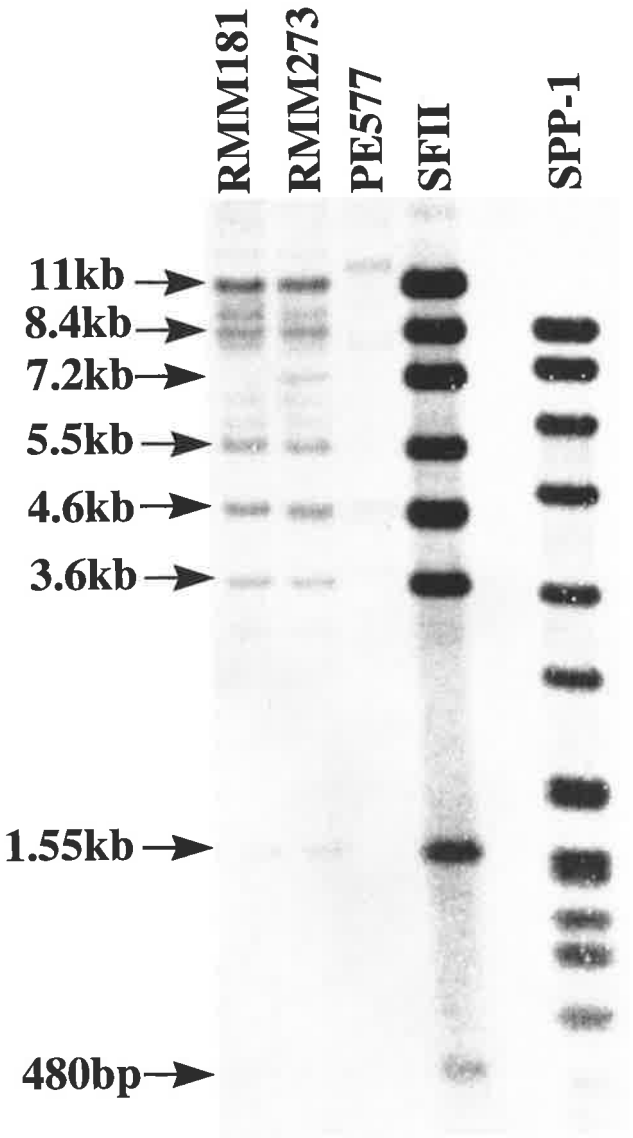
	int	P22*int*	DLP12*int*
int	100	79.9 (N) 90.2 (A)	68.7 (N) 72.7 (A)
P22*int*		100	68.3 (N) 71.1 (A)
DLP12*int*			100

The values shown represent both homology at the nucleotide level (N) and the amino acid level (A) over the entire length of the coding sequence. P22*int* corresponds to the integrase gene of *Salmonella* bacteriophage P22 (X04052), DLP12*int*; corresponds to the integrase of a defective phage in the *E. coli* K-12 chromosome at map position 12 min (M31074)

Figure 4.5 Southern hybridisation of lysogens of SfII.

Chromosomal DNA of two SfII *S. flexneri* lysogens (RMM181 and RMM273) were digested with *Pst*I, transferred to nylon membrane and probed with DIG-labelled *Pst*I digested SfII DNA. The arrows indicate the sizes of the *Pst*I fragments, corresponding to *Pst*I digested phage SfII DNA.

The marker track *Eco*RI digested SPP-1 phage DNA is detected using DIG-labelled SPP-1 (sizes are 8.5, 7.3, 6.1, 4.8, 3.6, 2.8, 1.95, 1.86, 1.51, 1.3, 1.16, 0.98 and 0.72 kb) and is also shown in this figure.


RMM181
RMM273
PE577
SFII
SPP-1
11kb
8.4kb
7.2kb
5.5kb
4.6kb
3.6kb
1.55kb
480bp

PE577, and phage SfII were digested with *Pst*I and then probed with DIG-labelled SfII DNA. The genome of phage SfII is restricted into 8 fragments by the enzyme *Pst*I, all of which can be clearly seen in the lane labelled SFII. The parent strain, PE577 shows weak homology to SfII, whereas, RMM181 and RMM273, two SfII lysogens, show seven of the eight *Pst*I fragments, with *Pst*I-3 missing in both. *Pst*I-3 may contain the attachment region (*attP*) of phage SfII, which is required for the integration of the phage genome into the host chromosome and is subsequently split upon integration (see Fig. 4.6). Inspection of the sequence (Fig. 4.3) identified the *attP* site which is located on *Pst*I fragment 3 between *int* and ORF2 at nt 2043-2064 (5'CTTCGCATTACGAATTATAAG3') (Fig. 4.3) identical to that of phage P22 (Leong *et al.*, 1985).

A region of DNA encompassing the 3' end of *int, attP* and the 5' end of ORF2 of pRMM264 was DIG-labelled using PCR with primers #2326 and #2330 (Table 2.4) and used to probe *Pst*I digested chromosomal DNA of several independent lysogens (Section 3.2.5). A single fragment of 8.5 kb in size was seen in the parent track , PE577, (Fig. 4.7A) whereas in the tracks containing the lysogens (RMM181, RMM182, RMM189 and RMM273), two fragments of 9.2 and 6.5 kb were detected which correspond to the hybrid *attP/attB* sites formed as a result of integration (Fig. 4.6).

Bacteriophage P22 integrates into the *Salmonella typhimurium* chromosome adjacent to *proAB* at 7 min. The same sequence is found in the *E. coli* K-12 (ECAEOOO132) genome where the tRNA gene *thrW* (nt. 8811-8886) is encoded adjacent to *proA,B* and contains the *attB* site (nt. 8841-8855, 5'ATTCGTAATGCGAAG3'). This region was amplified by PCR (primers #2370, 2371) and DIG-labelled and used to probe *Pst*I digested chromosomal DNA of the lysogens. Figure 4.7B shows that *thrW* hybridises to a fragment of approximately 9.2 kb in the parent strain PE577, whereas in the SfII lysogenic strains the fragment containing *thrW* (or *attB*) is located on a larger fragment of 9.2 kb in size. A much fainter band is detected at approximately 6.5 kb; the reason this fragment stains weakly is not known,

Figure 4.6 Integration of phage genome into host chromosome via attachment sites; *attP* and *attB*.

The phage attachment site (*attP*) is contained within *Pst*I fragment 3 at the location indicated in Figure 4.2 and the distances from the *Pst*I sites are shown. The host attachment site (*attB*) lies within the tRNA gene *thrW* where recombination between the two sequences occurs resulting in a hybrid site.

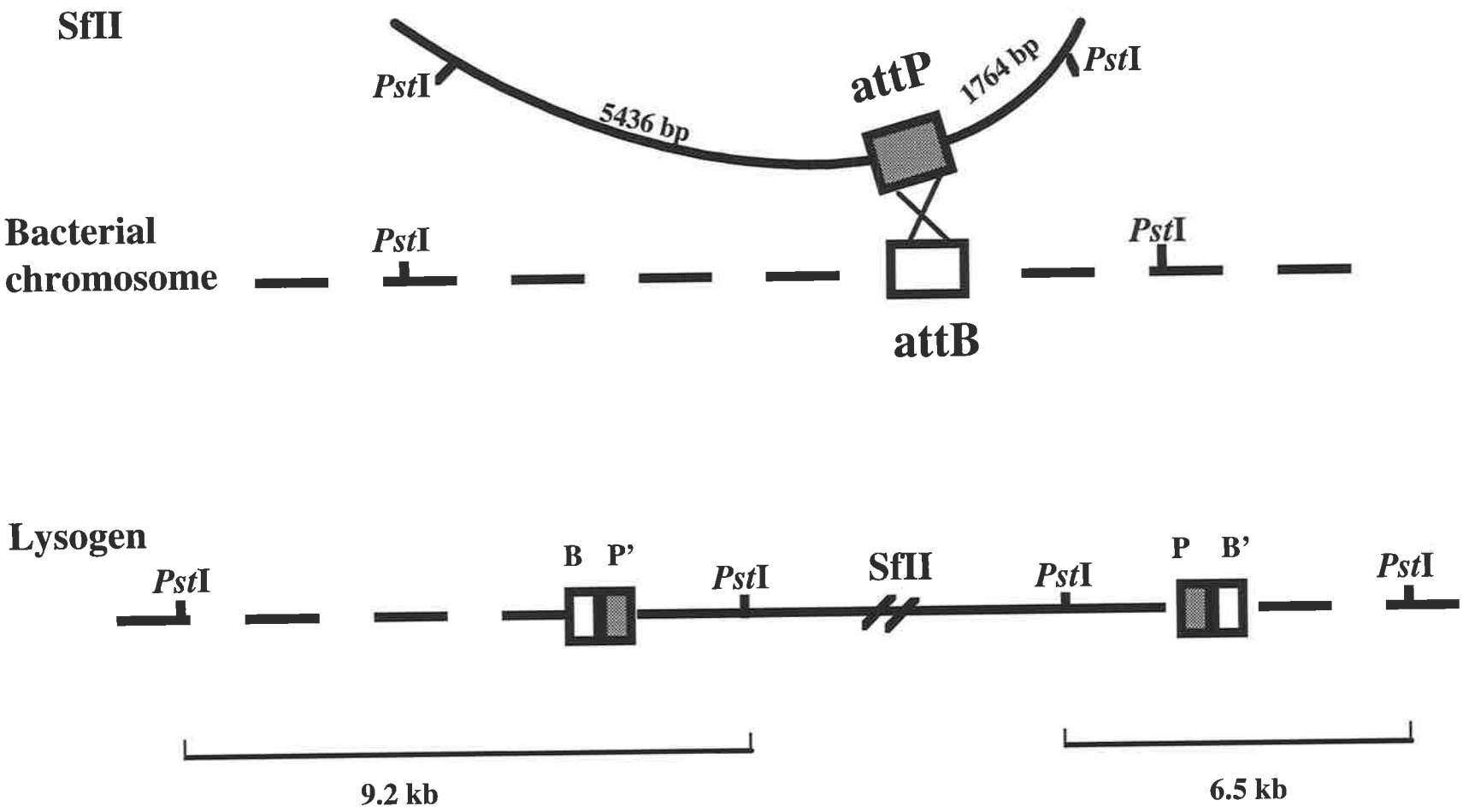

SfII
PstI
5436 bp
attP
1764 bp
PstI
Bacterial chromosome
PstI
PstI
attB
Lysogen
PstI
B P'
PstI
SfII
PstI
P B'
PstI
9.2 kb
6.5 kb

Figure 4.7 Southern hybridisation to identify attachment site, *attP*.

Southern hybridisations using chromosomal DNA from:

lane 1: PE577, parent strain

lane 2: RMM181, SfII lysogen

lane 3: RMM182, SfII lysogen

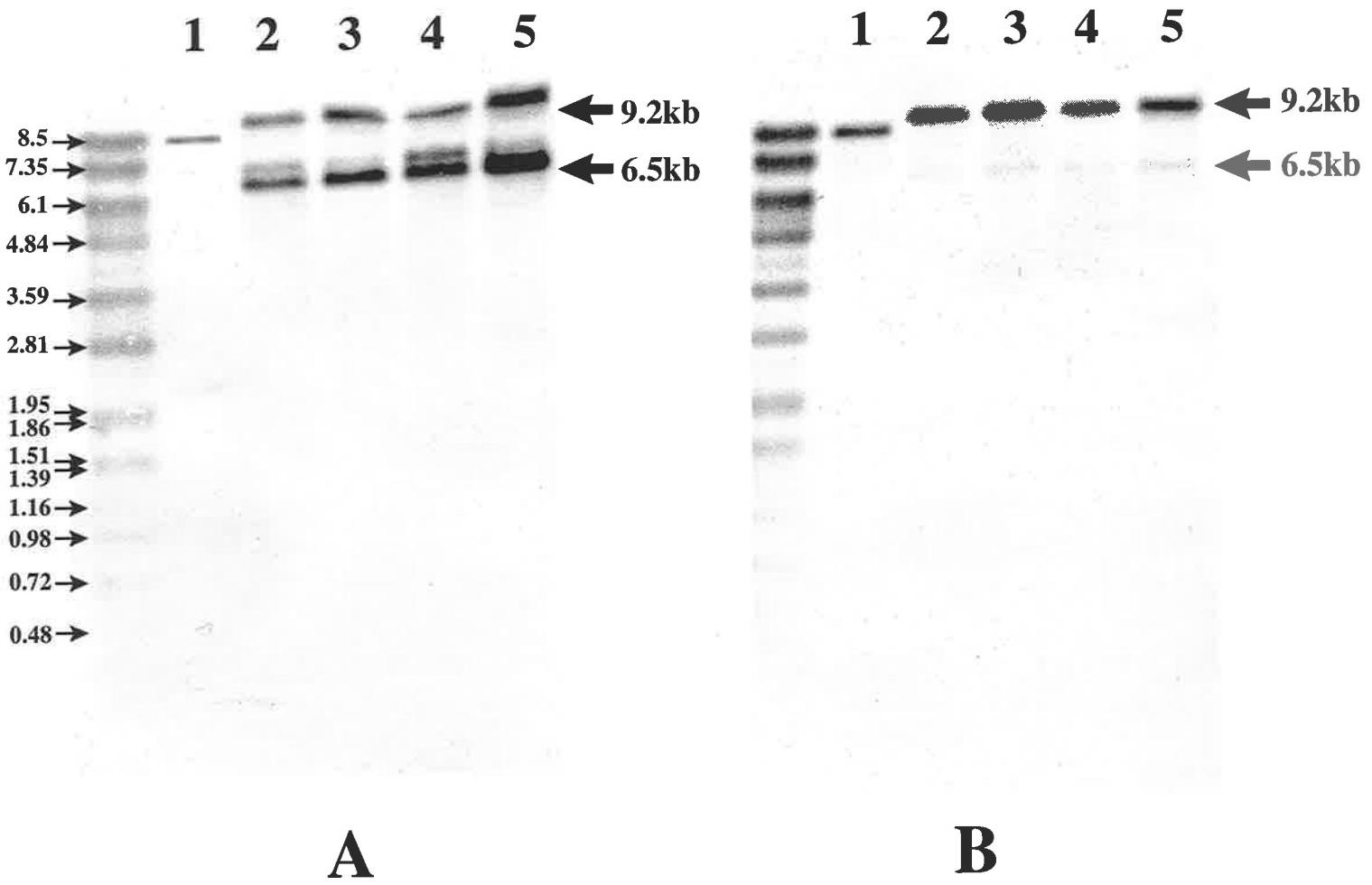
lane 4: RMM189, SfII lysogen

lane 5: RMM273, SfII lysogen

using **A:** DIG- labelled *attP* and

B: DIG- labelled *thrW* as probes.

SPP-1 markers are shown and the sizes of the fragments are labelled.


1
2
3
4
5
9.2kb
6.5kb
8.5
7.35
6.1
4.84
3.59
2.81
1.95
1.86
1.51
1.39
1.16
0.98
0.72
0.48
A
1
2
3
4
5
9.2kb
6.5kb
B

however, the two fragments correspond to the sizes seen when probing the same lysogens with the *attP* fragment, as would be expected (Fig. 4.7A). These data are consistent with the original mapping of the attachment site (*attB*) in the *Shigella* and *Salmonella* chromosomes (Petrovskaya and Licheva, 1982; Campbell, 1992).

4.3 Summary

The sequencing of the insert in the serotype converting plasmid pRMM264 identified 3 complete ORFs and one partial ORF corresponding to the integrase gene. Isolation and sequencing of a fragment (in pRMM273) adjacent to pRMM264 resulted in the complete sequencing of the integrase gene and in addition the excisionase gene of bacteriophage SfII. This chapter also demonstrates the splitting of attachment sites *attP* and *attB* upon integration of the phage genome. Bacteriophages SfII and P22 are morphologically different, however, they have identical integration and attachment systems suggesting that they were derived from a common ancestor.

Chapter Five

Localisation of the serotype converting genes of bacteriophage SfII

5.1 Introduction

The isolation and characterisation of bacteriophage SfII and lysogenic strains has been previously described. Lysogenisation of *S. flexneri* strains of serotype X, Y and 1b by phage SfII resulted in the expression of type II antigen and Southern hybridisation revealed the presence of the integrated phage genome in the host chromosome. The genome of phage SfII was isolated to identify the gene(s) responsible for serotype conversion.

The 42.3 kb phage chromosome was restricted with *Pst*I into 8 fragments, which were cloned and introduced into a *S. flexneri* strain of serotype Y; none of which were able to mediate serotype conversion. Preliminary sequencing of these clones led to interest in the region spanning *Pst*I fragments 2 and 3. A 4 kb *Bam*HI fragment was isolated and cloned (pRMM264) which spanned the shared *Pst*I site of these two fragments. When pRMM264 was introduced into *S. flexneri* Y strains, expression of type II antigen was detected. Sequence analysis showed that pRMM264 encoded 3 complete open reading frames and the 3' end of the integrase gene.

This chapter describes the three complete ORFs; ORF2, ORF3 and ORF4 and the homology exhibited by these ORFs to other genes and proteins. A requirement for two

proteins encoded by ORF3 and ORF4, to mediate efficient serotype conversion is also demonstrated.

5.2 Results

5.2.1 ORF2

The second ORF located at nt 2260-2622 (Fig. 4.3) encodes a highly hydrophobic protein with a predicted molecular weight of 13,298 Da (Table 4.1). BLASTP searches revealed a high degree of homology to ORFs in *E. coli, S. flexneri* and bacteriophage P22 (Table 5.1, Fig. 5.1). All four predicted proteins have four potential transmembrane domains (Fig. 5.2). The function of these proteins is as yet unknown, however, ORF2 does not appear to play a role in the serotype converting ability of SfII phage.

5.2.2 ORF3 bactoprenol glucosyl transferase (*bgt*)

ORF3 lies between nt. 2619-3548 (Fig. 4.3) and encodes a protein of a predicted weight of 34,844 daltons. The amino terminal two thirds of ORF3 were found to be hydrophilic and two hydrophobic regions were detected near its carboxy terminal end; the latter are potential transmembrane domains (Fig. 5.3). ORF3 was found to be homologous to o306 and o322 of *E. coli* K-12, o318 and o331 of *Synechocystis*, c*sbB* of *Bacillus subtilis* and o342 of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (Table 5.2). The function of these proteins is unknown, but alignment of these ORFs (Fig 5.4) allowed identification of the amino terminal motif sequences, DXSXD and DXD, which are present in Dpm1 of *Saccharomyces cereviceae*. These motifs may represent the active sites of these proteins. Dpm1 is a well characterised

Table 5.1 Similarity of ORF2 to other ORFs

	ORF2	AE323o120	P22o120	ORF10x1
ORF2	100	88.4 (N) 87.5 (A)	71.3 (N) 77.5 (A)	52.6 (N) 46.0 (A)
AE323o120		100	71.9 (N) 79.2 (A)	51.5 (N) 45.1 (A)
P22o120			100	52.4 (N) 42.5 (A)
ORF10x1				100

The values shown represent both homology at the nucleotide level (N) and amino acid level (A) over the entire length of the coding sequence. AE323o120 corresponds a region of *E. coli* K-12 (ECAE000323); P22o120 corresponds to an ORF of 120 aa in the P22 *attP* region (M10893) and ORF10x1 is from *S. flexneri* (Morona *et al.*, 1994).

Figure 5.1 Alignment of ORF2 with homologous proteins.

The amino acid sequences of the following proteins were aligned using the program CLUSTAL using the default settings. The proteins used are shown as: SFIIorf2, SfII phage ORF2; AE323o120 (ECAE000323), *E. coli* K-12; P22o120 (M10893), P22 phage and ORF10X1 (X71970), *S. flexneri*. Amino acid positions identical to those in SfIIorf2 are shaded; *, identical amino acids at this position in all the ORFs; •, similar amino acids at this position in all the ORFs.

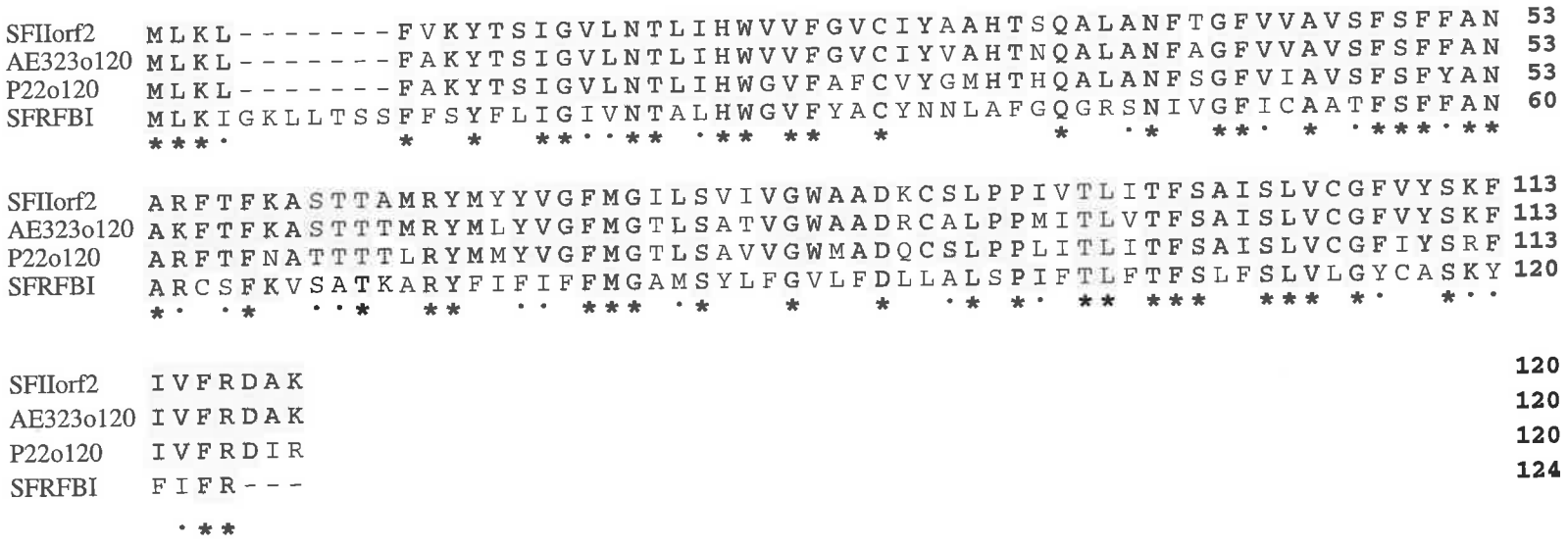
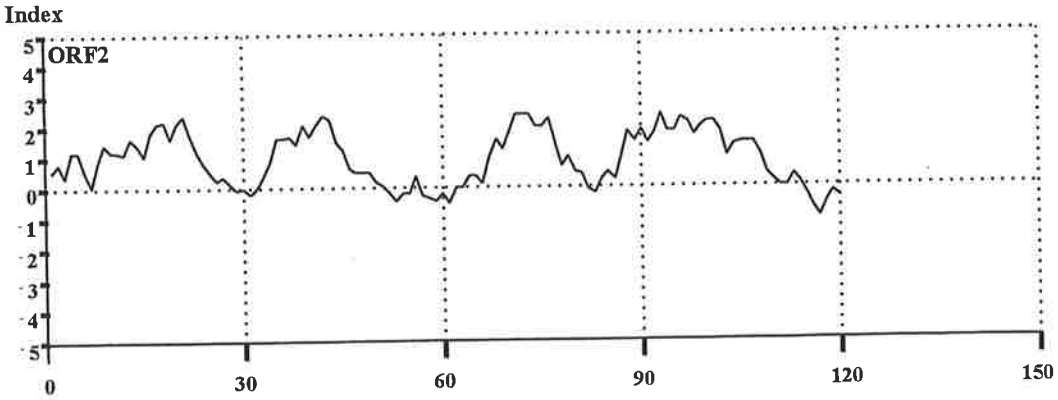
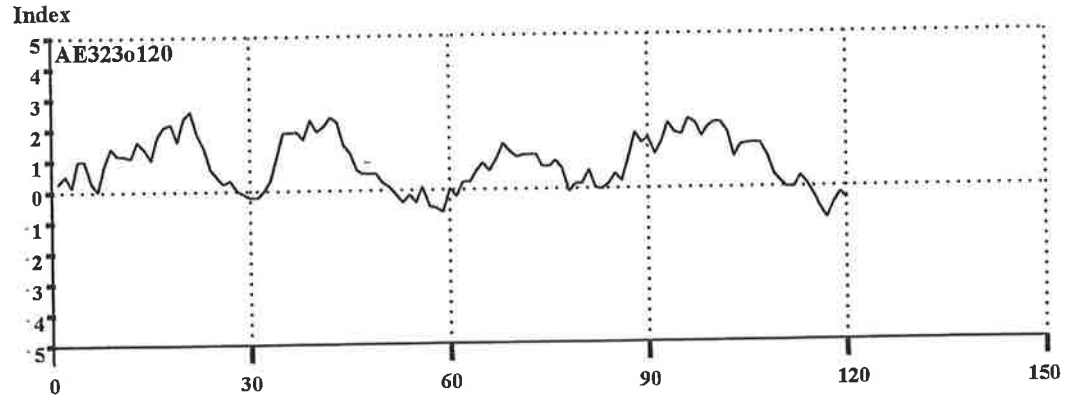
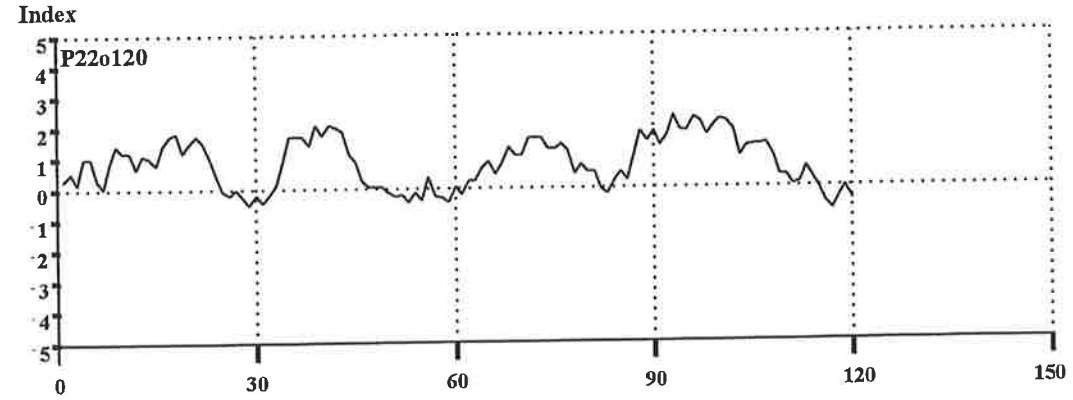

SFIIorf2 MLKL-------FVKYTSIGVLNTLIHWVVFGVCIYAAHTSQALANFTGFVVAVSFSFFAN 53
AE323o120 MLKL-------FAKYTSIGVLNTLIHWVVFGVCIYVAHTNQALANFAGFVVAVSFSFFAN 53
P22o120 MLKL-------FAKYTSIGVLNTLIHWGVFAFCVYGMHTHQALANFSGFVIAVSFSFYAN 53
SFRFBI MLKIGKLLTSSFFSYFLIGIVNTALHWGVFYACYNNLAFGQGRSNIVGFICAATFSFFAN 60
SFIIorf2 ARFTFKASTTAMRYMYYVGFMGILSVIVGWAADKCSLPPIVTLITFSAISLVCGFVYSKF 113
AE323o120 AKFTFKASTTTMRYMLYVGFMGTLSATVGWAADRCALPPMITLVTFSAISLVCGFVYSKF 113
P22o120 ARFTFNATTTTLRYMMYVGFMGTLSAVVGWMADQCSLPPLITLITFSAISLVCGFIYSRF 113
SFRFBI ARCSFKVSATKARYFIFIFFMGAMSYLFGVLFDLLALSPIFTLFTFSLFSLVLGYCASKY 120
SFIIorf2 IVFRDAK 120
AE323o120 IVFRDAK 120
P22o120 IVFRDIR 120
SFRFBI FIFR--- 124

Figure 5.2 Comparison of hydrophobicity plots of ORF2 and homologues.

The hydrophobicity profiles of a number of predicted proteins were generated in PROSIS and compared by alignment using AUTOCAD. The Kyte and Doolittle values were used. The proteins used are shown as SFIIorf2, SfII phage ORF2; AE323o120 (ECAE000323), *E. coli* K-12; P22o120 (M10893), P22 phage and ORF10X1 (X71970), *S. flexneri*. The *x* axis in each profile is marked at the position of every 30 amino acids. The *y* axis indicates the relative hydrophobicity index.


Index
ORF2
5
4
3
2
1
0
-1
-2
-3
-4
-5
0
30
60
90
120
150


Index
AE323o120
5
4
3
2
1
0
-1
-2
-3
-4
-5
0
30
60
90
120
150


Index
P22o120
5
4
3
2
1
0
-1
-2
-3
-4
-5
0
30
60
90
120
150

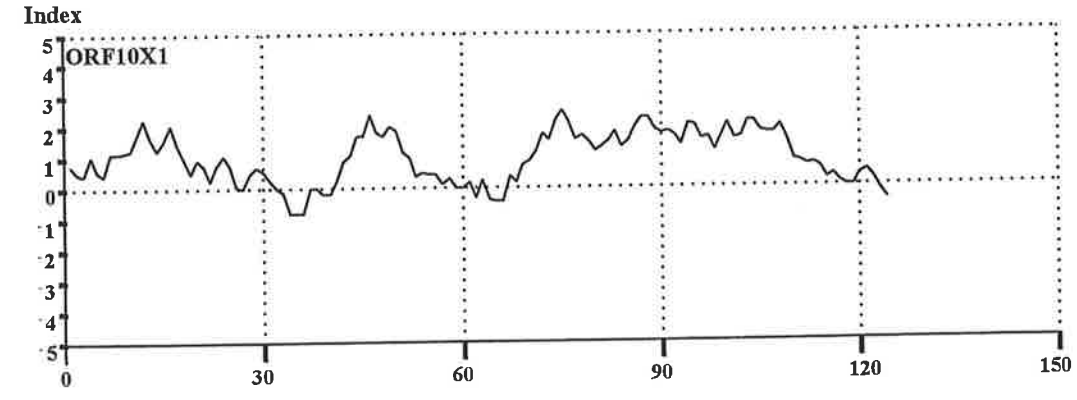

Index
ORF10X1
5
4
3
2
1
0
-1
-2
-3
-4
-5
0
30
60
90
120
150

Figure 5.3 Comparison of hydrophobicity plots of ORF3 and homologues.

The hydrophobicity profiles of a number of predicted proteins are compared by the use of the program PROFILEGRAPH (Hofmann and Stoffel, 1992). The Gunther von Heijne (von Heijne, 1992) values were used. The proteins used are shown as SFIIorf3, SfII phage ORF3; 323o306 (ECAE000323), *E. coli* K-12; SYN318 and SYNo331 (D64006 and D90915), *Synechocystis* ORFs of 318 and 331 amino acids respectively; BSCSBB (Z79701), *Bacillus subtilis csbB* gene (D64006); MYTo342, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* ORF of 342 amino acids; 315o322 (ECAE000315), *E. coli* K-12, DPMI, (J04184), *Saccharomyces cerevicae dpm1*. The *x* axis in each profile is marked at the position of every 10 amino acids. The *y* axis indicates the relative hydrophobicity index.

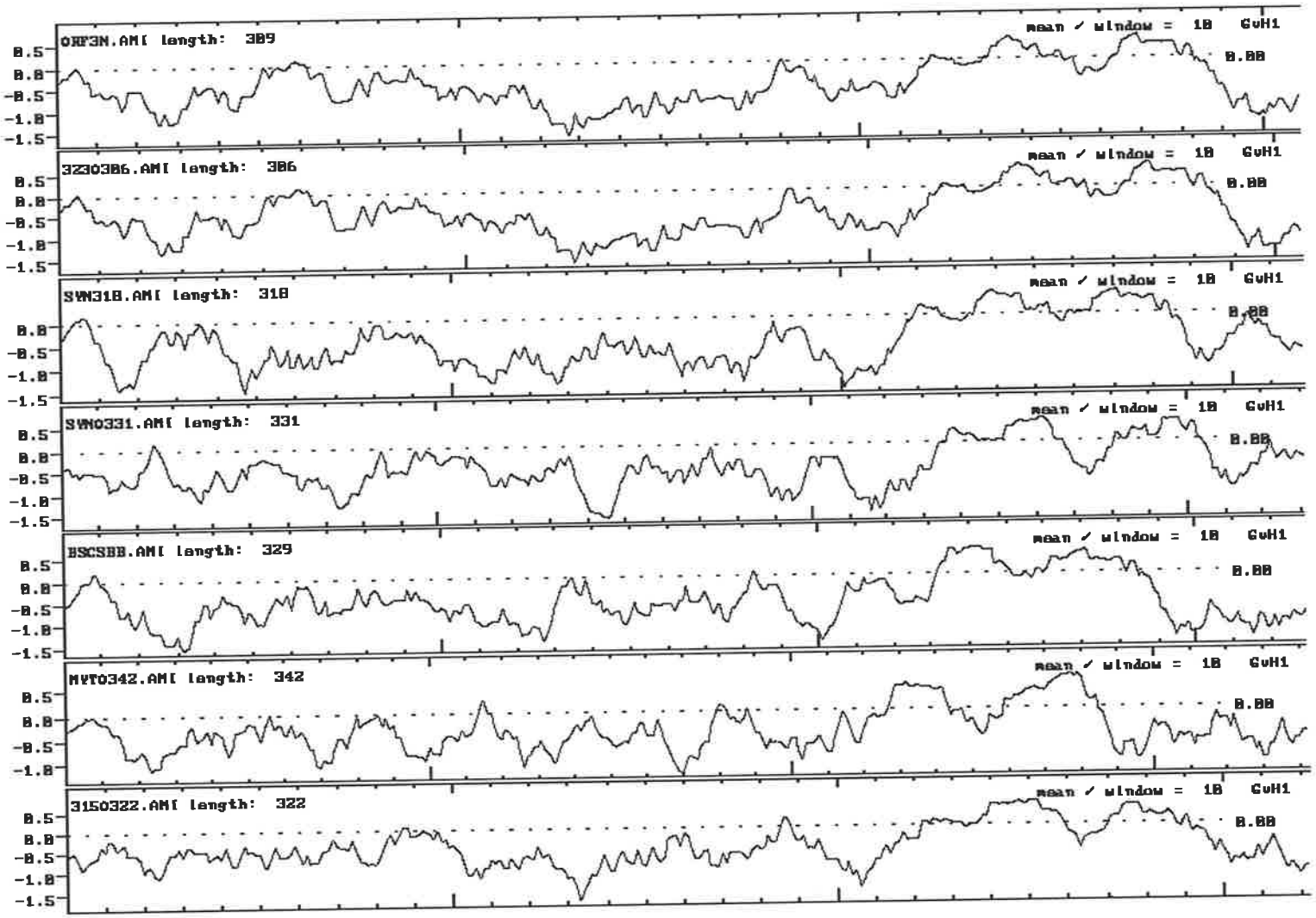

ORF3N.AMI length: 389
mean / window = 10 GvH1
0.00
3230386.AMI length: 386
mean / window = 10 GvH1
0.00
SYN318.AMI length: 318
mean / window = 10 GvH1
0.00
SYN0331.AMI length: 331
mean / window = 10 GvH1
0.00
BSCSBB.AMI length: 329
mean / window = 10 GvH1
0.00
MYT0342.AMI length: 342
mean / window = 10 GvH1
0.00
3150322.AMI length: 322
mean / window = 10 GvH1
0.00
0.5
0.0
-0.5
-1.0
-1.5

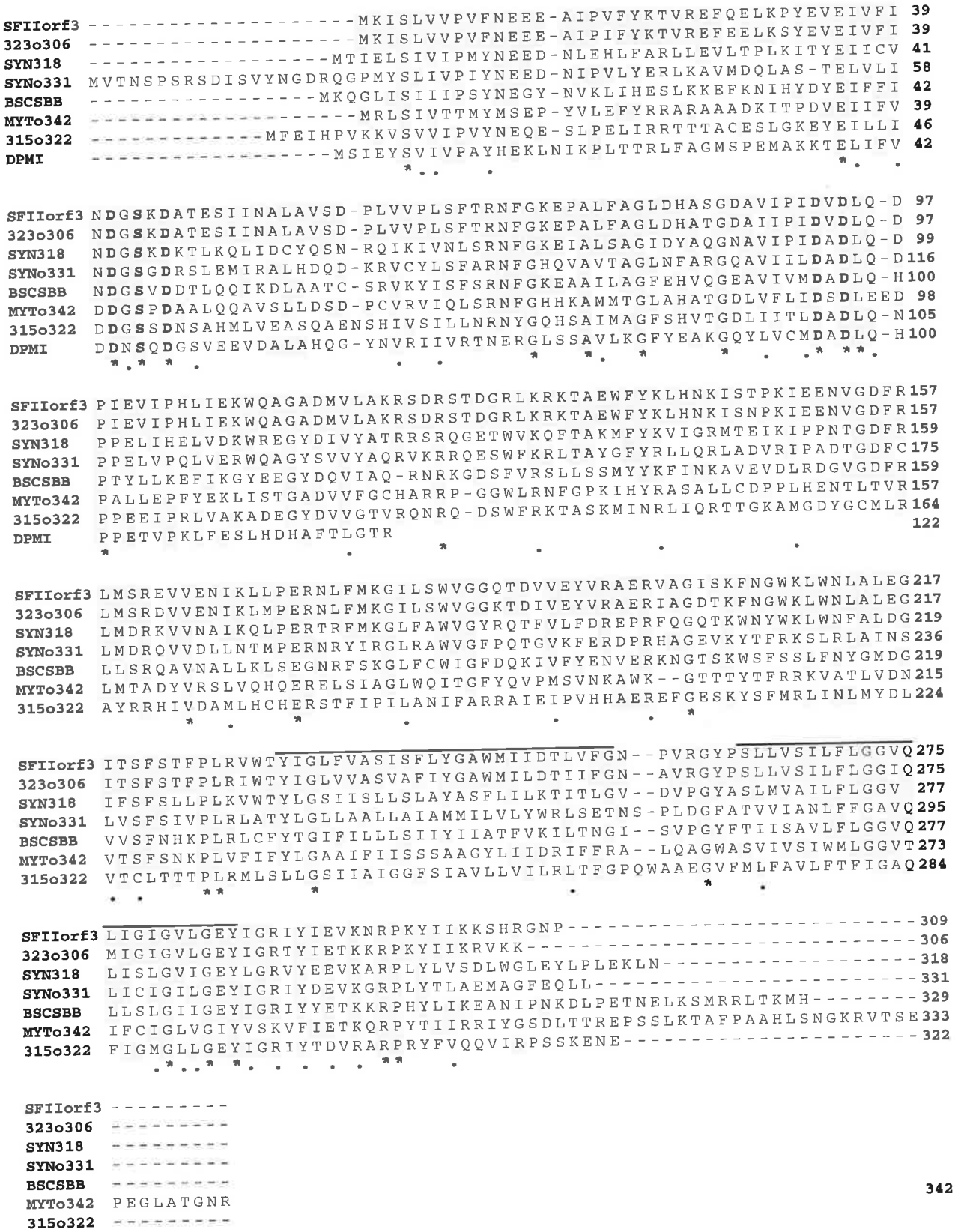
Table 5.2. Similarity of ORF3 to other ORFs

	ORF3	323o306	SYNo318	SYNo331	BSCSBB	MYTo342	315o322
ORF3	100	89.9 (306)	47.5 (301)	43.7 (302)	39.8 (304)	31.9 (304)	30.9 (311)
323o306		100	47.5 (304)	41.1 (299)	32.5 (301)	31.8 (305)	31.1 (309)
SYNo318			100	43.5 (308)	43.9 (301)	30.9 (307)	33.8 (305)
SYNo331				100	38.0 (303)	29.0 (303)	31.8 (305)
BSCSBB					100	28.2 (319)	29.9 (308)
MYTo342						100	25.7 (307)
315o322							100

Values shown in the table represent homology at amino acid level over the number of amino acids presented in brackets. ORF3; SfII phage ORF3; 323o306 (ECAE000323), *E. coli* K-12; SYNo318 (D64006) and SYNo331 (D90915), *Synechocystis* ORFs of 318 and 331 amino acids respectively; BSCBSB (D64006), *Bacillus subtilis csbB* gene; MYTo342 (Z79701), *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* ORF of 342 amino acids; 315o322 (ECAE000315), *E. coli* K-12.

Figure 5.4 Alignment of proteins homologous to ORF3.

The amino acid sequences of the following proteins were aligned using the program CLUSTAL (Higgins and Sharp, 1988) using the default settings. Some manual alignment was also used in the regions of gaps. The proteins used are shown as: SFIIorf3, SfII phage ORF3; 323o306 (ECAE000323), *E. coli* K-12; SYN318 and SYNo331 (D64006 and D90915), *Synechocystis* ORFs of 318 and 331 amino acids respectively; BSCSBB (Z79701), *Bacillus subtilis csbB* gene (D64006); MYTo342, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* ORF of 342 amino acids; 315o322 (ECAE000315), *E. coli* K-12, DPMI, (J04184), *Saccharomyces cerevicae dpm1*. Amino acids positions identical to those in SfIIorf3 are shaded; *, identical amino acids at this position in all the ORFs; ., similar amino acid at this position in all the ORFs. Motif sequences are indicated by bold type, and the two hydrophobic domains identified in SFIIorf3 are indicated by a line above the corresponding amino acids.


SFIIorf3 ----------MKISLVVPVFNEEE-AIPVFYKTVREFQELKPYEVEIVFI 39
323o306 ----------MKISLVVPVFNEEE-AIPIFYKTVREFEELKSYEVEIVFI 39
SYN318 ----------MTIELSIVIPMYNEED-NLEHLFARLLEVLTPLKITYEIICV 41
SYNo331 MVTNSPSRSDISVYNGDRQGPMYSLIVPIYNEED-NIPVLYERLKAVMDQLAS-TELVLI 58
BSCSBB ----------MKQGLISIIIPSYNEGY-NVKLIHESLKKEFKNIHYDYEIFFI 42
MYTo342 ----------MRLSIVTTMYMSEP-YVLEFYRRARAAADKITPDVEIIFV 39
315o322 ----------MFEIHPVKKVSVVIPVYNEQE-SLPELIRRTTTACESLGKEYEILLI 46
DPMI ----------MSIEYSVIVPAYHEKLNIKPLTTRLFAGMSPEMAKKTELIFV 42
SFIIorf3 NDGSKDATESIINALAVSD-PLVVPLSFTRNFGKEPALFAGLDHASGDAVIPIDVDLQ-D 97
323o306 NDGSKDATESIINALAVSD-PLVVPLSFTRNFGKEPALFAGLDHATGDAIIPIDVDLQ-D 97
SYN318 NDGSKDKTLKQLIDCYQSN-RQIKIVNLSRNFGKEIALSAGIDYAQGNAVIPIDADLQ-D 99
SYNo331 NDGSGDRSLEMIRALHDQD-KRVCYLSFARNFGHQVAVTAGLNFARGQAVIILDADLQ-D 116
BSCSBB NDGSVDDTLQQIKDLAATC-SRVKYISFSRNFGKEAAILAGFEHVQGEAVIVMDADLQ-H 100
MYTo342 DDGSPDAALQQAVSLLDSD-PCVRVIQLSRNFGHHKAMMTGLAHATGDLVFLIDSDLEED 98
315o322 DDGSSDNSAHMLVEASQAENSHIVSILLNRNYGQHSAIMAGFSHVTGDLIITLDADLQ-N 105
DPMI DDNSQDGSVEEVDALAHQG-YNVRIIVRTNERGLSSAVLKGFYEAKGQYLVCMDADLQ-H 100
SFIIorf3 PIEVIPHLIEKWQAGADMVLAKRSDRSTDGRLKRKTAEWFYKLHNKISTPKIEENVGDFR 157
323o306 PIEVIPHLIEKWQAGADMVLAKRSDRSTDGRLKRKTAEWFYKLHNKISNPKIEENVGDFR 157
SYN318 PPELIHELVDKWREGYDIVYATRRSRQGETWVKQFTAKMFYKVIGRMTEIKIPPNTGDFR 159
SYNo331 PPELVPQLVERWQAGYSVVYAQRVKRRQESWFKRLTAYGFYRLLQRLADVRIPADTGDFC 175
BSCSBB PTYLLKEFIKGYEEGYDQVIAQ-RNRKGDSFVRSLLSSMYYKFINKAVEVDLRDGVGDFR 159
MYTo342 PALLEPFYEKLISTGADVVFGCHARRP-GGWLRNFGPKIHYRASALLCDPPLHENTLTVR 157
315o322 PPEEIPRLVAKADEGYDVVGTVRQNRQ-DSWFRKTASKMINRLIQRTTGKAMGDYGCMLR 164
DPMI PPETVPKLFESLHDHAFTLGTR 122
SFIIorf3 LMSREVVENIKLLPERNLFMKGILSWVGGQTDVVEYVRAERVAGISKFNGWKLWNLALEG 217
323o306 LMSRDVVENIKLMPERNLFMKGILSWVGGKTDIVEYVRAERIAGDTKFNGWKLWNLALEG 217
SYN318 LMDRKVVNAIKQLPERTRFMKGLFAWVGYRQTFVLFDREPRFQGQTKWNYWKLWNFALDG 219
SYNo331 LMDRQVVDLLNTMPERNRYIRGLRAWVGFPQTGVKFERDPRHAGEVKYTFRKSLRLAINS 236
BSCSBB LLSRQAVNALLKLSEGNRFSKGLFCWIGFDQKIVFYENVERKNGTSKWSFSSLFNYGMDG 219
MYTo342 LMTADYVRSLVQHQERELSIAGLWQITGFYQVPMSVNKAWK--GTTTYTFRRKVATLVDN 215
315o322 AYRRHIVDAMLHCHERSTFIPILANIFARRAIEIPVHHAEREFGESKYSFMRLINLMYDL 224
SFIIorf3 ITSFSTFPLRVWTYIGLFVASISFLYGAWMIIDTLVFGN--PVRGYPSLLVSILFLGGVQ 275
323o306 ITSFSTFPLRIWTYIGLVVASVAFIYGAWMILDTIIFGN--AVRGYPSLLVSILFLGGIQ 275
SYN318 IFSFSLLPLKVWTYLGSIISLLSLAYASFLILKTITLGV--DVPGYASLMVAILFLGGV 277
SYNo331 LVSFSIVPLRLATYLGLLAALLAIAMMILVLYWRLSETNS-PLDGFATVVIANLFFGAVQ 295
BSCSBB VVSFNHKPLRLCFYTGIFILLLSIIYIIATFVKILTNGI--SVPGYFTIISAVLFLGGVQ 277
MYTo342 VTSFSNKPLVFIFYLGAAIFIISSSAAGYLIIDRIFFRA--LQAGWASVIVSIWMLGGVT 273
315o322 VTCLTTTPLRMLSLLGSIIAIGGFSIAVLLVILRLTFGPQWAAEGVFMLFAVLFTFIGAQ 284
SFIIorf3 LIGIGVLGEYIGRIYIEVKNRPKYIIKKSHRGNP---------- 309
323o306 MIGIGVLGEYIGRTYIETKKRPKYIIKRVKK---------- 306
SYN318 LISLGVIGEYLGRVYEEVKARPLYLVSDLWGLEYLPLEKLN---------- 318
SYNo331 LICIGILGEYIGRIYDEVKGRPLYTLAEMAGFEQLL---------- 331
BSCSBB LLSLGIIGEYIGRIYYETKKRPHYLIKEANIPNKDLPETNELKSMRRLTKMH---------- 329
MYTo342 IFCIGLVGIYVSKVFIETKQRPYTIIRRIYGSDLTTREPSSLKTAFPAAHLSNGKRVTSE 333
315o322 FIGMGLLGEYIGRIYTDVRARPRYFVQQVIRPSSKENE---------- 322
SFIIorf3 ----------
323o306 ----------
SYN318 ----------
SYNo331 ----------
BSCSBB ----------
MYTo342 PEGLATGNR 342
315o322 ----------

dolichol phosphate mannosyl synthase which catalyses the formation of dolichol-phosphate mannose from dolichol-phosphate and GDP-mannose (Orlean *et al.*, 1988). The motifs identified are similar to those present in glycosyl transferases (Saxena *et al.*, 1995, Keenleyside and Whitfield, 1995). ORF3 was named bactoprenol glucosyl transferase (*bgt*) based on the above similarities and on complementation data (Section 5.3)

Interestingly, a partially sequenced ORF (105bp) at the 5' end of the *attP* (X04052) region of P22 phage displays very good homology to the 3' end of ORF3 (79.8% DNA and 82.4% protein) over the entire length (Fig. 5.5). The organisation of the region surrounding the partial ORF suggests that it may have a similar function to the region identified in SfII. Sequencing of this region is not complete but it is highly likely to encode the genes required for expression of the *Salmonella* O-antigen factor 1 (Iwashita and Kanegasaki, 1973).

5.2.3 ORF4 - glucosyl transferase *gtrII*

ORF4 encodes a highly hydrophobic protein (Table 4.1) which shows no significant homology to protein sequences by BLASTX searches, however, weak similarity to RfbP, a galactosyl transferase of *S. enterica*, was detected over a small region of the protein. Alignment of ORF4 with *gtrX* and o443 of *E. coli* K-12 identified conserved regions between these proteins (Fig. 5.6), although overall homology between these proteins is only about 20% using FASTA as implemented in PROSIS (Table 5.3). Hydropathy plots suggest 10 to 11 potential transmembrane domains implying that ORF4 may be an integral membrane protein (Fig. 5.7). This ORF has been designated *gtrII* based on complementation tests and the phenotype conferred by this gene (Section 5.3).

Figure 5.5 Homology of ORFo1 of P22 to ORF3 of phage SFII

A schematic representation of the attP region of phage P22 is shown. A partially sequenced ORF, ORFo1 exhibits homology to ORF3 of bacteriophage SfII at the nucleotide and amino acid level. An alignment of the sequences is shown, and the region of the P22 genome (X04052) is indicated.

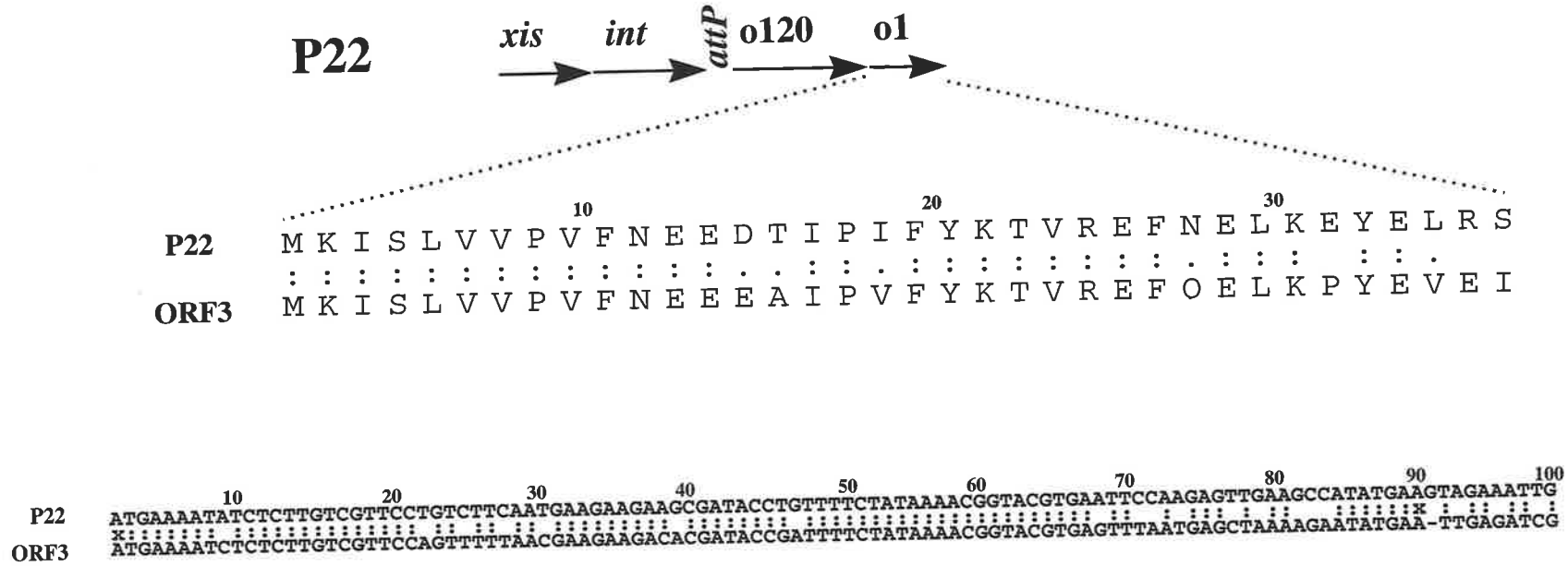

P22
xis
int
attP
o120
o1
10
20
30
P22 M K I S L V V P V F N E E D T I P I F Y K T V R E F N E L K E Y E L R S
ORF3 M K I S L V V P V F N E E E A I P V F Y K T V R E F O E L K P Y E V E I
10
20
30
40
50
60
70
80
90
100
P22 ATGAAAATATCTCTTGTCGTTCCTGTCTTCAATGAAGAAGAAGCGATACCTGTTTTCTATAAAACGGTACGTGAATTCCAAGAGTTGAAGCCATATGAAGTAGAAATTG
ORF3 ATGAAAATCTCTCTTGTCGTTCCAGTTTTTAACGAAGAAGACACGATACCGATTTTCTATAAAACGGTACGTGAGTTTAATGAGCTAAAAGAATATGAA-TTGAGATCG

Figure 5.6 Alignment of ORF4 with functionally related proteins.

The amino acid sequences of the following proteins were aligned using the program CLUSTAL using the default settings. The proteins used are shown as: SFIIorf4, SfII phage ORF4; GTRX (L05001), SfX phage glucosyl transferase gene; AE323o443 (ECAE000323), *E. coli* K-12. Amino acid positions identical to those in SfIIorf4 are shaded; *, identical amino acids at this position in all the ORFs; •, similar amino acids at this position in all the ORFs.

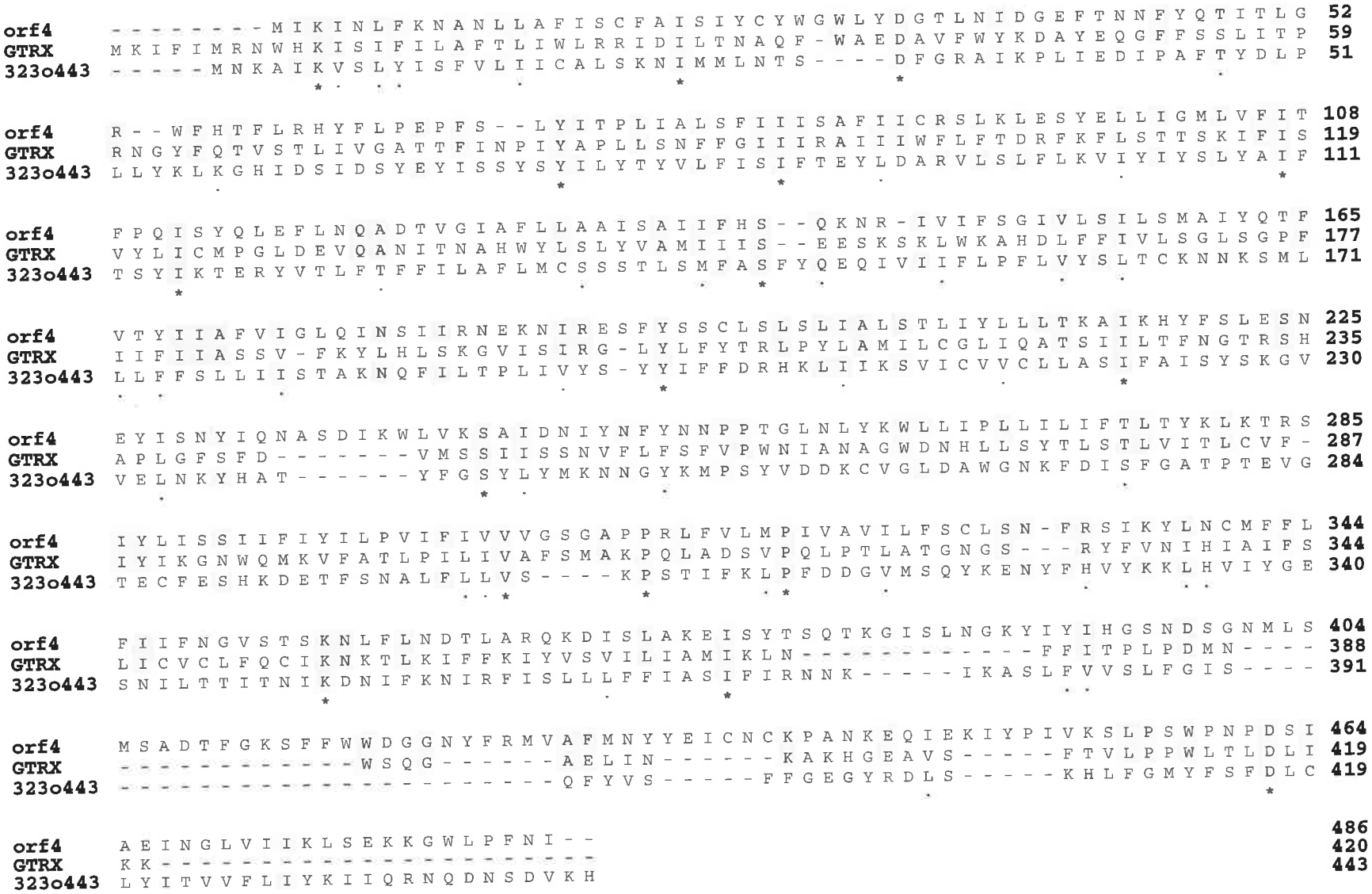

orf4 ---------MIKINLFKNANLLAFISCFAISIYCYWGWLYDGTLNIDGEFTNNFYQTITLG 52
GTRX MKIFIMRNWHKISIFILAFTLIWLRRIDILTNAQF-WAEDAVFWYKDAYEQGFFSSLITP 59
323o443 -----MNKAIKVSLYISFVLIICALSKNIMMLNTS----DFGRAIKPLIEDIPAFTYDLP 51
orf4 R--WFHTFLRHYFLPEPFS--LYITPLIALSFIIISAFIICRSLKLESYELLIGMLVFIT 108
GTRX RNGYFQTVSTLIVGATTFINPIYAPLLSNFFGIIIRAIIIWFLFTDRFKFLSTTSKIFIS 119
323o443 LLYKLKGHIDSIDSYEYISSYSYILYTYVLFISIFTEYLDARVLSLFLKVIYIYSLYAIF 111
orf4 FPQISYQLEFLNQADTVGIAFLLAAISAIIFHS--QKNR-IVIFSGIVLSILSMAIYQTF 165
GTRX VYLICMPGLDEVQANITNAHWYLSLYVAMIIIS--EESKSKLWKAHDLFFIVLSGLSGPF 177
323o443 TSYIKTERYVTLFTFFILAFLMCSSSTLSMFASFYQEQIVIIFLPFLVYSLTCKNNKSML 171
orf4 VTYIIAFVIGLQINSIIRNEKNIRESFYSSCLSLSLIALSTLIYLLLTKAIKHYFSLESN 225
GTRX IIFIIASSV-FKYLHLSKGVISIRG-LYLFYTRLPYLAMILCGLIQATSIILTFNGTRSH 235
323o443 LLFFSLLIISTAKNQFILTPLIVYS-YYIFFDRHKLIIKSVICVVCLLASIFAISYSKGV 230
orf4 EYISNYIQNASDIKWLVKSAIDNIYNFYNNPPTGLNLYKWLLIPLLILIFTLTYKLKTRS 285
GTRX APLGFSFD-------VMSSIISSNVFLFSFVPWNIANAGWDNHLLSYTLSTLVITLCVF- 287
323o443 VELNKYHAT------YFGSYLYMKNNGYKMPSYVDDKCVGLDAWGNKFDISFGATPTEVG 284
orf4 IYLISSIIFIYILPVIFIVVVGSGAPPRLFVLMPIVAVILFSCLSN-FRSIKYLNCMFFL 344
GTRX IYIKGNWQMKVFATLPILIVAFSMAKPQLADSVPQLPTLATGNGS---RYFVNIHIAIFS 344
323o443 TECFESHKDETFSNALFLLVS----KPSTIFKLPFDDGVMSQYKENYFHVYKKLHVIYGE 340
orf4 FIIFNGVSTSKNLFLNDTLARQKDISLAKEISYTSQTKGISLNGKYIYIHGSNDSGNMLS 404
GTRX LICVCLFQCIKNKTLKIFFKIYVSVILIAMIKLN----------FFITPLPDMN---- 388
323o443 SNILTTITNIKDNIFKNIRFISLLLFFIASIFIRNNK-----IKASLFVVSLFGIS---- 391
orf4 MSADTFGKSFFWWDGGNYFRMVAFMNYYEICNCKPANKEQIEKIYPIVKSLPSWPNPDSI 464
GTRX ----------WSQG------AELIN------KAKHGEAVS-----FTVLPPWLTLDLI 419
323o443 ----------------------QFYVS-----FFGEGYRDLS-----KHLFGMYFSFDLC 419
orf4 AEINGLVIIKLSEKKGWLPFNI-- 486
GTRX KK---------------------- 420
323o443 LYITVVFLIYKIIQRNQDNSDVKH 443

Table 5.3 Similarity of ORF4 to other ORFs

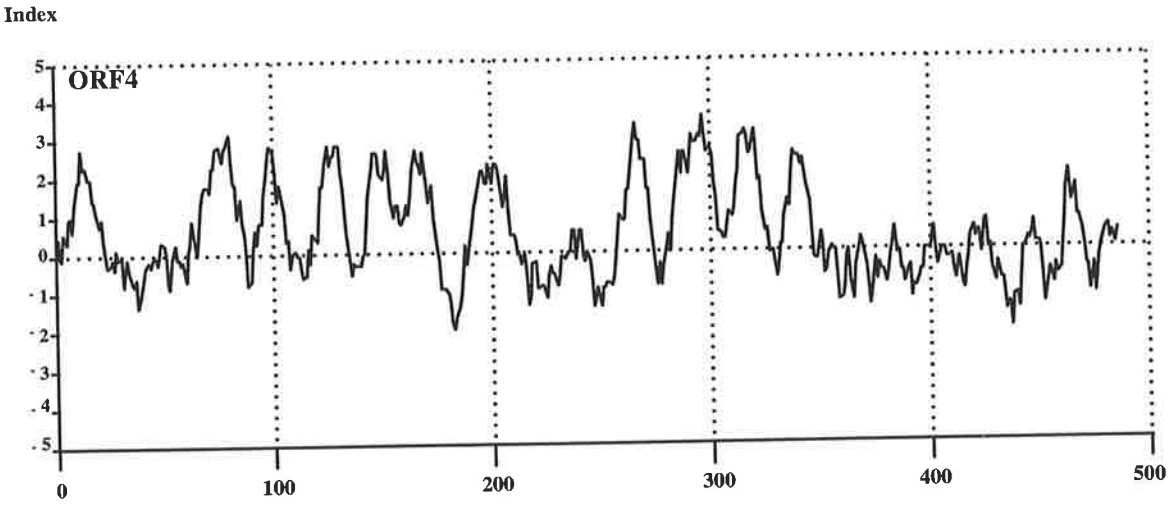
	ORF4	*gtrX*	o443
ORF4	100	20.2 (356)	18.8 (356)
gtrX		100	17.8 (214)
o443			100

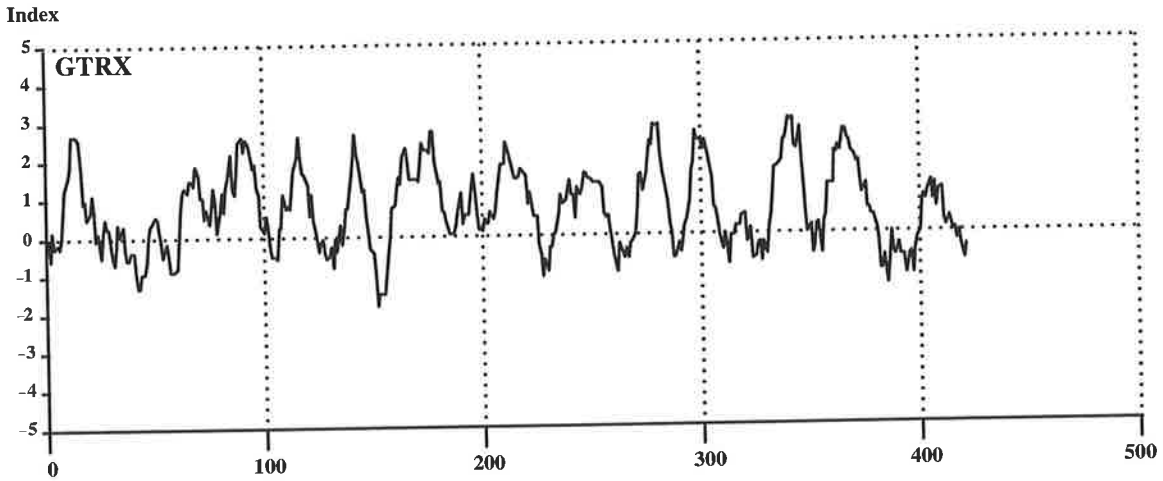
Values shown in the table represent homology at amino acid level over the number of amino acids presented in brackets. ORF4; SfII phage ORF4; gtrX; SfX phage *gtrX* (L05001) and o443; *E. coli* K-12 (ECAE000323).

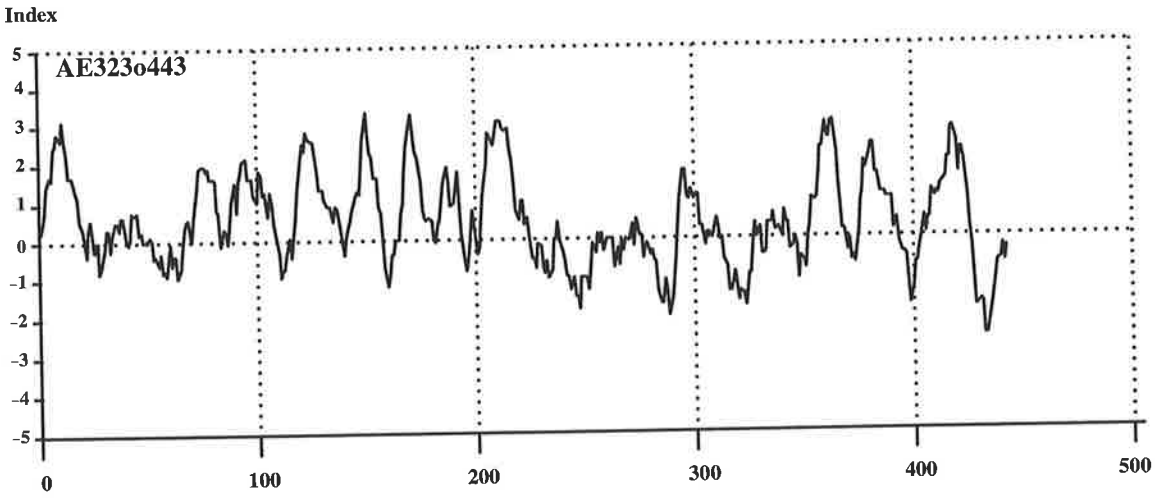
Values determined by FASTA as implemented in PROSIS

Figure 5.7 Comparison of hydrophobicity plots of ORF4 and functional homologues.

The hydrophobicity profiles of a number of predicted proteins are compared by the use of the program PROFILEGRAPH (Hofmann and Stoffel, 1992). The Gunther von Heijne (von Heijne, 1992) values were used. The proteins used are shown as : SFIIorf4, SfII phage ORF4; GTRX (L05001), SfX phage glucosyl transferase gene; AE323o443 (ECAE000323), *E. coli* K-12.. The *x* axis in each profile is marked at the position of every 10 amino acids. The *y* axis indicates the relative hydrophobicity index.


Index
ORF4
5
4
3
2
1
0
-1
-2
-3
-4
-5
0
100
200
300
400
500


Index
GTRX
5
4
3
2
1
0
-1
-2
-3
-4
-5
0
100
200
300
400
500


Index
AE323o443
5
4
3
2
1
0
-1
-2
-3
-4
-5
0
100
200
300
400
500

5.3 Complementation analyses

5.3.1 Serotype conversion in *S. flexneri* with plasmid constructs

Table 5.4 details the various constructs used in *S. flexneri* strain PE577 of serotype Y and *E. coli* K-12 strain DH5α to observe their serotype converting ability. Reactivity to various antisera (group 3,4; type II; group 7,8) was assessed by colony immunoblotting.

Plasmids pRMM270, pRMM271 and pRMM272 (Fig. 5.8) were derived by amplification of *bgt* and *gtrII* by PCR using primers (#2349, #2376 (*bgt*), #2325, #2407 (*gtrII*) and #2325, #2349 (*bgt/gtrII*) respectively) (Table 2.4) and ligated with pGEM-T. Upon transformation into PE577, no serotype conversion was seen with either of these two genes alone. However, when both genes were on a single fragment, conversion to serotype 2a was observed (Table 5.4). ORF2 was not included in any of these constructs.

5.3.2 Serotype conversion with *gtrX* and *bgt*

The *gtrX* gene of bacteriophage SfX has been previously shown to mediate partial serotype conversion in the absence of other genes. For this reason *gtrX* was PCR amplified using primers (#747, #748) (Table 2.4) based on the published sequence, cloned into pUC18 and pK184 resulting in plasmids pRMM174 and pRMM180, respectively. When introduced into PE577, neither plasmid resulted in serotype conversion to serotype X. However, when pRMM180 was introduced into PE577 already containing *bgt* on plasmid pRMM270, conversion to serotype X occurred (Table 5.4). This is consistent with the data observed for *gtrII*. These data imply that ORF2 does not appear to play a role in serotype conversion.

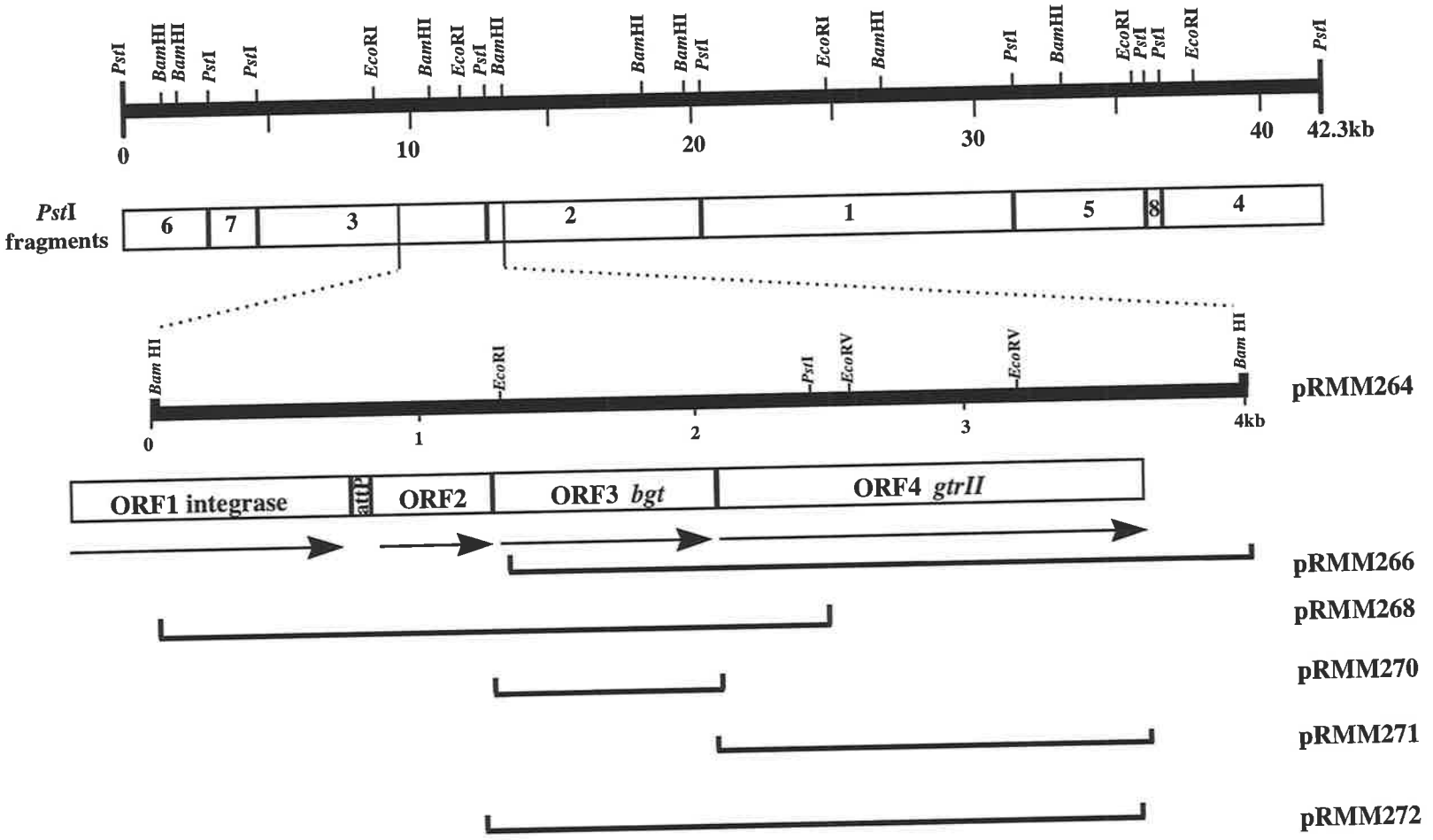
Table 5.4 Complementation in *S. flexneri* and *E. coli* strains using various plasmids.

Strain/ plasmid	Reactivity to antisera in colony immunoblot				Serotype	Gene
	anti-3,4	anti-II	anti-7,8	anti-IV		
PE577	+	-	-	ND	Y	
PE577 + pRMM264	+	+	-	ND	2a	*bgt/gtrII*
PE577 + pRMM266	+	-	-	ND	Y	*gtrII*
PE577 + pRMM268	+	-	-	ND	Y	*bgt*
PE577 + pRMM270	+	-	-	ND	Y	*bgt*
PE577 + pRMM271	+	-	-	ND	Y	*gtrII*
PE577 + pRMM272	+	+	-	ND	2a	*bgt/gtrII*
PE577 + pRMM180	+	-	-	ND	Y	*gtrX*
PE577 + pRMM268 + pRMM180	-	-	+	ND	X	*bgt/gtrX*
PE577 + pRMM270 + pRMM180	-	-	+	ND	X	*bgt/gtrX*
DH5α + pRMA154	+	-	-	+	4a	rfb_{SF}
DH5α + pRMA154 + pRMM174	-	-	+	+	4b	rfb_{SF}/*gtrX*
DH5α + pRMA154 + pRMM271	+	-	-	+	4a	rfb_{SF}/*gtrII*

+ indicates positive reaction to antiserum in colony immunoblot
- indicates no reactivity to antiserum by colony immunoblot

Figure 5.8 Plasmids pRMM270, pRMM271 and pRMM272

Plasmid pRMM264, and the subclones pRMM266 and pRMM268, is shown in this diagram. In addition, plasmids pRMM270, pRMM271 and pRMM272 which contain PCR amplified copies of *bgt*, *gtrII* and both *bgt* and *gtrII*, respectively are shown.


PstI
BamHI
BamHI
PstI
PstI
EcoRI
BamHI
EcoRI
PstI
BamHI
BamHI
BamHI
PstI
EcoRI
BamHI
PstI
BamHI
EcoRI
PstI
PstI
EcoRI
PstI
0
10
20
30
40
42.3kb
PstI fragments
6
7
3
2
1
5
8
4
Bam HI
EcoRI
PstI
EcoRV
EcoRV
Bam HI
0
1
2
3
4kb
pRMM264
ORF1 integrase
attP
ORF2
ORF3 bgt
ORF4 gtrII
pRMM266
pRMM268
pRMM270
pRMM271
pRMM272

The function of *bgt* was therefore necessary in the modification of the LPS, whereas the serotype specificity was determined by the particular glucosyl transferase gene (*gtrII* or *gtrX*).

5.3.3 Serotype conversion using *E. coli* K-12 DH5α ORF3 homologue, o306

Homology searches identified a *bgt* homologue, called o306, located at 54 minutes (ECAE000323) in *E. coli* K-12. To investigate if this homologue was functional, the *S. flexneri rfb* genes on pRMA154 (Macpherson *et al.*, 1991) were introduced into an *E. coli* K-12 strain DH5α. It was found that this strain reacted in a colony immunoblot to type IV antigen, as previously described (Morona *et al.*, 1995). This implies that o306 of *E. coli* K-12 is capable of adding a glucosyl residue to the GlcNAc sugar of *S. flexneri* O-antigen. Subsequent addition of *gtrX* (pRMM174) resulted in the expression of the group 7,8 antigen, suggesting that o306 was able to perform the same function as *bgt*. Type II antigen, however, was not detected when *gtrII* was introduced into the same strain. Inability of *gtrII* to glucosylate the LPS was possibly due to the position of the existing modification, as glucosylation of both the GlcNAc and adjacent RhaIII sugar is not found in any of the naturally occurring *S. flexneri* serotypes (Fig. 1.9).

5.4. Serotype conversion in *S. flexneri rfc* mutants

Little is known about the particular stage in the biosynthetic pathway of LPS, at which the bacteriophage-encoded modifications (i.e. glucosylation and O-acetylation) are added to the O-antigen repeat units of *S. flexneri*. The function of the Rfc protein is to polymerise the O antigen repeat units into long O antigen chains. A mutation in *rfc* results in the addition of a single O unit, mediated by RfaL, to the lipid A core structure, resulting in a semi-rough (SR)

LPS phenotype. The ability of plasmid constructs to mediate serotype conversion was observed, using strains with mutations in the O antigen polymerase gene.

5.4.1 *rfc* mutants of *S. flexneri* strains of serotype Y and X.

O-antigen polymerase mutants (*rfc*) of *S. flexneri* strain PE577 of serotype Y have been previously isolated (Morona *et al.*, 1994). *rfc* mutant, RMM109, was isolated which possessed a spontaneous point mutation which was not defined genetically. Strains of serotype X are also sensitive to infection by Sf6 phage, therefore, spontaneous $Sf6^R$ mutants of serotype X were isolated in the same manner as described for Y strains (Morona *et al.*, 1994). Spontaneous $Sf6^R$ serotype X strains were obtained and assessed for their LPS phenotype. Mutants displaying various phenotypes (ie *rfa, rfb and rfc*) were obtained as shown in Figure 5.9.

5.4.2 Serotype conversion of spontaneous *rfc* mutants

Strain RMM168 was chosen as a representative *rfc* mutant of a serotype X strain and used with RMM109, an *rfc* mutant from a serotype Y strain. Plasmids harbouring the various serotype conversion genes were introduced into both strains and assessed for their ability to convert the single O-unit present in these strains by slide agglutination and colony immunoblotting. Table 5.5 shows that the introduction of plasmid pRMM264 results in the expression of the type II antigen in both X and Y *rfc* mutants. The expression of group 7,8 by the introduction of a plasmid copy of *gtrX,* additionally requires the presence of a copy of *bgt* in RMM109. O-acetylation in both strains is mediated by the *oac* gene product, resulting in the appearance of the group 6 antigen.

Figure 5.9 Silver stained SDS-15% PAGE of *rfc* mutants of serotype X

Proteinase K digested whole cell lysates of Sf6 resistant isolates of PE576 of serotype X were electrophoresed in an SDS-15% PAGE and silver stained. The parent strain PE576 is shown, exhibiting wildtype LPS, and the five $Sf6^R$ strains, whose inferred genotypes are: RMM166 (*rfa*), RMM168 (*rfc*), RMM165 (*rfb*), RMM167 (*rfb*) and RMM169 (*rfc*).

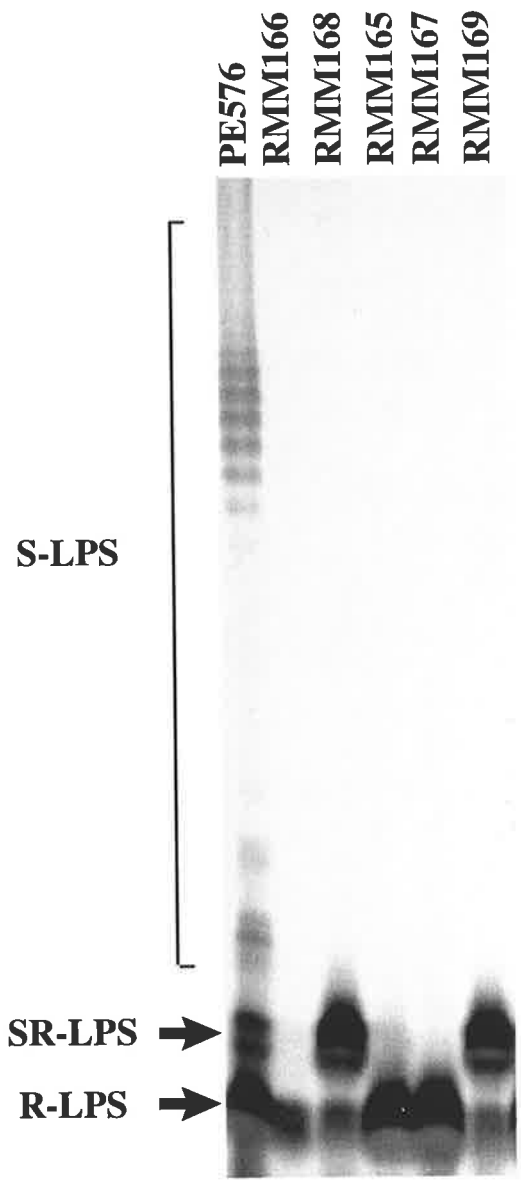

PE576
RMM166
RMM168
RMM165
RMM167
RMM169
S-LPS
SR-LPS
R-LPS

Table 5.5 Serotype conversion in *S. flexneri rfc* mutants of serotypes Y and X

Strain	type II	group 6	group 7,8	Genes on plasmid	Serotype
RMM109: *rfc* mutant of serotype Y	-	-	-		Y
RMM454: RMM109 [pRMM264]	+	-	-	*bgt/gtrII*	2a
RMM456: RMM109 [pRMM268, pRMM180]	-	-	+	*bgt/gtrX*	X
RMM455: RMM109 [pCC142]	-	+	-	*oac*	3b
RMM168: *rfc* mutant of serotype X	-	-	+		X
RMM473: RMM168 [pRMM264]	+	-	+	*bgt/gtrII*	2b
RMM474: RMM168 [pCC142]	-	+	+	*oac*	3a

+ indicates a positive reaction in a colony immunoblot
- indicates a negative reaction in a colony immunoblot

Confirmation of these results was achieved by assessing the expression of the type and group antigens in the serotype converted strains by bacterial agglutination assays (Table 5.6). Each strain was prepared as described in section 2.18.3, and assessed for agglutination with various dilutions of antisera. The data obtained via this method correlated well with the colony immunoblotting results which showed that a single O-repeat unit could be modified to give serotype conversion either by whole phage (Section 3.2.4.3), or by the addition of plasmid copies of serotype conversion genes (Table 5.5).

5.5 Distribution of *bgt* and *gtrII* in *S. flexneri*

Analysis of the distribution of *bgt* and *gtrII* in *S. flexneri* was carried out by using PCR-DIG-labelled *bgt* (primers #2349, #2376) and *gtrII* (primers #2325, #2407), and probing chromosomal DNA of all *S. flexneri* serotypes and *E. coli* K-12 in Southern hybridisations (Figs. 5.10, 5.11). It was found that *bgt* homologues existed in all serotypes of *S. flexneri* and *E. coli* K-12. More than one copy of *bgt* exists within any strain tested of *S. flexneri* and *E. coli* K-12. *gtrII* hybridised strongly only to DNA from strains expressing the type II antigen (i.e. serotypes 2a and 2b) and weakly to strains of serotype 4a, 4b, 5a and 5b. When all *S. flexneri* serotypes were analysed by PCR using *bgt* or *gtrII* specific primers, *bgt* was amplified in serotypes 2a, 2b and X, and *gtrII* was amplified only in serotypes 2a and 2b. This may be due to the specificity of the primers which were designed based on the sequence from bacteriophage SfII, lysogenic to strains of serotype 2. Additionally, the complementation data suggests that the *bgt* homologues detected in PE577 are not functional.

Table 5.6 Bacterial agglutination assay using *S. flexneri* typing serum

Serial two-fold dilutions of antiserum were incubated with 5 x 10^9 bacterial. Control strains used were PE877 (serotype 2a), PE576 (serotype X), PE844 (serotype 3b) and *rfc* mutants RMM109 and RMM168 containing serotype converting plasmids.

Strain	Titre	Antisera used	Genes on plasmid	Serotype
RMM109 *rfc* mutant of serotype Y	-	Type II		Y
RMM454 RMM109 [pRMM264]	>1/10	Type II	*bgt/gtrII*	2a
RMM456 RMM109 [pRMM268, pRMM180]	1/40	Group 7,8	*bgt/gtrX*	X
RMM455 RMM109 [pCC142]	1/40	Group 6	*oac*	3b
RMM168 *rfc* mutant of serotype X	<1/10	Group 6		X
RMM473 RMM168 [pRMM264]	>1/80	Type II	*bgt/gtrII*	2b
RMM474 RMM168 [pCC142]	1/40	Group 6	*oac*	3a
PE877 wildtype serotype 2a	1/20	Type II		2a
PE844 wildtype serotype 3b	>1/80	Group 6		3a
PE576 wildtype serotype X	>1/80	Group 7,8		X

Figure 5.10 Southern hybridisation using DIG- labelled ORF3 (*bgt*)

Chromosomal DNA of representatives of all *S. flexneri* serotypes and two *E. coli* K-12 strains were digested with the restriction enzyme *Pst*I and probed with DIG-labelled ORF3 (*bgt*). The hybridisation pattern shows that *bgt* is present in multiple copies in the genome of many serotypes.

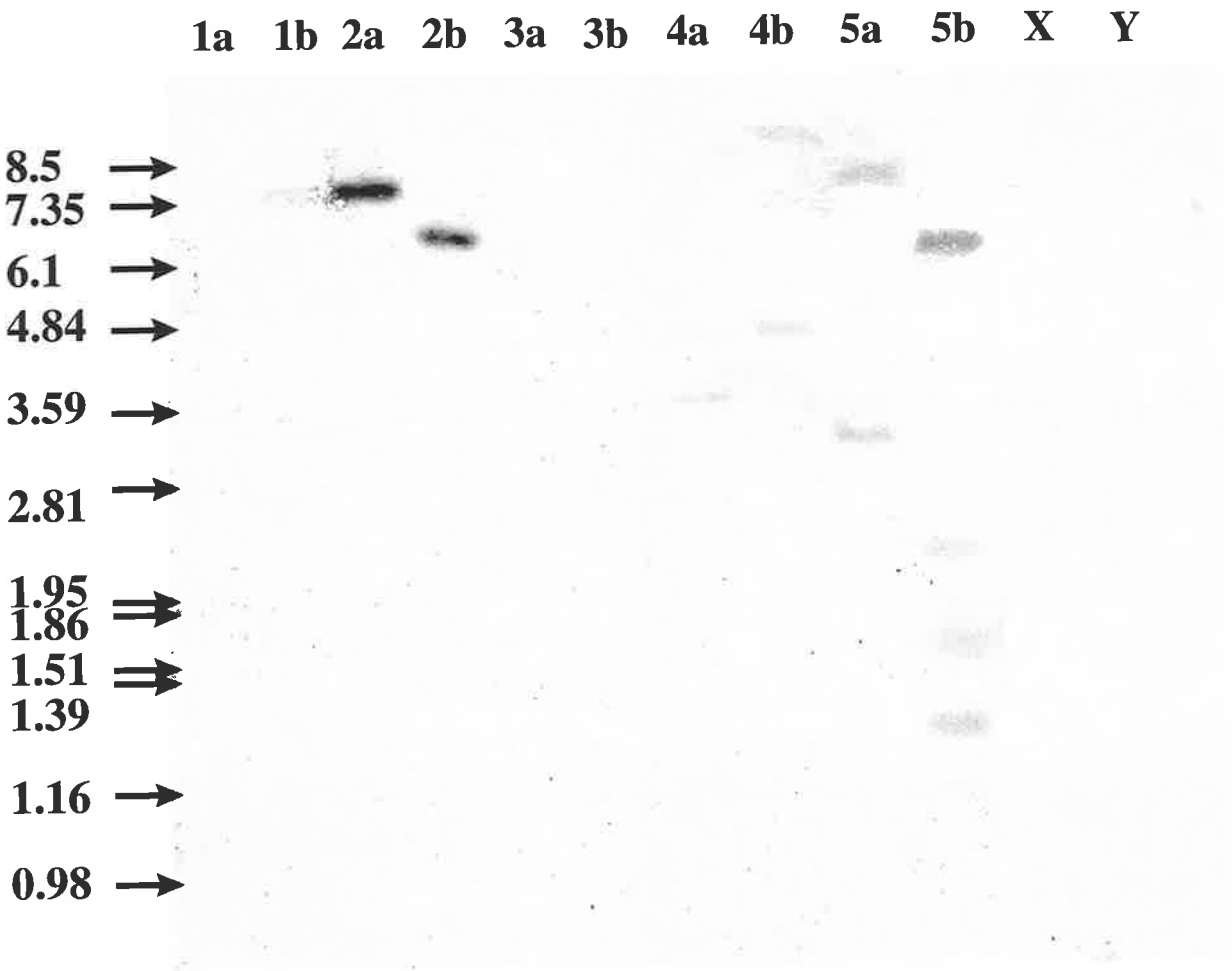
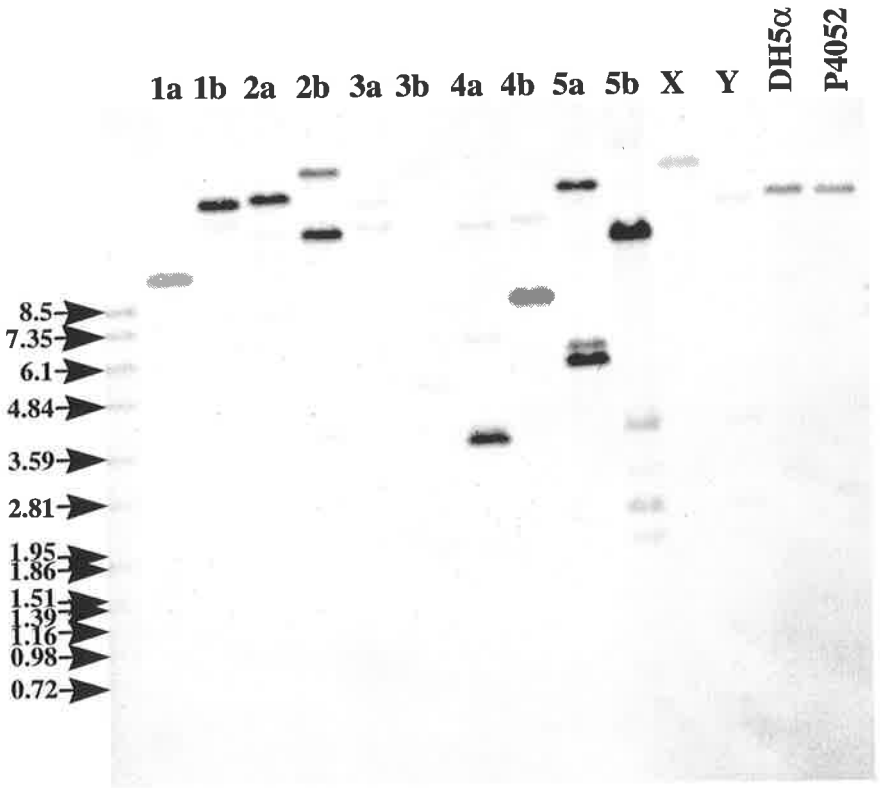

1a
1b
2a
2b
3a
3b
4a
4b
5a
5b
X
Y
8.5
7.35
6.1
4.84
3.59
2.81
1.95
1.86
1.51
1.39
1.16
0.98

Figure 5.11 Southern hybridisation using DIG- labelled ORF4 (*gtrII*)

Chromosomal DNA of representatives of all *S. flexneri* serotypes were digested with the restriction enzyme *Nsi*I and probed with DIG-labelled ORF4 (*gtrII*). Strong staining is seen with serotypes 2a and 2b and weaker staining is seen in serotypes 4a, 4b, 5a and 5b.


1a
1b
2a
2b
3a
3b
4a
4b
5a
5b
X
Y
DH5α
P4052
8.5
7.35
6.1
4.84
3.59
2.81
1.95
1.86
1.51
1.39
1.16
0.98
0.72

5.6 Comparison of genome organisations in phage P22 and *E. coli* K-12

The five ORF's identified in phage SfII have extensive homology to *E. coli* K-12 and bacteriophage P22 sequences. The organisation of these genes is shown in Figure 5.12. The first ORF in all three genomes corresponds to an excisionase, followed by an integrase gene, adjacent to either an attachment site in the phages or tRNA gene in *E. coli* K-12. ORF2, whose function is unknown, follows immediately, and exhibits a high degree of similarity to o120 of *E. coli* K-12, an ORF of 120aa of P22 and ORF10x1 of *S. flexneri*. The next ORF named *bgt* in SfII has a homologue in *E. coli* K-12, o306, which is likely to mediate the same function as *bgt*. Immediately adjacent to o306 lies an ORF of 443 aa, o443, which has been shown to have a similar hydropathy profile to GtrII and GtrX (Fig. 5.7). This may be the protein which is responsible for the addition of the glucose residue onto GlcNAc (section 5.3.3) when the *S. flexneri rfb* genes are introduced into *E. coli* K-12.

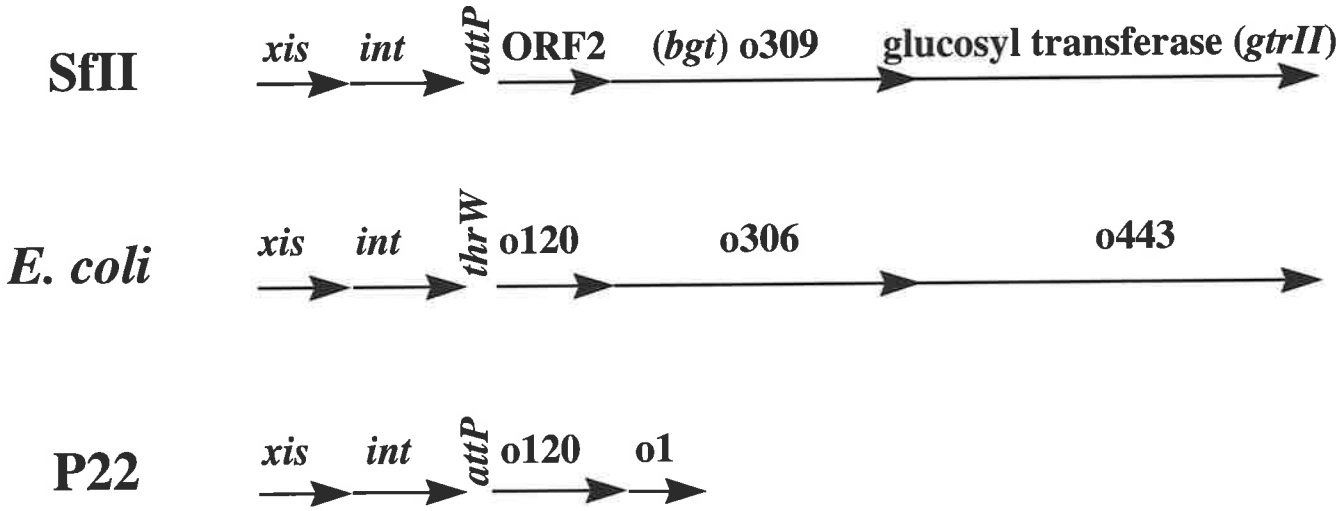
A partial ORF of 36 aa at the 5' end of the *attP* region of P22 phage has also been identified. This genetic organisation may be common to all serotype converting phages (except Sf6) of *S. flexneri*, and the genes seen in this region of the *E. coli* K-12 chromosome near 51 minutes may be remnants of a similar defective phage.

5.7 Summary

In this chapter two genes have been identified that are involved in serotype conversion. The genes, *bgt* and *gtrII*, act together to mediate the addition of a glucosyl residue onto the rhamnose III of the repeat unit, resulting in the appearance of the type II antigen. Sequencing of these genes revealed homology to known genes in the *Salmonella* phage P22 and the *E. coli* K-12 chromosome. Interestingly, the organisation of these genes appears to be conserved

Figure 5.12 Comparison of genome organisation of phage SfII, *E. coli* K-12 and phage P22.

The genomes of bacteriophages SfII and P22 and the *E. coli* K-12 chromosome are compared. The arrows indicate the direction of transcription. The integrase genes are all of the same size and immediately adjacent is either the attachment site *attP* or tRNA. ORF2 and homologues AE323o120 and P22o120, all of 120 aa in size, are indicated followed by ORF2 (bactoprenol glucosyl transferase) in SfII, o306 in *E. coli* K-12 and the partial ORF of 36 aa in P22. There is an ORF in *E. coli* K-12 of 443 aa whose function is yet to be determined and is downstream of o306 and in the same position as *gtrII*.


SfII
xis
int
attP
ORF2
(bgt) o309
glucosyl transferase (gtrII)
E. coli
xis
int
thrW
o120
o306
o443
P22
xis
int
attP
o120
o1

across these species, implying that possibly a common evolutionary origin exists for all three loci.

Semi-rough mutants of *S. flexneri* have been used to determine the timing of the modifications by assessing the ability of plasmids encoding serotype converting genes to modify a single repeat unit. *S. flexneri rfc* mutants may also provide a useful tool, to understand the stage at which modifications are added. The cellular location of the proteins involved in the addition of the modifications to the O-antigen is of interest and is addressed in the next chapter.

Chapter Six

Characterisation of *S. flexneri* Type II negative mutants and Bgt protein analyses

6.1 Introduction

Two genes carried by bacteriophage SfII, *bgt* encoding bactoprenol glucosyl transferase, and *gtrII* encoding glucosyl transferase, are required for expression of the type II antigen in *S. flexneri*. To gain an understanding of the requirement of these genes for serotype conversion, chromosomal *bgt* or *gtrII* mutants were isolated in a *S. flexneri* strain of serotype 2a. The result of the mutations was a loss of expression of the type II antigen.

To date, the cellular location of proteins involved in O-antigen modification has not been determined. The previous chapter describes the similarity that exists between the SfII phage Bgt and the *S. cereviseae* Dpm1 proteins. Dpm1 is a dolichol phosphate mannosyl synthase and is the best characterised of the family of glycosyl transferase proteins. Based on analysis of protein sequence, it has been predicted that Dpm1 is associated with the membrane of the endoplasmic reticulum (Preuss *et al.*, 1991).

This chapter describes the characterisation of chromosomal *bgt* and *gtrII* mutants and the restoration of type II antigen expression by the introduction of plasmids containing the genes *bgt* and/or *gtrII* into the mutant strains. Protein analysis using the T7 polymerase/promoter system and cell fractionation was carried out on the Bgt protein, and topology studies conducted using fusions to PhoA and LacZ.

6.2 Results

6.2.1 Isolation of type II antigen negative mutants of *S. flexneri*

Mutants of a *S. flexneri* strain of serotype 2a (PE655) were isolated that no longer expressed the type II antigen. These mutants were isolated in the laboratory of Dr. R. Morona as follows: RMM254 (Rif^R, PE655) was conjugated with E1196 (Tn*phoA* donor) (Table 2.2), and Rif, Km resistant exconjugants were selected. The exconjugants were harvested, cultured and then agglutinated with anti-type II serum. Bacteria that did not agglutinate with the type II serum were then re-grown and the agglutination process repeated. Single colonies were isolated and then assessed for their reactivity to anti-type II and group 3,4 sera by whole cell immunoblotting. Several type II antigen negative, group 3,4 positive mutants (RMA901, RMA902, RMA903, RMA905, RMA906, RMA907, RMA910 and RMA911) of RMM254 were obtained.

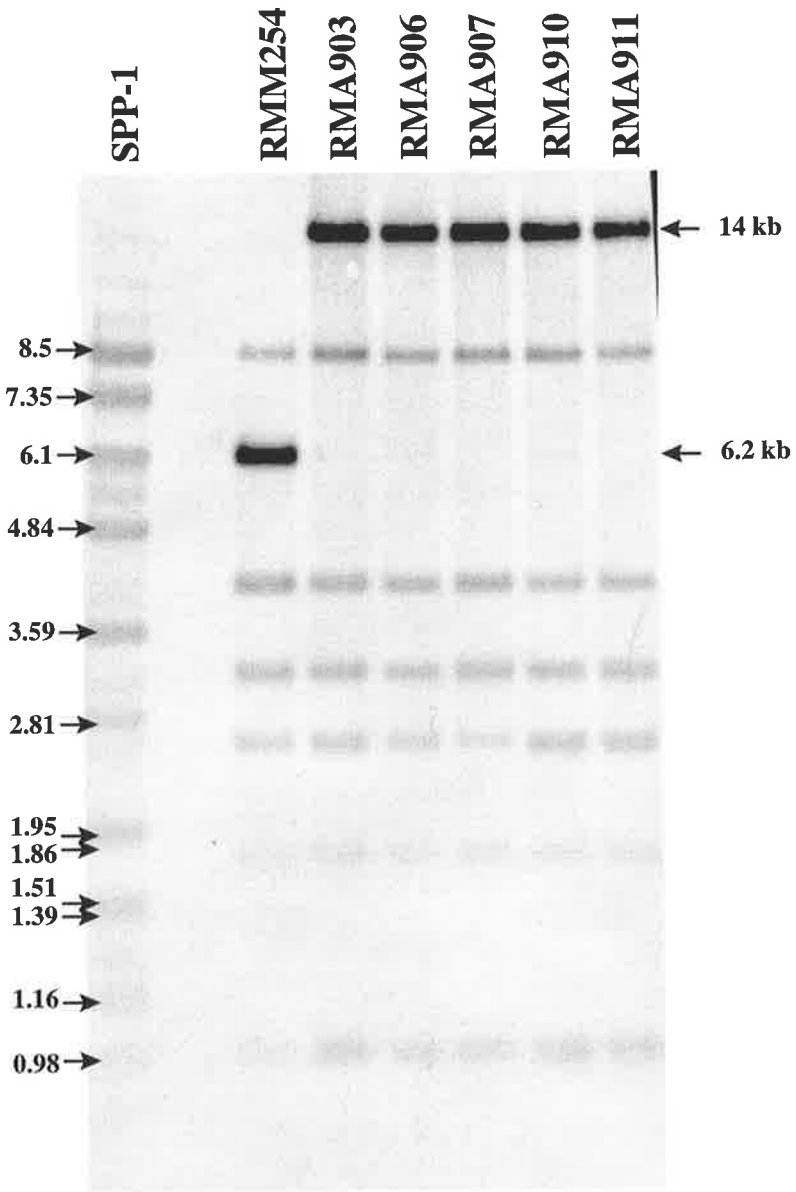
6.2.2 Characterisation of type II antigen negative derivatives of RMM254

Strains RMA901, RMA902, RMA903, RMA905, RMA906, RMA907, RMA910 and RMA911 lacking the type II antigen were characterised by several methods.

Southern hybridisations using DIG-labelled *bgt* and *gtrII* probes were used to assess the nature of the Tn*phoA* insertions in the eight mutants. Initially, chromosomal DNA from the type II negative mutants was isolated and digested with the restriction enzyme *Eco*RV. *Eco*RV does not cleave within *bgt* and was therefore suitable for screening for mutants in the *bgt* gene. Fig 6.1 shows hybridisation of DIG-labelled *bgt* to *Eco*RV digested chromosomal DNA from parent RMM254, and mutants RMA903, RMA906, RMA907, RMA910 and

Figure 6.1 Southern hybridisation using DIG-labelled *bgt*

Chromosomal DNA of parent strain RMM254 and Type II negative mutants RMA903, RMM906, RMA907, RMA910 and RMA911 were digested with the restriction enzyme *Eco*RV. The probe used was PCR amplified and DIG-labelled *bgt* using primers #2349 and #2376, which hybridised to a fragment of ca. 6.2 kb in the parent strain and ca. 14 kb in the mutant strains indicating the insertion of the 7.7 kb Tn*phoA*. *bgt* homologues are detected in multiple copies in the genome.


SPP-1
RMM254
RMA903
RMA906
RMA907
RMA910
RMA911
14 kb
6.2 kb
8.5
7.35
6.1
4.84
3.59
2.81
1.95
1.86
1.51
1.39
1.16
0.98

RMA911. A fragment of ca. 6.2 kb in size corresponding to wildtype *bgt*, was detected in RMM254, whereas the mutants (RMA903, RMA906, RMA907, RMA910 and RMA911) uniformly display a fragment of ca. 14 kb in size suggesting a 7.7 kb Tn*phoA* transposon (Manoil and Beckwith, 1985) insertion in *bgt*. Interestingly, multiple copies of *bgt* can be seen in the genome of strain RMM254. These multiple copies may correspond either to more than one copy of *bgt* or homologues, however, they are non-functional, demonstrated by the lack of expression of the type II antigen.

Similarly, the type II negative mutants (RMA901, RMA902 and RMA905) which did not display a size increase when probed with *bgt* were then hybridised with a DIG-labelled *gtrII*. Chromosomal DNA of RMA901, RMA902 and RMA905 was digested with enzyme *Nsi*I, which does not restrict within *gtrII*, and probed with DIG-labelled *gtrII*. Insertions within this gene were identified when the 10.5 kb fragment containing *gtrII* increased in size to ca. 18.2 kb as a result of incorporating the 7.7 kb Tn*phoA* transposon (Fig. 6.2).

RMA903 (*bgt*::Tn*phoA*) (Fig. 6.1) and RMA901 (*gtrII*::Tn*phoA*) (Fig. 6.2) were chosen as the representative strains to be used for further characterisation and complementation analyses.

Silver stained SDS-15% PAGE gels were used to analyse the LPS profiles of mutants RMA901 and RMA903. These mutants do not express the type II antigen which implies that they lack the glucose sugar linked to the third rhamnose of the repeat unit (Table 1.3, Fig. 1.9). This would result in their LPS displaying a slightly decreased molecular mass when compared to the parent 2a strain and, therefore, an altered migration. Figure 6.3 (A) is a silver stained SDS-PAGE gel which shows the parent strain, RMM254, RMA901 and RMA903. The individual LPS bands of the mutants migrate slightly faster and to a lower position in the gel than those of the parent strain.

Figure 6.2 Southern hybridisation using DIG-labelled *gtrII*

Chromosomal DNA of parent strain RMM254 and Type II negative mutants RMA901, RMA903 and RMA905 were digested with the restriction enzyme *Nsi*I. The probe used was PCR amplified and DIG-labelled *gtrII* using primers #2325 and #2407, which hybridised to a fragment of ca. 10.5 kb in the parent strain and ca. 18.2 kb in the mutant strains.

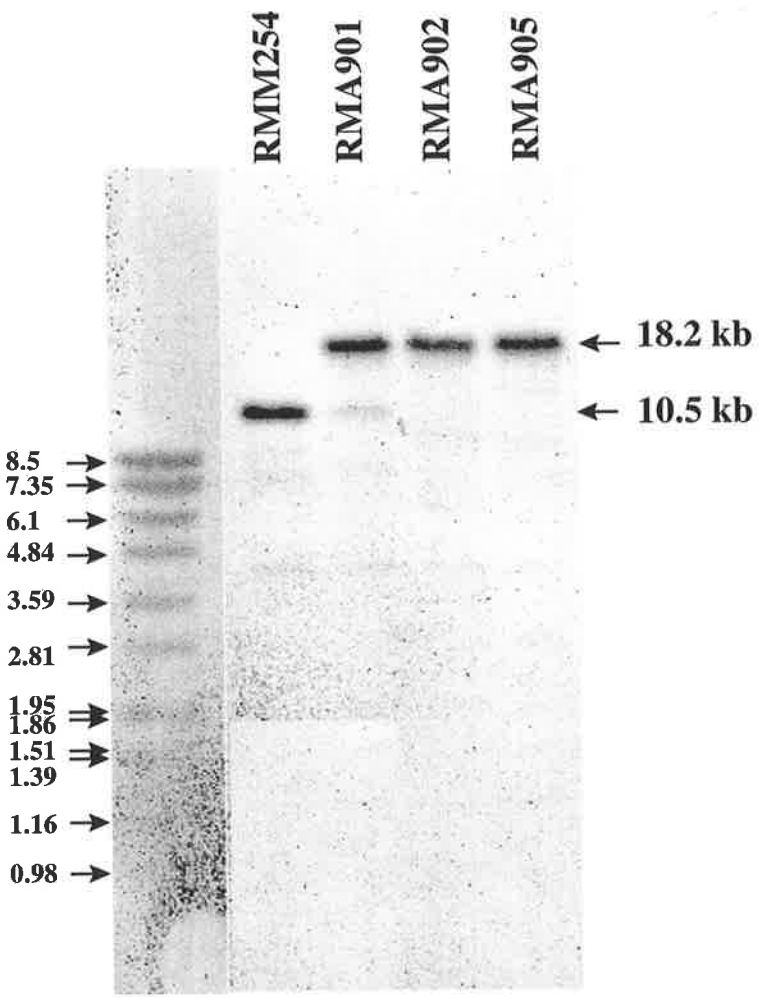

RMM254
RMA901
RMA902
RMA905
18.2 kb
10.5 kb
8.5
7.35
6.1
4.84
3.59
2.81
1.95
1.86
1.51
1.39
1.16
0.98

Figure 6.3 Silver stained SDS-15% PAGE and Western immunoblot of Type II negative mutants and complemented strains.

A: Silver stained SDS-15% PAGE gel displaying LPS patterns of:

RMM254, parent strain of serotype 2a

RMA901, type II negative mutant

RMM334, SfII lysogen of RMA901

RMM400, RMA901 + pRMM264

RMM463, RMA901 + pRMM271

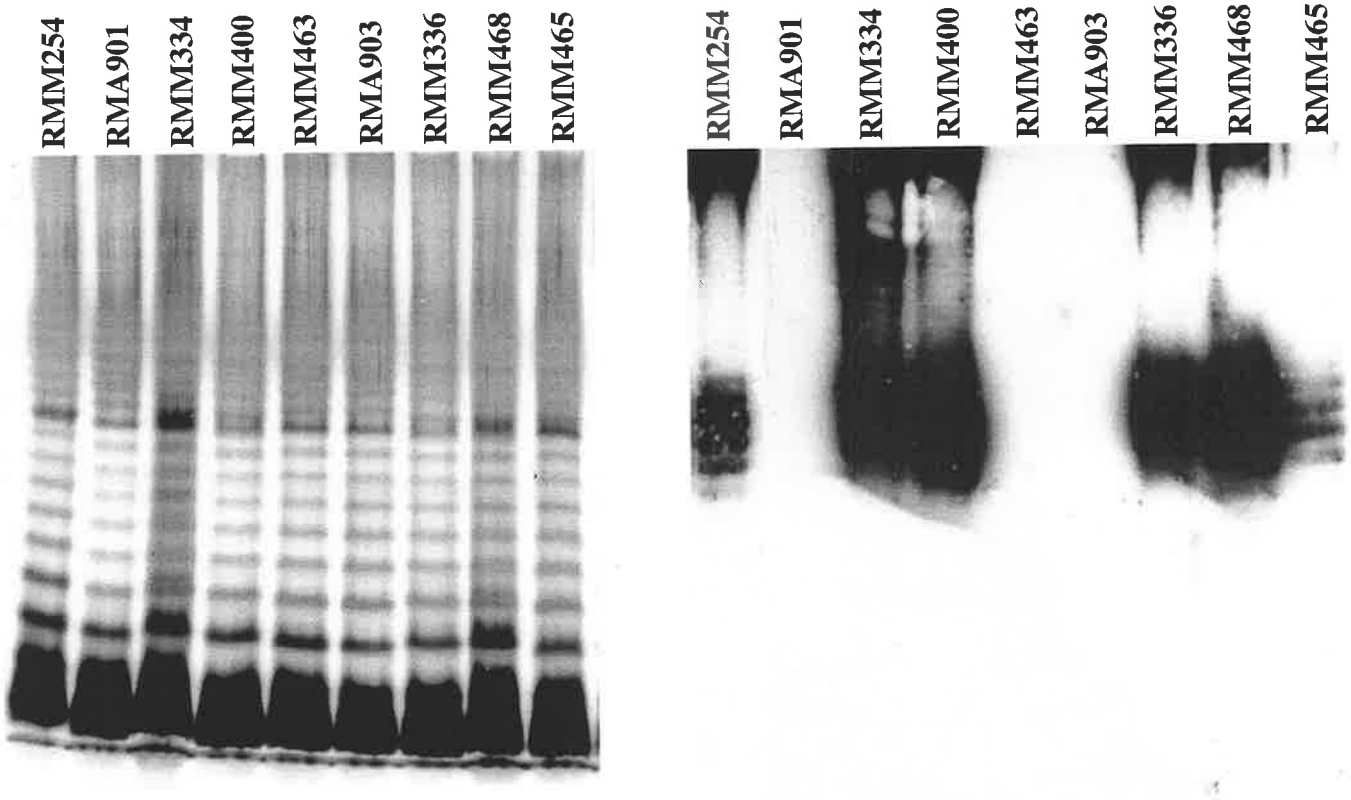
RMA903, type II negative mutant

RMM336, SfII lysogen of RMA903

RMM468, RMA903 + pRMM264

RMM465, RMA903 + pRMM270

B: Western immunoblot of the same strains in the same order using anti-type II serum.


RMM254
RMA901
RMM334
RMM400
RMM463
RMA903
RMM336
RMM468
RMM465
RMM254
RMA901
RMM334
RMM400
RMM463
RMA903
RMM336
RMM468
RMM465

A

B

To confirm the loss of the type II antigen, western immunoblots were also carried out (Fig. 6.3B). The parent strain, PE254 reacts to the polyclonal anti-type II serum, whereas the two mutant strains, RMA901 and RMA903 did not react with this antiserum.

To confirm the Southern hybridisation data, primers designed to both *gtrII* (Table 2.4, #2325, #2407) and *bgt* (Table 2.4, #2349, #2376) were used in separate PCR reactions with chromosomal DNA from strains RMA903 and RMA901. Product sizes of 930 bp for *bgt* and 1.4 kb for *gtrII* were expected; PCR with RMA903 resulted in a 1.4 kb fragment when *gtrII*-specific primers were used, however, no product observed when *bgt*-specific primers were used. A 930 bp product was observed when RMA901 chromosomal DNA was used in a PCR amplification reaction with *bgt*-specific primers, however, with *gtrII*-specific primers no product was seen. The absence of a PCR product in strains RMA903 and RMA901 when amplified with *bgt* and *gtrII* primers, respectively, is due to the size of the region of DNA between the two primers, resulting from the insertion of the 7.7 kb Tn*phoA*. Table 6.1 shows that the PCR data correlates with the Southern hybridisation data, and confirms the location of the Tn*phoA* insertions in RMA901 and RMA903.

6.2.2.1 Inverse PCR of Tn*phoA* insertion in RMA901

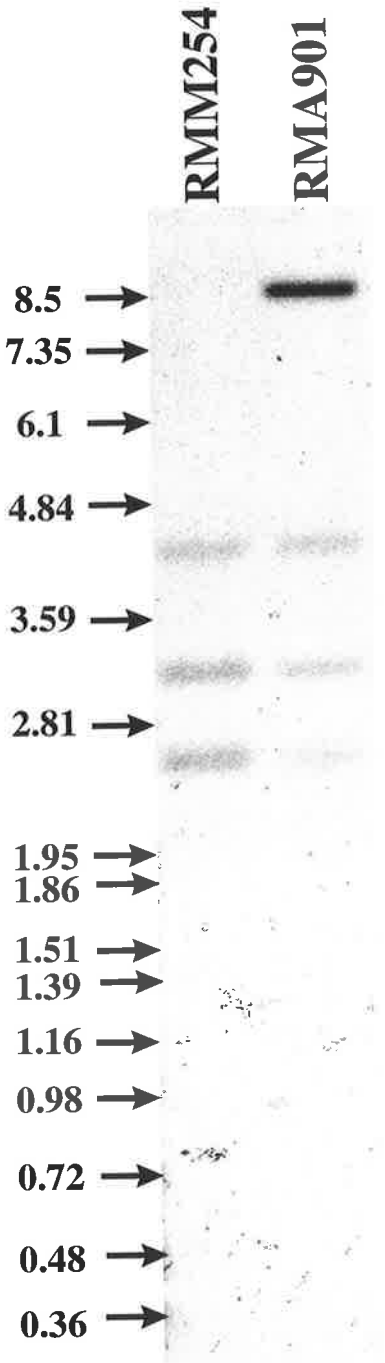
Further characterisation of mutant RMA901 was carried out using the inverse PCR (IPCR) technique, in order to identify the insertion point of the transposon Tn*phoA*. Southern hybridisations were carried out on *Eco*RV digested chromosomal DNA from strains RMM254 and RMA901, using DIG- labelled Tn*5* as a probe (Fig. 6.4). The enzyme *Eco*RV does not restrict within the *bgt* gene or within the Tn*phoA*. The transposon Tn*5* carries the same kanamycin resistance cartridge as that in Tn*phoA* and can be used to hybridise to the latter. A low level of hybridisation to this probe is seen in the parent strain and the same hybridisation pattern is observed in RMA901. However, in RMA901, the probe hybridised to a new

Table 6.1 Characterisation of Tn*phoA* insertion mutants

Strain	LPS	Western immunoblot	PCR	Southern hybridisation	Serotype
RMA901	altered migration	negative for type II antiserum	negative for *bgt*	increased size when hybridised with *bgt*	Y
RMA903	altered migration	negative for type II antiserum	negative for *gtrII*	increased size when hybridised with *gtrII*	Y

Figure 6.4 Southern hybridisation using DIG-labelled Tn*5*

Chromosomal DNA of parent RMM254 and type II negative mutant RMA901 were digested with the restriction enzyme *Eco*RV and then hybridised with DIG-labelled Tn*5*. The hybridisation patterns show that digestion of RMA901 chromsomal DNA with *Eco*RV results in the localisation of Tn*5* on a fragment of 8.5 kb in size.


RMM254
RMA901
8.5
7.35
6.1
4.84
3.59
2.81
1.95
1.86
1.51
1.39
1.16
0.98
0.72
0.48
0.36

fragment of ca. 8.5 kb in size, which corresponds to the 7.7 kb Tn*phoA* and 0.8 kb of adjacent DNA. Chromosomal DNA from RMA901 was digested with *Eco*RV and ligated with T4 DNA ligase. The IPCR fragment expected to be amplified using primers #2210 and #2211 (Table 1.4) which read out of the end of Tn*phoA*, is 0.8 kb in size. The resultant 0.8 kb product was cloned into the vector pGEM-T and subjected to DNA sequencing using M13 primers. This revealed that the insertion point is after nt. 4639 (Fig. 4.3) in *gtrII*.

6.2.3 Complementation studies

Various constructs were used for complementation analysis with strains RMA901 and RMA903. Plasmid pRMM264 (*bgt*/*gtrII*) and subclones pRMM266 (*gtrII*) and pRMM268 (*bgt*) described in Section 3.2.7 (Fig. 3.10), and PCR derived constructs pRMM270 (*bgt*), pRMM271 (*gtrII*) and pRMM272 (*bgt*/*gtrII*) (Section 5.3, Fig. 5.8), were used as described in Table 6.2. The complementation was initially performed by bacterial agglutination and colony immunoblotting using anti-type II and anti-group 3,4 sera.

Lysogenisation of RMA901 (*gtrII*::Tn*phoA*) and RMA903 (*bgt*::Tn*phoA*) by SfII phage restored expression of the type II antigen. Additionally, introduction of pRMM264, into RMA901 and RMA903 also restored expression of type II antigen. However, plasmid pRMM266 only restored expression of type II antigen in RMA901 and similarly plasmid pRMM268 complemented only in RMA903.

When plasmids pRMM270, pRMM271 and pRMM272 were introduced into the mutant strains, complementation was achieved with pRMM272, which contains both *bgt* and *gtrII*, in both RMA901 and RMA903. However, when pRMM270 and pRMM271 were introduced, only partial complementation was achieved. In the case of strain RMM463 [RMA901 + pRMM271], containing a plasmid copy of *gtrII*, staining in the colony immunoblot was weak when compared to the same strain containing the other plasmid

Table 6.2 Complementation of Type II negative strains RMA901 and RMA903

Strain/ plasmid	Reactivity to antisera		Serotype	Gene	Sf6 sensitivity
	anti-3,4	anti-II			
RMA901 (*gtrII*::Tn*phoA*)	++	-	Y	*bgt*	S
RMM334: RMA901 + SfII (lysogen)	++	++	2a	*bgt/gtrII*	R
RMM400: RMA901+ pRMM264	++	++	2a	*bgt/gtrII*	R
RMM424: RMA901+ pRMM266	++	++	2a	*gtrII*	R
RMM426: RMA901+ pRMM268	++	-	Y	*bgt*	S
RMM462: RMA901 + pRMM270	++	-	Y	*bgt*	S
RMM463: RMA901 + pRMM271	++	+/-	2a	*gtrII*	P
RMM464: RMA901 + pRMM272	++	++	2a	*bgt/gtrII*	R
RMA903 (*bgt*::Tn*phoA*)	++	-	Y	*gtrII*	S
RMM336: RMA903 + SfII (lysogen)	++	++	2a	*bgt/gtrII*	R
RMM468: RMA903+ pRMM264	++	++	2a	*bgt/gtrII*	R
RMM469: RMA903+ pRMM266	++	-	Y	*gtrII*	S
RMM470: RMA903+ pRMM268	++	++	2a	*bgt*	R
RMM465: RMA903 + pRMM270	++	+	2a	*bgt*	R
RMM466: RMA903 + pRMM271	++	-	Y	*gtrII*	S
RMM467: RMA903 + pRMM272	++	++	2a	*bgt/gtrII*	R

++ indicates positive reaction to antiserum in colony immunoblot comparable to wildtype
+ indicates positive reaction to antiserum in colony immunoblot weaker than wildtype
+/- indicates positive reaction to antiserum in colony immunoblot weaker than wildtype but stronger than negative
- indicates no reactivity to antiserum by colony immunoblot
P partial sensitivity to Sf6
R resistance to Sf6
S resistance to Sf6

constructs (pRMM264, pRMM266 and pRMM272). This was also true for strain RMM465, (RMA903 containing the complementing plasmid pRMM270), where only weak staining was observed, compared with complementing plasmids pRMM264, pRMM268 and pRMM272. It may be possible that an insertion in either *bgt* or *gtrII* exerts a polar effect downstream or upstream, respectively, and, therefore, both *bgt* and *gtrII* must be supplied for successful complementation.

Sensitivity to Sf6 phage of the complemented mutants was also determined (Table 6.2). It was observed that complementation of either mutation by SfII lysogenisation or complementation with plasmids pRMM264 or pRMM272 restored resistance to Sf6, however, partial sensitivity was observed in strains RMM426, RMM462, RMM469 and RMM466 corresponding with their reduced reactivity to anti-type II serum.

6.2.3.1 LPS and western immunoblot analyses of complemented mutants RMA901 and RMA903

Comparisons of migration patterns of LPS on SDS-PAGE were made. In addition, western immunoblotting was carried out with the complemented strains RMM334, RMM400, RMM463, RMM336, RMM468 and RMM465 (Fig 6.3B) using anti-type II serum. The type II negative mutants RMA901 and RMA903 did not react with anti-II serum. Lysogenisation with bacteriophage SfII restored expression of type II antigen in both strains, as did plasmid pRMM264. Introduction of *bgt* and *gtrII* into the strains produced differing results. pRMM271 (*gtrII*) did not restore detectable type II antigen expression in RMA901, whereas pRMM270 (*bgt*) could to some extent with RMA903. This correlates well with the data in Table 6.2. An explanation for the observation made (Table 6.2, Figure 6.3B) is that the transposon insertion in these strains may be exerting a polar effect on *bgt* upstream of *gtrII*

and not allowing efficient expression of *bgt*, thus complementation of this defect is only achievable by addition of both genes (*bgt* and *gtrII*).

6.3 Detection of *bgt* and *gtrII* gene products

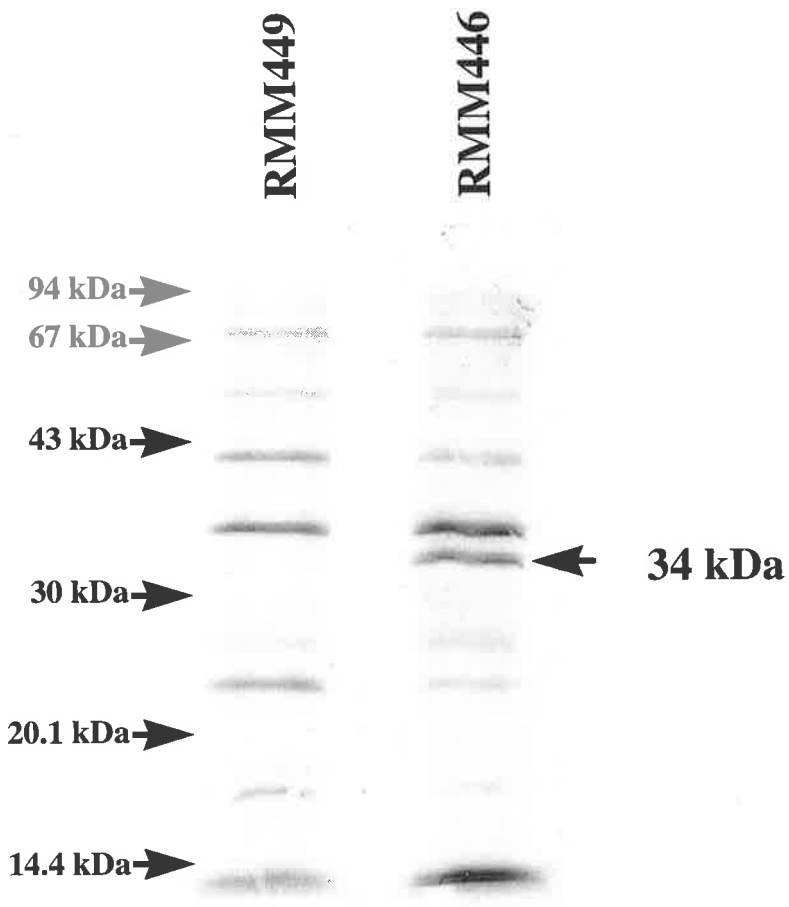
To detect proteins encoded by genes *bgt* and *gtrII*, plasmids pRMM270, pRMM271 and pRMM272, (pGEM-T clones of *bgt*, *gtrII* and *bgt/gtrII* respectively (Section 4.3)), were used. The plasmids were introduced into *E. coli* K-12 strain E2096 harbouring pGP1-2, generating strains RMM446, RMM447 and RMM448. pGEM5Zf+ is the vector from which pGEM-T is derived and was used as the control plasmid in RMM449.

The *in vivo* T7 polymerase-driven expression system of Tabor and Richardson (1985) was used for expression of Bgt and GtrII (Section 2.19). The autoradiograph (Fig. 6.5) shows one unique protein encoded by RMM446 containing *bgt* on pRMM270 compared to the control strain RMM449 containing plasmid pGEM5Zf+. A strongly labelled protein migrating at ca. 34 kDa, consistent with the predicted size of Bgt was detected (Fig. 6.5) (Table 4.1). A 34 kDa protein was also observed in the lane containing strain RMM448 (pRMM272) which contained both *bgt* and *gtrII*. However, it was weakly labelled in this strain and was therefore not shown.

A labelled protein band at approximately 55 kDa was expected for GtrII with strains RMM447 and RMM448, however, this was not detected. One possible explanation is that the low G+C% content of *gtrII* of 31.8% (Table 4.1) coupled with the number of rare codons in the first 25 amino acids regulates translation of *gtrII* in a manner similar to that found for the O-antigen polymerase gene, *rfc*, which is also not visualised in Coomassie Blue stained gels or by autoradiographyafter L-[^{35}S]-methionine labelling (Morona *et al.*, 1994; Daniels *et al.*, 1998).

Figure 6.5 Expression of Bgt using the T7 polymerase /promoter system.

The T7 polymerase/promoter system (Tabor and Richardson, 1985) was used to overexpress proteins encoded on genes contained on plasmid pRMM270 (*bgt*), which was then labelled with [^{35}S]-methionine. Autoradiography of strains RMM449 [E2096 + pGEM5Zf+] and RMM446 [E2096 + pRMM270] electrophoresed on an SDS-15% PAGE exhibited bands of the predicted size of Bgt of 34 kDa in the track containing RMM446.


RMM449
RMM446
94 kDa
67 kDa
43 kDa
30 kDa
20.1 kDa
14.4 kDa
34 kDa

6.3.1 Cellular location of Bgt in *E. coli*

The predicted role of Bgt is to facilitate the transfer of glucose residues from the charged nucleotides to the lipid carriers prior to their transfer via the glucosyl transferase to the O antigen acceptor, suggesting it may be active in the cytoplasmic space. Analysis of hydropathy plots (Fig. 5.3) suggested the Bgt protein has two membrane spanning domains near the carboxy terminal end and a large hydrophilic region at the amino terminus; these characteristics imply the protein may be membrane associated.

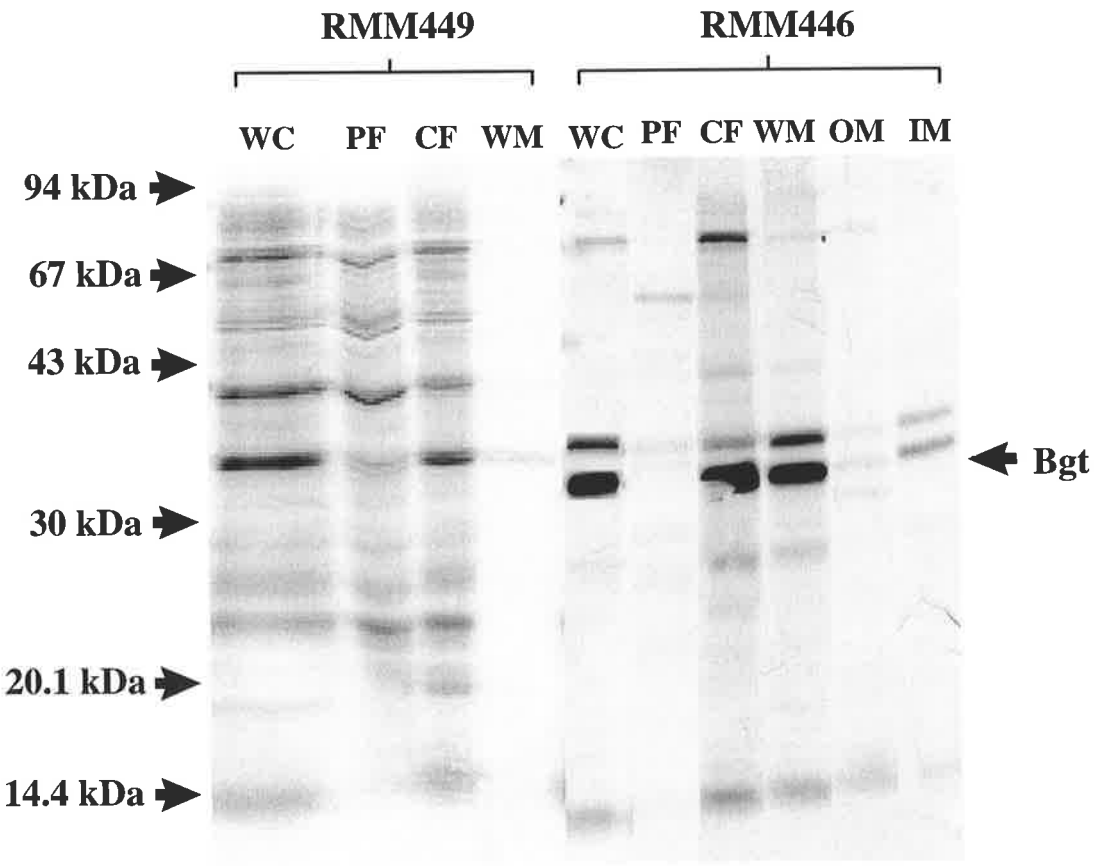
To determine the subcellular location of Bgt, the overexpressed protein was L-[^{35}S]-methionine labelled and fractionated. Figure 6.6 shows the whole cell and cell fractions of strain RMM446 [E2096 + pRMM271] and the control strain RMM449 [E2096 + pGEM5Zf+] into the components periplasmic fraction (PF), cytoplasmic fraction (CF), whole membrane (WM) and inner (IM) and outer (OM) membrane fractions (for RMM446). The 34 kDa Bgt protein appears to be localised primarily in the cytoplasmic and whole membrane fractions and in the inner membrane. The presence of Bgt in the cytoplasm and in the inner membrane implies that it may exist in both a soluble form as well as a membrane associated form and may be a peripheral membrane protein.

6.3.2 Studies on the topology of Bgt using *phoA* and *lacZ* fusions

Analysis of the amino acid sequence of Bgt using the Kyte and Doolittle program (PROSIS) (Kyte and Doolittle, 1982) shows two clear hydrophobic regions located at aa 231-255 and aa 263-285. To determine the orientation of the protein with respect to the membrane, four oligonucleotide primers (#2719, #2720, #2721 and #2722 Table 2.4) were designed to construct in-frame fusions with vectors pRMCD28 (‘*phoA*) and pRMCD70 (‘*lacZ*) to different positions in Bgt. The fusions were located at the carboxy terminal end

Figure 6.6 Fractionation of cells expressing the Bgt protein

Strain RMM446 [E2096 + pRMM270] was labelled with [^{35}S]-methionine and fractionated into cellular components; whole cells (WC), periplasmic fraction (PF), cytoplasmic fraction (CF), whole membrane (WM), outer membrane (OM) and inner membrane (IM). Samples representing 10^8 bacteria were electrophoresed on an SDS-15% PAGE gel. The autoradiograph shows a distinct product at ca. 34 kDa corresponding to the presence of plasmid encoded *bgt* in the WC, CF, WM and IM fractions.


RMM449
RMM446
WC
PF
CF
WM
WC
PF
CF
WM
OM
IM
94 kDa
67 kDa
43 kDa
30 kDa
20.1 kDa
14.4 kDa
Bgt

near the predicted hydrophobic domains (fusion 1 at nt. 669, aa 223; fusion 2 at nt. 783, aa 261; and fusion 3 at nt. 927, aa 309) (Fig. 6.7). Six plasmids resulted (pRMM274, pRMM275, pRMM276, pRMM277, pRMM278 and pRMM279), which correspond to the three amplified products in vectors pRMCD28 and pRMCD70, respectively. Sequencing using primers (#2211 and #2254) which read outwards from the *phoA* and *lacZ* genes, respectively, confirmed the fusion points of the constructs.

Plasmids pRMM274, pRMM275, pRMM276, pRMM277, pRMM278 and pRMM279 were introduced into *E. coli* strain CC118 to give RMM475, RMM476, RMM477, RMM478, RMM479 and RMM480. The strains were assessed for either alkaline phosphatase or β-galactosidase activity on NA containing ampicillin and BCIP and BCIG, respectively (Table 6.3). Alkaline phosphatase is inactive in the cytoplasm and β-galactosidase is inactive in the periplasm, implying that fusions 1 and 3 are cytoplasmically located and fusion 2 is located in the periplasm. The location of the fusion junctions are shown on the topological model of Bgt (Fig. 6.8).

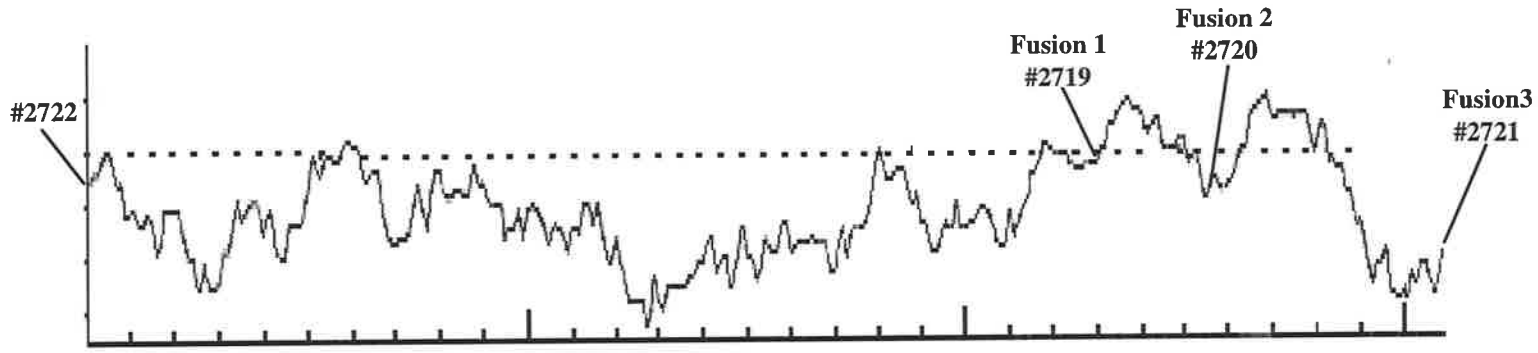
6.3.2.1 Tm-predict model of Bgt topology

The Tm-predict package (Hoffman and Stoffel, 1993) was also used. It predicted three inside to outside transmembrane helices, involving aa 50-68, 228-249 and 264-283, and three outside to inside helices, involving aa 52-68, 228-246 and 264-280, with the first in each case considered insignificant. Two models were suggested for the transmembrane topology by the program when the transmembrane helix length was set between 17 and 23 amino acids. Both models had two transmembrane helices with the "strongly preferred" model having the amino and carboxy terminal in the periplasm and the "alternative model" with both termini in the cytoplasm. Overall the activities correlate well with the "alternative model" predicted by the Tm-predict program (Fig. 6.8).

Figure 6.7 Hydropathy plot of ORF3

Primers #2719, #2720, #2721 and #2722 were designed incorporating *Pst*I and *Xba*I restriction sites to enable the construction of fusions of Bgt of various lengths to PhoA and LacZ by cloning into vectors pRMCD28 and pRMCD70, respectively. Resultant plasmids derived from cloning of the different products into the vectors are listed, and the ability of these constructs to restore expression of type II antigen in RMA901(*bgt*::Tn*phoA*) by colony immunoblotting was also assessed.

ORF3



	Serotype Conversion in RMA901
pRMCD28/70	
pRMM274/277	-
pRMM275/278	-
pRMM276/279	+

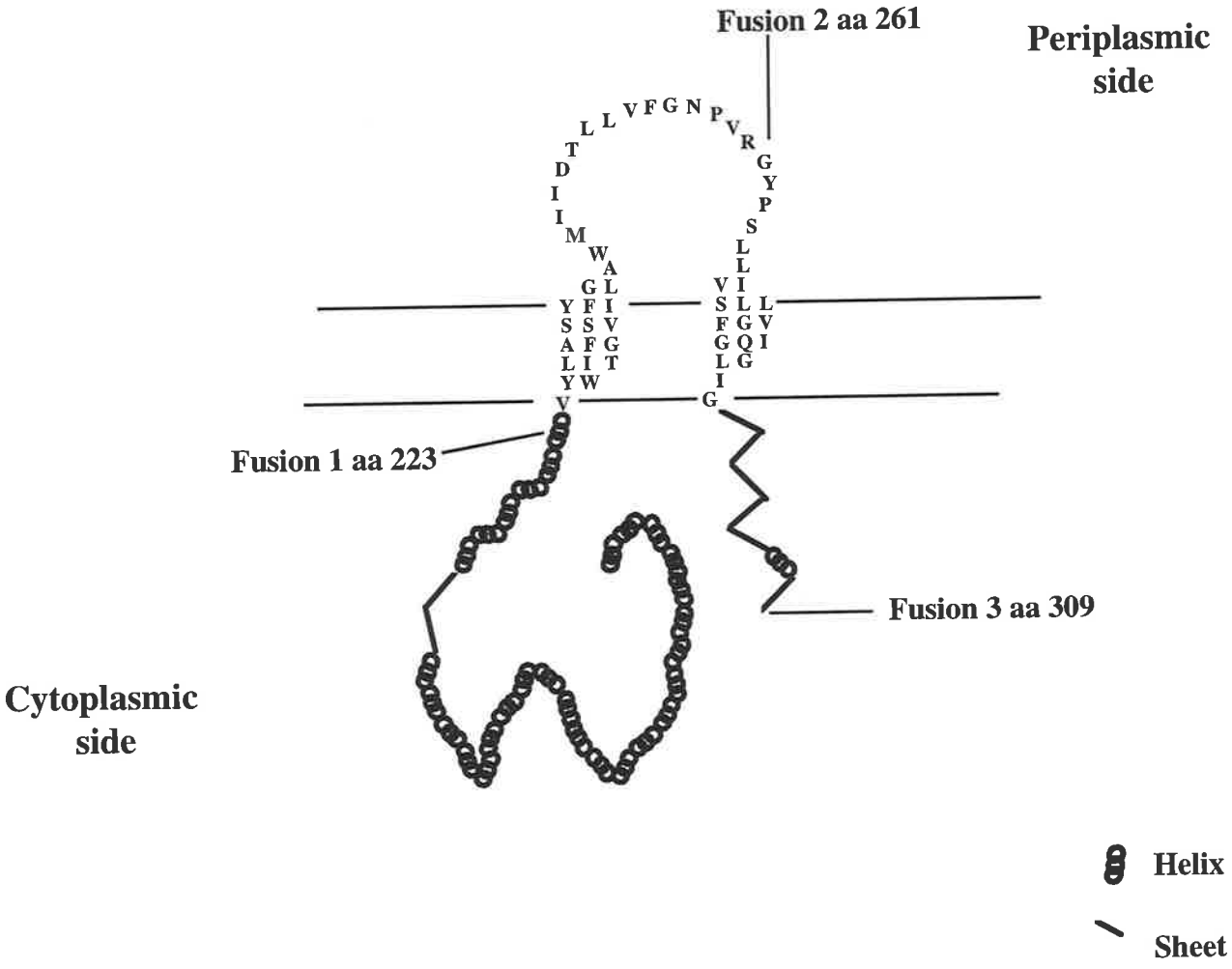
Table 6.3 Characterisation of fusions using colour indicator plates, western immunoblotting of cell fractions and enzyme assays.

			Colour indicator plates		Western immunoblots	Enzyme assays	
Fusion	**nt. position**	**aa**	**BCIP**	**BCIG**	**localisation**	**β- galactosidase**	**alkaline phosphatase**
1	669	223	-	+	cytoplasmic	4615 ± 168.65	56 ± 11
2	783	261	+	-	periplasmic	125 ± 23	280 ± 31.09
3	927	309	-	+	cytoplasmic	2535 ± 176	6 ± 1.73
Control*						5393 ± 168.65	423 ± 30.98

* Controls used were DH5 for β- galactosidase activity and E2308 for alkaline phosphatase activity

Figure 6.8 Topological model of *S. flexneri* Bgt protein.

This model is based on *bgt*::*phoA* and *bgt*::*lacZ* defined fusions and computer prediction data. The amino acids in the transmembrane and periplasmic domains are represented by their single letter code whereas the cytoplasmic domain is represented by the predicted structures as determined in PROSIS (Garnier *et al.*, 1978). The location of the fusions are indicated and the amino acid positions numbered.


Fusion 2 aa 261
Periplasmic side
Fusion 1 aa 223
Fusion 3 aa 309
Cytoplasmic side
Helix
Sheet

6.3.2.2 Western immunoblotting of Bgt::PhoA and Bgt::LacZ fusions

To assess the stability and subcellular location of the Bgt::PhoA and Bgt::LacZ fusion proteins, western immunoblotting was performed using: A) anti-alkaline phosphatase and (B) anti-β-galactosidase sera (Fig. 6.9). Whole cell and cell fractions (periplasm, cytoplasm and whole membrane) of the three Bgt::PhoA fusions and three Bgt::LacZ fusions were tested. Only Bgt::PhoA fusion 2 (RMM476) (aa 261) panel (A), and Bgt::LacZ fusions 1 (RMM478) (aa 223) and 3 (RMM480) (aa 309) were readily detected. Fractionation of the cells showed that the fusion proteins were located in the cytoplasmic and membrane fractions. The truncated proteins of 24 kDa (fusion #1) and 29 kDa (fusion #2) in size and the full length 34 kDa (fusion #3) were fused to the 46.5 kDa PhoA and 94 kDa LacZ proteins, respectively. Predicted fusion products sizes were 71 kDa (#1), 75 kDa (#2) and 80 kDa (#3) for PhoA and 118 kDa (#1) and 122 kDa (#2) and 128kDa (#3) for LacZ. Some breakdown products reactive with anti-PhoA and anti-LacZ were detected. In addition, a non-specific band at ca. 58 kDa cross-reacting with the antiserum is seen in Fig. 6.9B that is common to all lanes, including strain DH5 harbouring the control plasmid pRMCD70. Comparisons of CF and WM fractions of fusions 1 (RMM478) and 3 (RMM480) with LacZ show more association of the former with the cytoplasmic fraction, and whole membrane fraction for the latter.

Enzyme activities for alkaline phosphatase and β-galactosidase were measured for each of the fusion proteins (Table 6.3). Generally, the periplasmically located alkaline phosphatase fusions have 5-10 fold greater activity than those located in the cytoplasm, and the cytoplasmically located β-galactosidase fusions exhibited greater activity than those located in the periplasm. Control strain DH5 was induced by the addition of 2 mM of IPTG.

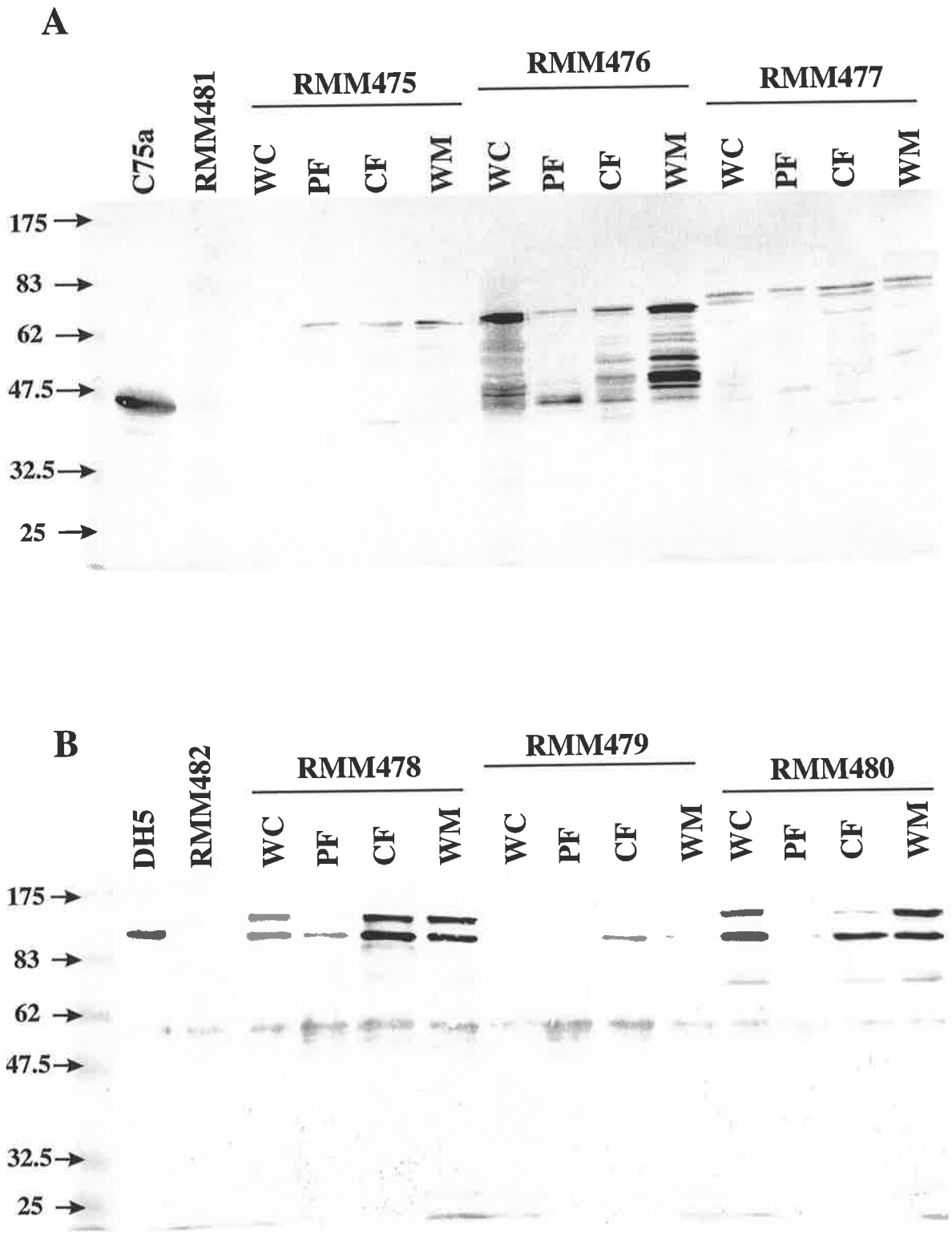
Plasmids pRMM274, pRMM275 and pRMM276 were introduced into RMA901 (*bgt*::Tn*phoA*) and assessed for restoration of expression of type II antigen. The resultant strains were colony immunoblotted using anti-type II serum and it was determined that only pRMM276 was able to complement the defect in RMA901. The two truncated Bgt fusions

Figure 6.9 Western immunoblots of *E. coli* CC118 strains producing Bgt::PhoA (A) and Bgt::LacZ (B) fusion proteins. After electrophoresis on an SDS-10% polyacrylamide gel and transfer to nitrocellulose, proteins were detected using either A) anti-PhoA or B) anti- LacZ serum.

Whole cell (WC) and cell fractions (periplasmic, PF; cytolplasmic, CF; whole membrane, WM) of strains

(A) RMM475 - CC118 [pRMM274] (fusion 1 in pRMCD28)
RMM476 - CC118 [pRMM275] (fusion 2 in pRMCD28)
RMM477 - CC118 [pRMM276] (fusion 3 in pRMCD28)
RMM481 - CC118 [pRMCD28]

(B) RMM478 - CC118 [pRMM277] (fusion 1 in pRMCD70)
RMM479 - CC118 [pRMM278] (fusion 2 in pRMCD70)
RMM480 - CC118 [pRMM279] (fusion 3 in pRMCD70)
RMM482 - CC118 [pRMCD70]


A
C75a
RMM481
RMM475
RMM476
RMM477
WC
PF
CF
WM
175
83
62
47.5
32.5
25
B
DH5
RMM482
RMM478
RMM479
RMM480
WC
PF
CF
WM
175
83
62
47.5
32.5
25

were unable to complement, possibly due to their inability to associate with the cytoplasmic membrane. This suggests that insertion into the cytoplasmic membrane is necessary for function.

6.4 Summary and conclusions

Two genes have been identified, bactoprenol glucosyl transferase (*bgt*) and glucosyl transferase (*gtrII*), which are essential for successful modification of *S. flexneri* O-antigen. Mutations in either of these genes were shown to abolish expression of type II antigen. Complementation could be achieved by the lysogenisation by using either SfII phage, or via the addition of the wildtype copy of either *bgt* or *gtrII* (in most cases).

Fractionation of cells with L-[^{35}S]-methionine-labelled Bgt localised this protein to the cytoplasmic and membrane fractions, whereas topological analysis using fusions to *phoA* and *lacZ* reporter genes have identified that Bgt is highly likely to be located in the cytoplasmic membrane, and is anchored by the two transmembrane segments located near the carboxy terminus.

CHAPTER SEVEN

DISCUSSION

7.1. Introduction

Shigella flexneri is the causative agent of bacillary dysentery in humans and poses a major health problem in many developing countries. Children under the age of 5 years are particularly susceptible and comprise the majority of those killed by this pathogen each year. Adults who have previously suffered from bacillary dysentery are also susceptible to subsequent infection by other serotypes of the same species, but appear to be protected against infection from the same serotype. Therefore, an understanding of the molecular basis for serotype diversity would assist greatly in the development of a vaccine.

The different serotypes of *S. flexneri* (Fig. 1.9) arise from lysogenisation of strains by serotype converting bacteriophages such as Sf6 (Clark *et al.*, 1991; Verma *et al.*, 1991), SfX (Verma *et al.*, 1993), SfII (this study), SfV (Huan *et al.*, 1997a; 1997b) and SfI (Bastin *et al.*, 1997). These bacteriophages have genes which encode enzymes for either glucosylation or O-acetylation via defined linkages at specific positions on the repeat units of the O-antigen of the lipopolysaccharide (LPS). The O-antigen of LPS acts as the receptor for these serotype converting bacteriophages and is modified during lysogenisation, resulting in an alteration of the receptor and hence resistance to superinfection by the same bacteriophage.

The LPS of *S. flexneri* has been determined to be of significance in the virulence of the organism (Formal *et al.*, 1970; Sansonetti *et al.*, 1983; Okada *et al.*, 1991a; Sandlin *et al.*, 1995, 1996; Van den Bosch *et al.*, 1997). As stated, infection with any serotype of *S. flexneri*

results in immunity to that serotype. However, the individual is still susceptible to infection by other serotypes. A study conducted by Formal and coworkers using monkeys immunised with *S. flexneri* of serotype 2a showed resistance to subsequent challenge with a strain of serotype 2a but not to *S. sonnei* (Formal *et al.*, 1991).

In this thesis, bacteriophage SfII has been isolated and characterised with respect to its host range, serotype converting ability and its genome has been physically mapped. The genes responsible for the serotype conversion mediated by this phage were identified and sequenced. Analysis of one of the gene products (Bgt) were carried out and a cellular location for the modification reaction has been proposed. Finally, the stage at which the modifications are added in *S. flexneri* LPS biosynthesis has been investigated.

7.2 Bacteriophage SfII and other serotype determining bacteriophages

Isolation of bacteriophage from various strains of different serotypes of *S. flexneri* proved to be difficult and several approaches were taken to induce (the excision of) these phages. It appears that some bacteriophages, once integrated, may undergo a deletion resulting in their subsequent inability to excise despite various methods of induction. Mutants of bacteriophage λ (λ_{xis}) have been isolated which are able to form plaques and lysogens but are defective in excision (Guarneros and Echols, 1970). Other mutations which may result in defective excision include *int* mutations or an alteration of the prophage attachment site.

The serotype converting phage SfII belongs to group A of the Bradley morphological classification (Bradley, 1967) and is unable to hydrolyse the O polysaccharide of the strains it infects. Other serotype converting bacteriophages of *S. flexneri* have also been classified according to this scheme: Sf6 and SfX belong to group C and SfV belongs to group B. O-antigen hydrolysis assays using Sf6 phage have shown that long O chains of *S. flexneri* strains of serotype X and Y are cleaved during Sf6 infection (Gemski *et al.*, 1975) presumably due to

its endorhamnosidase activity (Chua, 1996). Phage SfII does not possess O-antigen hydrolytic activity and it is unknown whether SfX and SfV perform the same function. It would be of interest to observe whether endoglycosidic activity could be correlated to a morphological group.

Bacteriophages SfX and SfV, like SfII are able to mediate the addition of a glucose residue to the O-repeating units of *S. flexneri* LPS. Lysogenisation by phage SfX results in the addition of a glucose residue to rhamnose I of the repeat unit and hence production of the group 7,8 antigen, while SfV mediates the glucosylation of rhamnose II and the production of the type V antigen. Although these phages belong to different morphological groups, SfII and SfV share remarkable sequence homology in the region encoding serotype conversion (discussed later).

Bacteriophage Sf6 appears to share more in common with the serotype converting bacteriophages identified in *Salmonella anatum*, ε^{15}, ε^{34} and g_{341} (Israel *et al.*, 1972; Iwashita and Kanegasaki, 1973, 1975, 1976; Takeda and Uetake, 1973) and phage P22 of *Salmonella typhimurium* (Lindberg, 1977). These phages belong to Bradley group C and are able to hydrolyse the LPS of their host strain by specific enzymes located in their tail spike proteins (Lindberg, 1977). These phages mediate inhibition of acetylation of the galactose residue of the repeat unit by ε^{15} and g_{341}, and alteration of α linkages by the former, while ε^{34} is able to add a glucosyl residue to the galactose sugar in the repeating unit. Bacteriophages, ε^{15}, ε^{34}, g_{341} and P22 do not recognise semi-rough isolates of their host cells, implying one O-unit is insufficient as a receptor (Lindberg, 1977). This contrasts the situation seen with phage SfII which recognises the single repeat unit of *rfc* mutants, lysogenises the strain and modifies the single repeat unit of the SR-LPS.

Bacteriophage SfII morphologically resembles bacteriophage Mu; both phages possess an icosahedral head, neck structure, contractile tail and tail fibres. The latter is not capable of mediating serotype conversion. However, does possess the ability to alter its host range based

on the orientation of the invertible G DNA region (Kamp *et al.*, 1978). The morphological similarity between the two bacteriophages is of interest when comparing the sizes of proteins of purified SfII phage with those of phage Mu. Major proteins of sizes 35, 35 and 40 kDa and minor proteins (15-67 kDa) were identified in SfII (Fig. 3.2) which may correspond to specific structures such as the head (33 kDa), tail sheath (55 kDa) and tail spike proteins (16-64 kDa) of Mu (Howe, 1987). Complete sequencing of the SfII genome and comparisons with databases will aid prediction of the sizes of the structural proteins and determination of their location within the chromosome of the phage.

7.3 Lysogens of bacteriophage SfII

Bacteriophage SfII is able to infect and form lysogens on strains of serotypes 1b, X and Y. It recognises an as yet uncharacterised receptor in the O-antigen of these serotypes, which is then blocked by the type II modification. SfII lysogens all express the type II antigen as demonstrated by immunoblotting and bacterial agglutination assays (Table 3.1, Fig. 3.4).

It has been reported that strains of serotype Y carrying plasmid copies of glucosyl transferase gene of bacteriophage SfX (*gtrX*) resulted in conversion to serotype X (Verma *et al.*, 1993). However, when assessed by agglutination using anti-group 7,8 and anti-group 3,4, reactivity to the original group 3,4 antigen remained (Verma *et al.*, 1993). When plasmid copies of *gtrV*, of bacteriophage SfV, were introduced into strains of serotype Y, residual Sf6 sensitivity was observed, indicating that possibly not all of the repeat units had been modified by the addition of a glucosyl residue (Huan *et al.*, 1997a). It was concluded that the serotype conversion mediated by these plasmids containing the serotype converting genes was partial.

Bacteriophage SfII lysogenisation of a strain of serotype Y (-;3,4) results in a 2a (II;3,4) serotype and retains the original group 3,4 antigen. Therefore, the 'completeness' of the conversion mediated cannot be assessed by continued reactivity to group 3,4 antiserum but

can be determined using bacterial agglutination with type II antiserum.. In addition, sensitivity to bacteriophage Sf6 was used to determine the extent of serotype conversion. *S. flexneri* lysogens of SfII and strains carrying serotype converting plasmids showed continued sensitivity to Sf6 phage, however, they continued to agglutinate at a greater dilution of type II antiserum than a natural isolate. In comparison, a clinical isolate of serotype 2a showed complete resistance to Sf6 phage implying that a difference exists between natural isolates of serotype 2a and Y strains that have been converted *in vitro* to express the type II antigen. The partial sensitivity to Sf6 phage may be due to mixed populations of lysogens in which the phage has excised from a proportion of cells. It appears that phage sensitivity assays using Sf6 phage are not an accurate means of determining serotype conversion.

7.4 Genome mapping of bacteriophage SfII

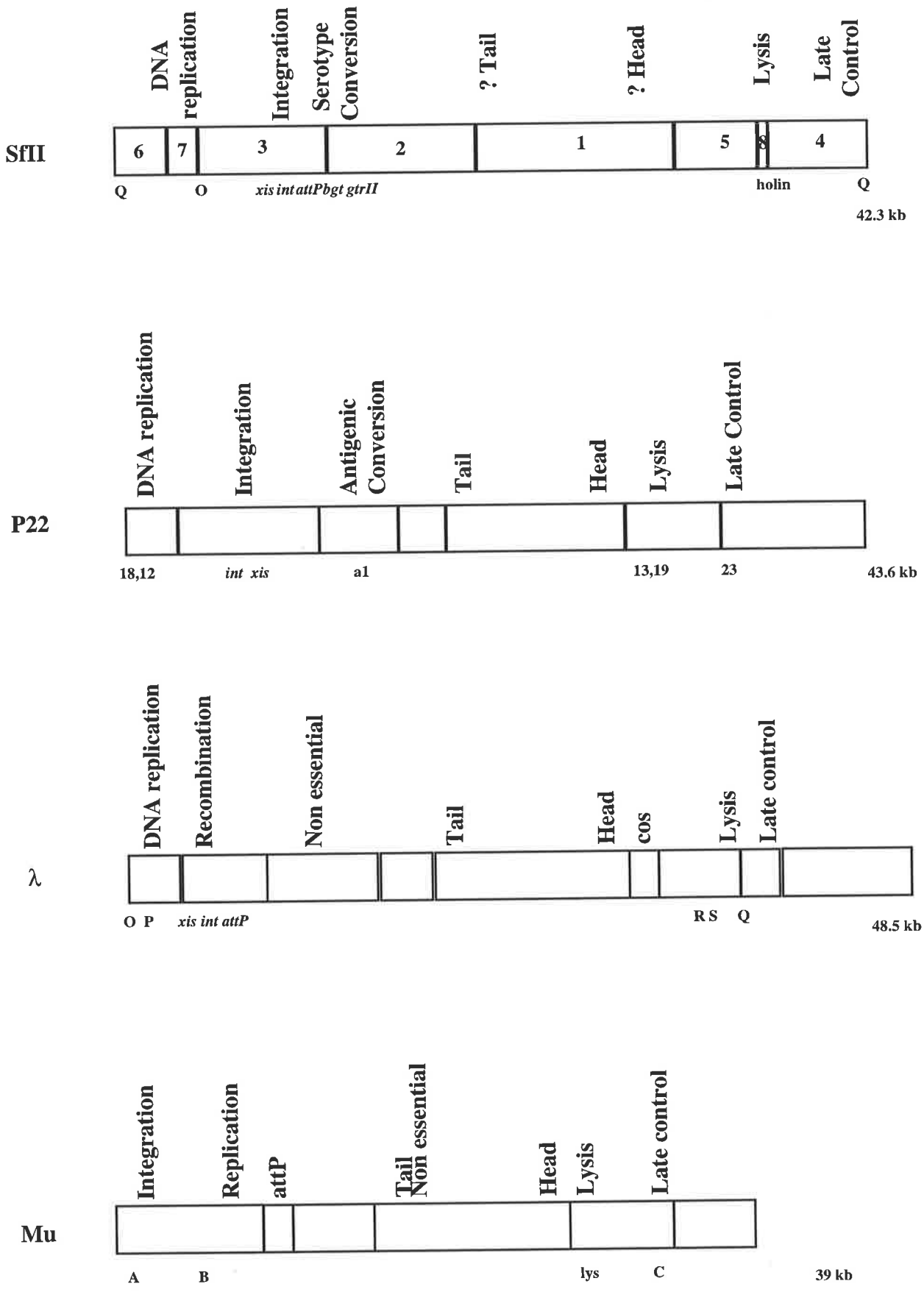
Comparison of phage SfII with well-characterised phages such as P22, λ and Mu, revealed a great deal of similarity in the organisation of their genomes (Fig 7.1). Structurally the genomes of bacteriophages λ and P22 are almost perfectly conserved (Poteete, 1988).

The functions associated with DNA replication (*Pst*I -6 and 7) are encoded adjacent to the integration region (*int/xis*) and the bacteriophage attachment site, *attP* (*Pst*I-3), which is followed by the serotype converting genes in phage SfII (Fig. 3.8) and SfV (Huan *et al.*, 1997b). In phage P22, the *a1* gene which has been implicated in antigenic conversion mediated by this phage, is found in the same location (Poteete, 1988), whereas in phage Mu, the corresponding region encodes the invertible G segement (Howe, 1987).

If the organisation of phage genomes is similar then, it is proposed that the genes encoding biosynthesis of tail proteins would be located on *Pst*I fragments 2 and 1 and the genes for head biosynthetis would be located in *Pst*I fragments 1 and 5. Extensive sequencing needs to be completed to confirm the precise location of these genes. Sequence analysis of

Figure 7.1 Comparison of organisation of bacteriophages SfII, P22, λ and Mu.

The organisation of the genomes of phages P22, λ and Mu are shown. The regions of the chromosome that determine DNA replication, integration, head and tail structures and late control genes have been indicated. Preliminary sequencing of bacteriophage SfII *Pst*I fragments show homology to genes with functions indicated. The location of the SfII head and tail structural genes has also been postulated.


SfII
DNA replication
Integration
Serotype Conversion
? Tail
? Head
Lysis
Late Control
6
7
3
2
1
5
8
4
Q
O
xis int attPbgt gtrII
holin
Q
42.3 kb
P22
DNA replication
Integration
Antigenic Conversion
Tail
Head
Lysis
Late Control
18,12
int xis
a1
13,19
23
43.6 kb
λ
DNA replication
Recombination
Non essential
Tail
Head
cos
Lysis
Late control
O P
xis int attP
R S
Q
48.5 kb
Mu
Integration
Replication
attP
Tail Non essential
Head
Lysis
Late control
A
B
lys
C
39 kb

ORF3 in bacteriophage SfV, revealed ca. 30% homology to tail fibre proteins of 3 different species, Bacteriophage P2 gene G, *Shigella boydii* orfB175 and phage λ *tfa* gene (Huan *et al.*, 1997a). ORF3 is located downstream of the serotype converting genes which is consistent with the predicted organisation of the SfII genome.

*Pst*I fragment 8 was found to encode a homologue to the holin (lysis) gene of phage phi-105. Further downstream, a homologue of gene Q, spanning fragments 4 and 6 was identified. Q regulates late gene transcription, consistent with the position of homologous genes in P22, λ and Mu. In addition, bacteriophage SfII has sequences with a great deal of sequence similarity to the *E. coli* K-12 genome indicating a common evolutinary origin with the defective phage DLP12 present in the E. coli K-12 genome. SfII possesses P22 *xis*, *int*, *attP* and *bgt* homologues and may, therefore, be a close derivative of this phage.

7.5 Bacteriophage SfII attachment site

The attachment site of SfII was located in *Pst*I fragment 3 as predicted by Southern hybridisations of chromosomal DNA of lysogens (Fig. 4.5). Sequence analysis revealed the *attP* site of phage SfII to be identical to that of P22 (Section 4.2.4), with high similarity between the integrase (*int*) and excisionase (*xis*) genes, as also seen with the *attP*, *int* and *xis* genes of SfV.

The integration site of phage SfII had been determined to map near the *lac-pro* loci by conjugation experiments with *S. flexneri* and *E. coli* K-12 (Petrovskaya and Nevskaya, 1975; Petrovskaya and Licheva, 1982). It has now been determined that this location is due to the use of identical *attP* and *attB* sites. These data were confirmed by Southern hybridisations using chromosomal DNA from the SfII lysogens and probing with a DIG-labelled fragment amplified from this region of the chromosome. Two fragments were observed to hybridise to this probe which is consistent with splitting of the attachment sites upon integration of SfII

phage (Fig. 4.6). Therefore the *attP* and *attB* sites of bacteriophage SfII and *S. flexneri,* respectively, have been localised and are the same as P22.

7.6 A two step pathway for serotype conversion

Two genes have been identified, *bgt* and *gtrII*, which are required for the successful glucosylation of *S. flexneri* O-antigen. The predicted functions of the gene products were bactoprenol glucosyl transferase (Bgt) which transfers the glucose residue from the activated nucleotide to bactoprenol. The glucose is then transferred by the glucosyl transferase (GtrII) onto the O-unit acceptor. This would therefore involve a two-step pathway.

A two step pathway for the glucosylation of O-antigen had previously been independently proposed by two groups.

$$\text{UDPG} + \text{lipid-P} \leftrightarrow \text{lipid-P-G} + \text{UDP} \qquad (1)$$

$$\text{Lipid-P-G} + \text{antigen} \rightarrow \text{antigen-G} \qquad (2)$$

One group studying bacteriophage ε^{34}, which adds a glucose residue to the galactose sugar of the repeating unit (factor 34) of *Salmonella anatum* (Wright, 1971) and the other in the study of the *Salmonella* O-antigen factor 12_2 (Nikaido *et al.*, 1971). A lipid linked intermediate was detected in both instances and involved transfer of the glucose residue from the activated nucleotide sugar UDP-glucose to bactoprenol before addition to the LPS acceptor. The lipid intermediate is the C_{55} polyisoprenol alcohol (bactoprenol) which is also used in O-antigen and peptidoglycan synthesis. However, the linkages that attach the O-unit sugars are pyrophosphate, whereas the linkage attaching the glucose residues are phospho-diester bonds (Wright, 1971).

Salmonella enterica sv. Typhimurium can be glucosylated on the galactose sugar via an α-4 linkage resulting in 12_2 specificity, or via an α-6 linkage resulting in factor 1, mediated

by bacteriophage P22 (Wright, 1971). As a result of the studies in this thesis, it is proposed that a lipid intermediate and two step pathway exists for the glucosylation event, resulting in factor 1.

Mutants of bacteriophage ε^{34} were isolated that fall into two categories: a) those defective in their ability to transfer glucose from UDP to the lipid acceptor and b) those defective in the transfer of glucose from the glucosyl lipid to the O-antigen (Wright and Barzilai, 1970). These can be equated to mutations in *bgt* and *gtr* genes respectively. Strains lysogenised by bacteriophage ε^{34} carrying either of these mutations do not express factor 34, similarly, *S. flexneri* mutants carrying chromosomal mutations in *bgt* (RMA903) and *gtrII* (RMA901) did not express the type II antigen. It is proposed that the first step in the pathway in mediated by the product of the *bgt* gene, which transfers the glucose sugar from the activated nucleotide onto the bactoprenol, while the *gtrII* product transfers glucose from the bactoprenol onto the 'acceptor' O-antigen-bactoprenol (Fig. 7.2)

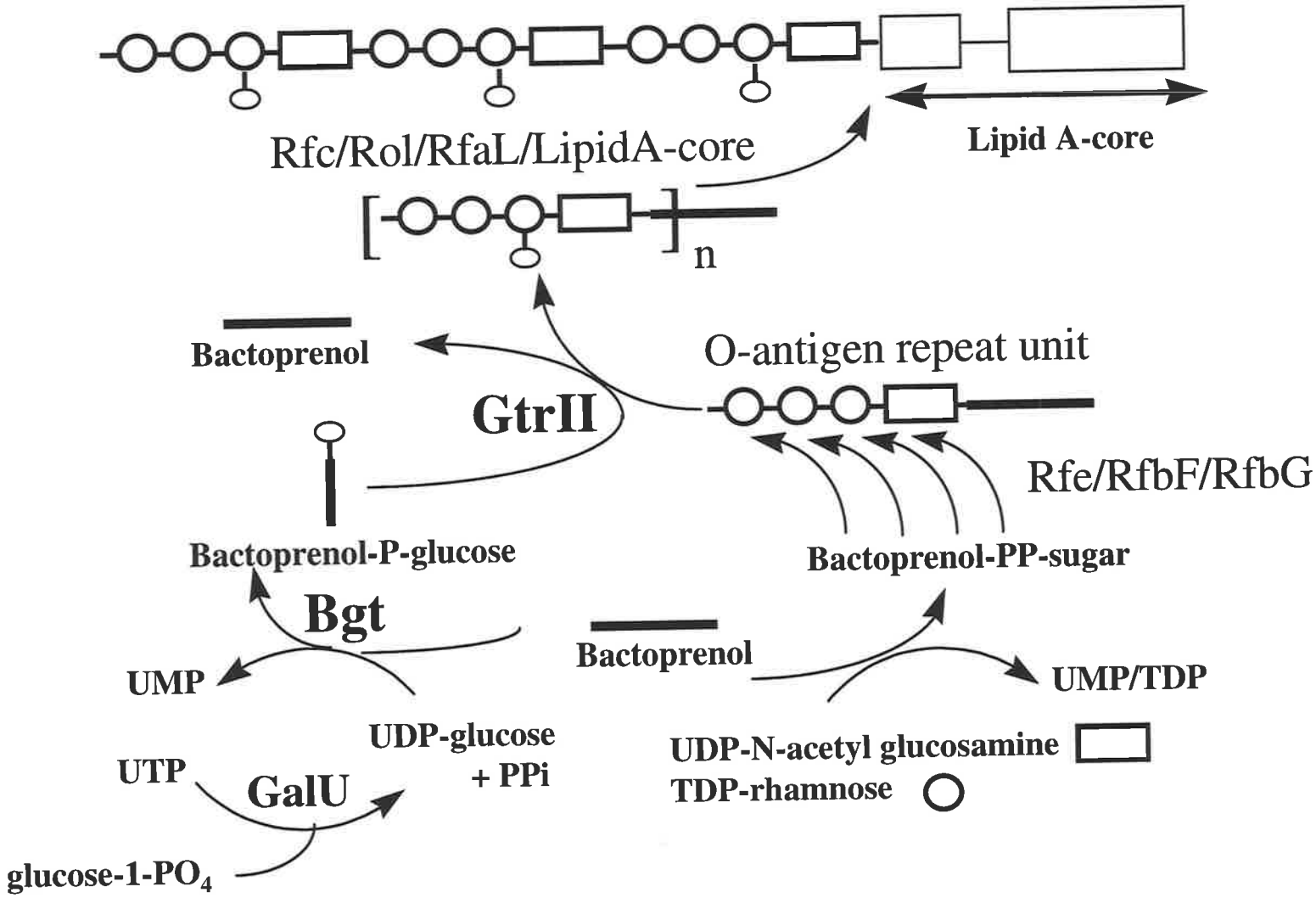
7.7 Dpm1- dolichol phosphate mannosyl synthase

Dolichol phosphate mannose synthase Dpm1 of *S. cerevisiae* is a well characterised member of a group of glycosyl transferases. Dpm1 catalyses the formation of dolichol-phosphate-mannose from dolichol-phosphate and GDP-mannose (Orlean *et al.*, 1988). This protein is encoded in 801 nt, is 30 kDa in size and is predicted to be anchored in the membrane of the endoplasmic reticulum. Membrane spanning regions are located either near the amino and carboxy terminal ends, or if the amino terminal end functions as a signal sequence, then the protein is anchored only by the carboxy terminus and faces the cytoplasm and is oriented toward the lumen (Orlean *et al.*, 1988).

Dpm1 and Bgt both exhibit potential membrane spanning domains at the carboxy terminal end and amino terminally located active site motifs (DXSXD and DXD) (Fig. 5.4),

Figure 7.2 Model for modification events in LPS biosynthetic pathway of *S. flexneri*

Schematic diagram representing the pathway of LPS biosynthesis and the location of proteins involved in O-unit synthesis (RfbBCAD), and assembly (RfbX, RfbF and RfbG), ligation of the first O-unit to the LipidA-core (RfaL), polymerisation of O-units (Rfc), control of O chain length (Rol) and modification (Bgt and GtrII).


Rfc/Rol/RfaL/LipidA-core
Lipid A-core
n
Bactoprenol
O-antigen repeat unit
GtrII
Rfe/RfbF/RfbG
Bactoprenol-P-glucose
Bactoprenol-PP-sugar
Bgt
Bactoprenol
UMP
UMP/TDP
UDP-glucose
+ PPi
UDP-N-acetyl glucosamine
TDP-rhamnose
UTP
GalU
glucose-1-PO4

which are predicted to be located in the cytoplasmic space where they can then interact with their substrate. In addition, Southern hybridisation data suggests that in both cases more than one copy of the gene or homologues performing similar function exist in the genome of the strain.

Enzymes belonging to this group of transferases are involved in the formation of β-linkages with the sugar they are transferring (Saxena *et al.*, 1995). This has been examined in *Salmonellae* with factor 34 where the glucose is linked to UDPG via an α–linkage and linked to the lipid intermediate via a β–linkage and finally linked to the LPS via an α–linkage. An inversion event between the two steps of the pathway occurs which results in the correct configuration of the branch group (Wright, 1971).

7.8 Complementation analyses

Previous studies have identified the *gtrX* gene of bacteriophage SfX, which when introduced into strains of serotype Y, was able to mediate their partial conversion to serotype X. When this gene was introduced into PE577 of serotype Y, no serotype conversion was detected. However, when *bgt* was also provided to the strain using a different plasmid, conversion to X was observed. Similarly, the action of *gtrII* and *gtrV* require the presence of *bgt* (or *orf*5) for the expression of type II and type V antigen, respectively (Huan *et al.*, 1997b). This is consistent with the two-step pathway.

Type II negative mutants RMA901 and RMA903 possessing Tn*phoA* insertions in the *gtrII* and *bgt* genes, respectively, were complemented by the addition of various plasmid constructs (Table 5.4) and lysogenisation with SfII (Table 6.1). Plasmid pRMM272 containing both *bgt* and *gtrII* restored production of the type II antigen in both mutants. RMA901 (*gtrII*::Tn*phoA*) was not complemented by *gtrII* alone but type II antigen was seen

with the introduction of both genes. This implied the possibility of a polarity effect being exerted by Tn*phoA* on the upstream *bgt* gene.

ORF2 is located upstream of *bgt* and *gtrII* and does not appear to be required to mediate expression of type 2 antigen. The lack of requirement of ORF2 in the serotype conversion experiments was evident by the production of type II antigen in the absence of ORF2 (Section 5.3.1). Homologues of ORF2 exist in *E. coli* K-12 (ECAE000324), *S. flexneri* (orf10X1) (Morona *et al.*, 1994) and *Salmonella* bacteriophage P22 (M10893), however, a function has not yet been defined for this open reading frame. This contrasts the observed requirement for this ORF (*orf6*) by phage SfV and various serotype converting plasmid constructs. A plasmid containing *orf4*, *orf5* but not *orf6* of phage SfV which equate to *bgt*, *gtr* and *orf2* of SfII, when introduced into a *S. flexneri* Y strain, resulted in the expression of type V and group 3,4 antigens. The lysogens when assessed by Sf6 phage continued to show sensitivity; the authors concluded that the conversion was partial due to the absence of *orf6*. Our data show that ORF2 is not required for the stable expression of the type 2 antigen and the continued sensitivity to Sf6 phage by SfII lysogens may be due to prophage excision or plasmid instability.

A functional homologues of *bgt* exists in the *E. coli* K-12 chromosome, indicated by the ability of *gtrX* to add the group 7,8 modification in the absence of a plasmid copy of *bgt* (Table 5.5). The chromosomal gene o306 was sufficient to substitute for *bgt* in the two step pathway. *E. coli* K-12 also contains a copy of a glucosyl transferase, encoded by o443, which may be responsible for the addition of a glucose residue to the GlcNAc of the repeat units, resulting in the expression of the type IV antigen (Table 5.5) (Morona *et al.*, 1995).

7.9 Comparison of organisation of genomes

The organisation of genes *int*, o120, o306 and o443 on the chromosome of *E. coli* K-12 is similar to that observed for their homologues in both phages SfII and P22. In the case of phage P22 which mediates the addition of a glucose residue to the galactose sugar of the *S. enterica* sv. Typhimurium repeat units (Lindberg, 1977), the serotype converting region (*a1*) has not been completely sequenced. The *a1* gene may be a functional homologue of the glucosyl transferase genes (*gtr*) of bacteriophages SfI, SfII, SfV and SfX. A partially sequenced ORF has been identified and named ORFo1 (Section 5.2.2) which exhibits significant homology with both *bgt* and o306 implying that further sequencing of this region may identify a homologue to *bgt*. The organisation of this region of the genome is conserved across the 3 species (Fig. 5.12).

7.10 Bgt and GtrII Proteins

GtrII could not be detected using the L-[^{35}S]-methionine labelled and T7 polymerase/promoter system; this may be due to the number of rare codons used extensively throughout the protein. This compares with the situation observed for the Rfc protein, which despite numerous attempts, has failed to be over-expressed (Daniels *et al.*, 1998). The possibility exists that GtrII is not required in great amounts, due to the specific function it carries out in transfering a glucose residue to RhaIII of the repeat unit. In contrast, Bgt function in pathways other than in LPS biosynthesis and, therefore, would be necessary in greater quantities.

Bgt was predicted to be a membrane bound protein facing the cytoplasm, with two potential membrane spanning domains located at the carboxy terminus. Cellular fractionation was carried out using an *E. coli* strain in which Bgt had been labelled with

L-[^{35}S]-methionine. Autoradiography revealed Bgt to be located in both the whole membrane and cytoplasmic fractions.

In-frame fusions of truncated and complete forms of Bgt to the reporter genes *phoA* and *lacZ* were constructed. Western immunoblotting of fractionated cells confirmed the localisation of Bgt to the cytoplasmic membrane. Of the 3 fusion proteins only the full length fusion-protein was able to complement *bgt* mutant RMA903, implying that the membrane association plays an important role in the function of the protein, ie both membrane spanning domains are essential.

7.11 Addition of modification

The localisation of Bgt to the cytoplasmic membrane raises the issue concerning which stage of the LPS biosynthetic pathway the O-antigen becomes modified. In *S. enterica* sv Typhimurium, O-hapten (ie. long chains of O-antigen not associated with lipid A-core) was found to be glucosylated to the 12_2 form, however semi-rough (*rfc*) mutants of the same strain were found not to contain glucose residues (Nikaido *et al.*, 1971). Further to this, the first 6 repeat units of the O-antigen of strains expressing this O factor do not appear to possess any modification (Helander *et al.*, 1992).

It may be possible that the addition of a glucosyl residue to the repeating units may alter the configuration sufficiently such that they are no longer recognised by the O-antigen polymerase and/or O-antigen ligase. It was postulated that these enzymes function by recognising a specific conformation of the O-unit and any alteration to that conformation, such as the addition of a glucosyl residue, may result in the O-unit no longer being recognised by these enzymes. It was therefore proposed, though not determined, by Wright (1971) and Nikaido *et al.*, (1971) that the terminal repeating unit of the polysaccharide chains in strains expressing factor 34 and 12_2, respectively are not modified.

In contrast to this, *rfc* mutants of *S. enterica* sv. Typhimurium were able to express factor O5 (Slauch *et al.*, 1996). This also appears to be the case in *S. flexneri*, where *rfc* mutants still express O-acetylation of the abequose sugar and are also able to accept further modification when added on plasmid copies. Modification of O-units in *S. flexneri* appears to occur at the level of a single repeat unit.

7.12 Conclusions

The isolation of bacteriophage SfII has provided information regarding the molecular mechanism by which modifications are carried out by the serotype converting bacteriophages of *S. flexneri*. Some indication to the origin of this bacteriophage has been gained by the preliminary sequencing that has been carried out, however, more information would be obtained by complete sequencing of the genome. It may be that the observed virulence of strains of serotype 2a may be due to genes carried on the serotype converting phage, in a manner similar to the recently isolated CTX phage of *V. cholerae* responsible for the cholera toxin (Waldor and Mekalanos, 1996). The similarities observed between bacteriophages SfII and SfV are of interest also in the elucidation of the evolutionary origins of these bacteriophages.

A two step pathway for the addition of the glucosyl residue to the repeating units of *S. flexneri* has been determined. In addition, the site of action of one of the proteins, Bgt, involved in the modification event provided more information regarding the steps involved in LPS biosynthesis in *S. flexneri.*

Finally, the characterisation of the genes responsible for the different serotypes in *S. flexneri* will provide a tool from which to understand and tackle the issue of developing a vaccine to combat this enteric disease. The identification of an additional gene, *bgt*, required for the expression of the glucosylations can be incorporated in the construction of serotype

conversion cassettes (SCCs). SCCs will contain the wildtype *attP* site and integrase genes of the *S. flexneri* bacteriophage SfII and introducing *bgt* along with each of the *gtr* genes. In this way, an isogenic set of *S. flexneri* serotypes will be constructed with the serotype conversion genes integrated into the correct site in the host chromosome where they will be stably expressed. This system eliminates the majority of the phage genome, which to date, remain uncharacterised. This isogenic set may then be used as the basis of vaccine strains which could immunise against all serotypes and thus provide complete immunity to *S. flexneri*.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Adler, B., Sasakawa, C., Tobe, T., Makino, S., Komatsu, K. and Yoshikawa, M. (1989) A dual transcriptional activation system for the 230kb plasmid genes coding for virulence-associated antigens of *Shigella flexneri*. *Mol. Microbiol.* **3:** 627-635.

Allaoui, A., Mounier, J., Prévost, M.C., Sansonetti, P.J. and Parsot, C. (1992) *icsB*: a *Shigella flexneri* virulence gene necessary for the lysis of protrusions during intercellular spread. *Mol. Microbiol.* **6:** 1605-1616.

Allaoui, A., Sansonetti, P.J. and Parsot, C. (1993) MxiD: an outer membrane protein necessary for the secretion of the *Shigella flexneri* Ipa invasins. *Mol. Microbiol.* **7:** 59-68.

Anderson, M.S. and Raetz, C.R.H. (1987) Biosynthesis of lipid A precursors in *Escherichia coli*; a cytoplasmic acyltransferase that converts UDP-N-acetylglucosamine to *udp*-3-*O*-(R-3-hydroxymyristoyl)-N-acetylglucosamine. *J. Biol. Chem.* **262:** 5159-5169.

Andrewes, F.W. and Inman, A.C. (1919) A study of the serological races of the Flexner group of dysentery bacilli. *Gr. Brit. Med. Res. Counc. Spec. Rep. Ser.* **42:** 5-64.

Andrews, G.P. and Maurelli, A.T. (1992) *mxiA* of *Shigella flexneri* 2a, which facilitates export of invasion plasmid antigens, encodes a homologue of the low-calcium-response protein, LcrD, of *Yersinia pestis*. *Infect. Immun.* **60:** 3287-3295.

Andrews, G.P., Hromockyj, A.E., Coker, C. and Maurelli, A.T. (1991) Two novel virulence loci, *mxiA* and *mxiB*, in *Shigella flexneri* 2a facilitate excretion of invasion plasmid antigens. *Infect. Immun.* **59:** 1997-2005

Baker, S., Daniels, C. and Morona, R. (1997) PhoP/Q regulated genes in *Salmonella typhi*: identification of melittin sensitive mutants. *Microb. Pathogen.* **22:** 165-179.

Bastin, D.A., Stevenson, G., Brown, P.K., Haase, A. and Reeves, P.R. (1993) Repeat unit polysaccharides of bacteria: a model for polymerisation resembling that of ribosomes and fatty acid synthetase, with a novel mechanism for determining chain length. *Mol. Microbiol.* **7:** 725-734.

Bastin, D.A., Lord, A. and Verma, N.K. (1997) Cloning and analysis of the glucosyl transferase gene encoding type I antigen in *Shigella flexneri*. *FEMS Microbiol. Lett.* **156:** 133-139,

Batchelor, R.A., Haraguchi, G.E., Hull, R.A. and Hull, S.I. (1991) Regulation by a novel protein of the bimodal distribution of lipopolysaccharide in the outer membrane of *Escherichia coli*. *J. Bacteriol.* **173:** 5699-5704.

Baudry, B., Kaczorek, M. and Sansonetti, P.J. (1988) Nucleotide sequence of the invasion plasmid antigen B and C genes (*ipaB* and *ipaC*) of *Shigella flexneri*. *Microb. Pathogen.* **4:** 345-357.

Belunis, C.J. and Raetz, C.R.H. (1992) Biosynthesis of endotoxins. Purification and catalytic properties of 3-deoxy-D-manno-octulosonic acid transferase from *Escherichia coli*. *J. Biol. Chem.* **267:** 9988-9997.

Bennish, M.L., Harris, J.R., Wojtyniak, B.J. and Struelens, M. (1990) Death in shigellosis: incidence and risk factors in hospitalised patients. *J. Infect. Dis.* **161:** 500-506.

Bernardini, M.L., Fontaine, A. and Sansonetti, P.J. (1990) The two-component regulatory system OmpR-EnvZ controls the virulence of *Shigella flexneri*. *J. Bacteriol.* **172:** 6274-6281.

Bernardini, M.L., Mounier, J., D'Hauteville, H., Coquis-Rondon, M. and Sansonetti, P.J. (1989) Identification of *icsA*, a plasmid locus of *Shigella flexneri* that governs bacterial intra- and intercellular spread through interaction with F-actin. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **86:** 3867-3871.

Bernardini, M.L., Sanna, M.G., Fontaine, A. and Sansonetti, P.J. (1993) OmpC is involved in invasion of epithelial cells by *Shigella flexneri*. *Infect. Immun.* **61:** 3625-3635.

Bhaskaran, K. and Gorrill, R.H. (1957) A study of antigenic variation in *Vibrio cholerae*. *J. Gen. Microbiol.* **16:** 721-729.

Bik, E.M., Bunschoten, A.E., Gouw, R.D. and Mooi, F.R. (1995) Genesis of the novel epidemic *Vibrio cholerae* O139 strain: evidence for horizontal transfer of genes involved in polysaccharide synthesis. *EMBO J.* **14:** 209-216.

Bik, E.M., Bunschoten, A.E., Willems, R.J.L., Chang, A.C.Y. and Mooi, F.R. (1996) Genetic organisation and functional analysis of the *otn* DNA essential for cell-wall polysaccharide synthesis in *Vibrio cholerae* O139. *Mol. Microbiol.* **20:** 799-811.

Black, R.E., Craun, G.F. and Blake, P.A. (1978) Epidemiology of common-source outbreaks of shigellosis in the United States, 1961-1975. *Am. J. Epidemiol.* **108:** 47-52.

Boyd, J.S.K. (1936) A review of the dysentery bacilli of India, with special reference to certain recently described types. *J. Royal Army Med. Corps.* **66:** 1-13.

Boyd, J.S.K. (1938) The antigenic structure of the mannitol-fermenting group of dysentery bacilli. *J. Hygiene* **38:** 477-499.

Boyd, J.S.K. (1940) The laboratory diagnosis of bacillary dysentery. *Trans. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. Hyg.* **33:** 553-584.

Bradley, D.E. (1967) Ultrastructure of bacteriophages and bacteriocins. *Bacteriol. Rev.* **31:** 230-314.

Bray, D. and Robbins, P.W. (1967) Mechanism of ε^{15} conversion studied with bacteriophage mutants. *J. Mol. Biol.* **30:** 457-475.

Brenner, D.J., Fanning, G.R., Miklos, G.V. and Steigerwalt, A.G. (1973) Polynucleotide sequence relatedness among *Shigella* species. *Int. J. Syst. Bacteriol.* **23:** 1-7.

Brown, J.E., Griffin, D.E., Rothman, S.W. and Doctor, B.P. (1982) Purification and biological characterisation of Shiga toxin for *Shigella dysenteriae* 1. *Infect. Immun.* **36:** 996-1005.

Brown, M.C.M., Weston, A., Saunders, J.R. and Humphreys, G.O. (1979) Transformation of *E. coli* C600 by plasmid DNA at different phases of growth. *FEMS Microbiol. Lett.* **5:** 219-222.

Brozek, K.A. and Raetz, C.R.H. (1990) Biosynthesis of lipid A in *Escherichia coli*. Acyl carrier protein-dependent incorporation of laurate and myristate. *J. Biol. Chem.* **265:** 15410-15417.

Bruner, D.W. and Edwards, P.R. (1948) Changes induced in the O antigen of *Salmonella*. *J. Bacteriol.* **55:** 449-

Bundle, D.R., Gidney, M.A.J., Josephson, S. and Wessel, H-P. (1983) Synthesis of *Shigella flexneri* O-antigenic repeating units: conformational probes and aids to monoclonal antibody production. *Am. Chem. Soc.*

Bye, W.A., Allan, C.H. and Trier, J.S. (1984) Structure, distribution and origin of M cells in peeress patches of mouse ileum. *Gastroenterology* **86:** 789-801.

Campbell, A.M. (1992) Chromosomal insertion sites for phages and plasmids. *J. Bacteriol.* **174:** 7495-7499.

Carlin, N.I. and Lindberg, A.A. (1983) Monoclonal antibodies specific for O-antigenic polysaccharides of *Shigella flexneri*: clones binding to II, II:3,4 and 7,8 epitopes. *J. Clin. Microbiol.* **18:** 1183-1189.

Carlin, N.I. and Lindberg, A.A. (1986) Monoclonal antibodies specific for *Shigella flexneri* lipopolysaccharides: clones binding to type I and type III: 6,7,8 antigens, group 6 antigen, and a core epitope. *Infect. Immun.* **53:** 103-109.

Carlin, N.I. and Lindberg, A.A. (1987) Monoclonal antibodies specific for *Shigella flexneri* lipopolysaccharides: clones binding to type IV, V and VI antigens, group 3,4 antigen, and a epitope common to all *Shigella flexneri* and *Shigella dysenteriae* type I strains. *Infect. Immun.* **55:** 1412-1420.

Carlin, N.I., Bundle, D.R. and Lindberg, A.A. (1987) Characterisation of five *Shigella flexneri* variant Y-specific monoclonal antibodies using defined saccharides and glycoconjugate antigens. *J. Immunol.* **138:** 4419-4427.

Carlin, N.I., Gidney, M.A., Lindberg, A.A. and Bundle, D.R. (1986) Characterisation of *Shigella flexneri*- specific murine monoclonal antibodies by chemically defined glycoconjugates. *J. Immunol.* **137:** 2361-2366.

Carlin, N.I., Lindberg, A.A., Bock, K. and Bundle, D.R. (1984) The *Shigella flexneri* O-antigenic polysaccharide chain. Nature of the biological repeating unit. *Eur. J. Biochem.* **139:** 189-194.

Carlin, N.I., Wehler, T. and Lindberg, A.A. (1986) *Shigella flexneri* O-antigen epitopes: chemical and immunochemical analyses reveal that epitopes of type III and group 6 antigens are identical. *Infect. Immun.* **53:** 110-115.

Carstenius, P., Flock, J. I. and Lindberg, A.A. (1990) Nucleotide sequence of *rfaI* and *rfaJ* genes encoding lipopolysaccharide glycosyl transferases from *Salmonella typhimurium*. *Nucl. Acids Res.* **18:** 6128.

Chua, J. (1996) Cloning and expression of *Shigella flexneri* bacteriophage Sf6 tail-fibre endorhamnosidase. B.Sc. (Honours) thesis. University of Adelaide.

Clark, C.A., Beltrame, J. and Manning, P.A. (1991) The *oac* gene encoding a lipopolysaccharide O-antigen acetylase maps adjacent to the integrase-encoding gene on the genome of *Shigella flexneri* bacteriophage Sf6. *Gene* **107:** 43-52.

Clementz, T. and Raetz, C.R. (1991) A gene coding for 3-deoxy-manno-octulosonic-acid transferase in *Escherichia coli*. *J. Biol. Chem.* **266:** 9687-9696.

Cohen, D., Green, M., Block, C., Slepon, R., Ambar, R., Wasserman, S.S. and Levine, M.M. (1991) Reduction of transmission of shigellosis by control of houseflies (Musca domestica) *Lancet* **337:** 993-997.

Coleman, W.G. Jr. (1983) The *rfaD* gene codes for ADP-L-glycero-D-mannoheptose-6-epimerase. *J. Biol. Chem.* **258:** 1985-1990.

Coleman, W.G. Jr. and Leive, L. (1979) Two mutations which affect the barrier function of the *Escherichia coli* K-12 outer membrane. *J. Bacteriol.* **139:** 899-910.

Coleman, J. and Raetz, C.R.H. (1988) First committed step of lipid A biosynthesis in *Escherichia coli*: sequence of the *lpxA* gene. *J. Bacteriol.* **170:** 1269-1274.

Collins, J. and Hohn, B. (1978) Cosmids: a type of plasmid gene cloning vector that is packageable in vitro in bacteriophage. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **75:** 4242-4246.

Collins, L.V. and Hackett, J. (1991) Molecular cloning, characterisation, and nucleotide sequence of the *rfc* gene, which encodes an O-antigen polymerase of *Salmonella typhimurium*. *J. Bacteriol.* **173:** 2521-2529.

Creeger, E.S. and Rothfield, L.I. (1979) Cloning of genes for bacterial glycosyltransferases: I. Selection of hybrid plasmids carrying genes for two glucosyltransferases. *J. Biol. Chem.* **254:** 804-810.

Crowell, D.N., Reznikoff, W.R. and Raetz, C.R.H. (1987) Nucleotide sequence of the *Escherichia coli* gene for lipid A disaccharide synthetase. *J. Bacteriol.* **169:** 5727-5734.

Csonka, L.N. (1989) Physiological and genetic responses of bacteria to osmotic stress. *Microbiol. Rev.* **53:** 124-147.

Cynkin, M.A. and Osborn, M.J. (1968) Enzymatic transfer of O-antigen to lipopolysaccharide. *Fed. Proc. Am. Soc. Exp. Biol.* **27:** 293.

D'Hauteville, H. and Sansonetti, P.J. (1992) Phosphorylation of IcsA by cAMP-dependent protein kinase and its effect on intercellular spread of *Shigella flexneri. Mol. Microbiol.* **6:** 833-841.

D'Hauteville, H., Legelouse, R.D., Nato, F. and Sansonetti, P.J. (1996) Lack of cleavage of IcsA in *Shigella flexneri* causes aberrant movement and allows demonstration of a cross-reactive eukaryotic protein. *Infect. Immun.* **64:** 511-517.

Daniels, C., Vindurampulle, C. and Morona, R. (1998) Overexpression and topology of the *Shigella flexneri* O-antigen polymerase (Rfc/Wzy). Submitted to *Mol. Microbiol.*

Davison, J., Heusterspreute, M., Chevalier, N., Ha-Thi, V. and Brunel, F. (1987) Vectors with restriction site banks V. pJRD215, a wide-host-range cosmid vector with multiple cloning sites. *Gene* **51:** 275-280

de Kievit, T.R., Dasgupta, T., Schweizer, H. and Lam, J.S. (1995) Molecular cloning and characterisation of the *rfc* gene of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* (serotype O5). *Mol. Microbiol.* **16:** 565-574.

Delidow, B.C. (1993) Molecular cloning of polymerase chain reaction fragments with cohesive ends. In *Methods in molecular biology, Vol. 15: PCR protocols: Current methods and applications.* White, B.A. (ed). Humana. Totowa, N.J., USA. Pp 217-228.

De Lorenzo, V., Herrero, M., Jakubzik, U. And Timmis, K.N. (1990) Mini-Tn*5* transposon derivative for insertion mutagenesis, promoter probing, and chromosomal insertion of cloned DNA in gram-negative eubacteria. *J. Bacteriol.* **172:** 6568-6572.

Dorman, C.J., Bhriain, N.N. and Higgins, C.F. (1990) DNA supercoiling and environmental regulation of virulence gene expression in *Shigella flexneri. Nature* **344:** 789-792.

Edwards, P.R. and Ewing, W.H. (1972) Identification of *Enterobacteriaceae*, Burgess, Minneapolis, Minnesota.

Egile, C., d'Hauteville, H., Parsot, C. and Sansonetti, P.J. (1997) SopA, the outer membrane protease responsible for polar localisation of IcsA in *Shigella flexneri. Mol. Microbiol.* **23:** 1063-1073.

Eiklid, K. and Olsnes, S. (1983) Animal toxicity of *Shigella dysenteriae* cytotoxin: evidence that the neurotoxic, enterotoxic and cytotoxic activities are due to one toxin. *J. Immunol.* **130:** 380-384.

Eriksson, U. and Lindberg, A. (1977) Adsorption of phage P22 to *Salmonella typhimurium. J. Gen. Virol.* **34:** 207-221.

Ewing, W.H. and Lindberg, A.A. (1984) Serology of *Shigella*. In *Methods in Microbiology Volume 14*. Bergan, T. (*ed*). Academic Press, London. pp. 113-142.

Flexner, S. (1900) On the etiology of tropical dysentery. *Bulletin of the Johns Hopkins Hospital*. **11:** 231-42.

Formal., S.B., Gemski, P. Jr., Baron, L.S. and LaBrec, E.H. (1970) Genetic transfer of *Shigella flexneri* antigens to *Escherichia coli* K-12. *Infect. Immun.* **1:** 279-287.

Franzon, V.L., Arondel, J. and Sansonetti, P.J. (1990) Contribution of superoxide dismutase and catalase activities to *Shigella flexneri* pathogenesis. *Infect. Immun.* **58:** 529-535.

Freeley, J.C. (1965) Classification of *Vibrio cholerae* (Vibrio comma), including El Tor vibrios, by intrasubspecific characteristics. *J. Bacteriol.* **89:** 665-674.

Fukuda, I., Suzuki, T., Munakata, H., Hayashi, N., Katayama, E., Yoshikawa, M. and Sasakawa, C. (1995) Cleavage of *Shigella* surface protein VirG occurs at a specific site, but the secretion is not essential for intracellular spreading. *J. Bacteriol.* **177:** 1719-1726.

Galanos, C., Lehmann, V., Lüderitz, O., Rietschel, E.T. and Westphal, O. (1984) Endotoxic properties of chemically synthesised lipid A part structures. Comparison of synthetic lipid A precursor and synthetic analogues with biosynthetic lipid A precursor and free lipid A. *Eur. J. Biochem.* **140:** 221-227.

Galanos, C., Lüderitz, O., Rietschel, E.T. and Westphal, O. (1977) Newer aspects of the chemistry and biology of bacterial lipopolysaccharides with special reference to their lipid A component. pp. 239-335. In *International Review of biochemistry: Biochemistry of Lipids II.* T.W. Goodwin (ed). Baltimore: University Park Press.

Galanos, C., Lüderitz, O., Rietschel, E.T., Westphal, O. and Brade, H. (1985) Synthetic and natural *Escherichia coli* free lipid A express identical endotoxic activities. *Eur. J. Biochem.* **148:** 1-5.

Garger, S.J., Griffith, O.M. and Grill, L.K. (1983) Rapid purification of plasmid DNA by a single centrifugation in a two step caesium chloride- ethidium bromide gradient. *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* **117:** 835-842.

Gemski, P. Jr., Koeltzow, D.E. and Formal, S.B. (1975) Phage conversion of *Shigella flexneri* group antigens. *Infect. Immun.* **11:** 685-691.

Gemski, P. Jr., Sheahan, D.G., Washington, O. and Formal, S.B. (1972) Virulence of *Shigella flexneri* hybrids expressing *Escherichia coli* somatic antigens. *Infect. Immun.* **6:** 104-111.

Gemski, P., Koeltzow, D.E. and Formal, S.B. (1975) Phage conversion *of Shigella flexneri* group antigens. *Infect. Immun.* **11:** 685-691.

Giammanco, G. (1968) Conversion lysogénique de caractères antigéniques de *Shigella flexneri* (antigène II de type et complexe 7,8 de groupe) *Ann. de l'Institut Pasteur* **114:** 63-76.

Giammanco, G. and Natoli, D. (1968) Conversions antigéniques chez *Shigella flexneri*. II. effets de la lysogénisation de cultures sérotype 1, sérotype 2, variante X et variante Y par un phage issu d'une culture sérotype 5. *Ann. de l'Institut Pasteur.* **117:** 16-25.

Goldberg, M.B. and Theriot, J.A. (1995) *Shigella flexneri* surface protein IcsA is sufficient to direct actin-based motility. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **92:** 6572-6576.

Goldberg, M.B., Barzu, O., Parsot, C. and Sansonetti, P.J. (1993) Unipolar localisation and ATPase activity of IcsA, a *Shigella flexneri* protein involved in intracellular movement. *J. Bacteriol.* **175:** 2189-2196.

Goldberg, M.B., Theriot, J.A. and Sansonetti, P.J. (1994) Regulation of surface presentation of IcsA, a *Shigella* protein essential to intracellular movement and spread, is growth phase dependent. *Infect. Immun.* **62:** 5664-5668.

Goldman, R.C. and Hunt, F. (1990) Mechanism of O-antigen distribution in lipopolysaccharide. *J. Bacteriol.* **175:** 2189-2196.

Goldman, R.C., Bolling, T.J., Kohlbrenner, W.E., Kim, Y. and Fox, J.L. (1986) Primary structure of CTP:CMP-3-deoxy-D-manno-octulosonate cytidyl-transferase (CMP-KDO synthetase) from *Escherichia coli. J. Biol. Chem.* **261:** 15831-15835.

Grodberg, J. and Dunn, J. (1988) *ompT* encodes the *Escherichia coli* outer membrane proteae that cleaves T7 RNA polymerase during purification. *J. Bacteriol.* **170:** 1245-1253.

Grossman, N., Schmetz, M.A., Foulds, J., Klima, N., Jiminez, V., Leive, L.L. and Joiner, K. (1987) Lipopolysaccharide size and distribution determine serum resistance in *Salmonella montevideo. J. Bacteriol.* **169:** 856-863.

Guarneros, G. and Echols, H. (1970) New mutants of bacteriophage λ with a specific defect in excision from the host chromosome. *J. Mol. Biol.* **9:** 411-415.

Guo, L., Lim, K.B., Gunn, J.S., Bainbridge, B., Darveau, R.P., Hackett, M. and Miller, S.I. (1997) Regulation of lipid A modifications by *Salmonella typhimurium* virulence genes *phoP/phoQ. Science* **276:** 250-253

Hale, T.L. Guerry, P., Seid, R.C. Jr., Kapfer, C., Wingfield, M.E., Reaves, C.B., Baron, L.S. and Formal, S.B. (1984) Expression of lipopolysaccharide O antigen in *Escherichia coli* K-12 hybrids containing plasmid and chromosomal genes from *Shigella dysenteriae* 1. *Infect. Immun.* **46:** 470-475.

Hawkes, R., Niday, E. and Gordon, J. (1982) A dot-immuno binding assay for monoclonal and other antibodies. *Anal. Biochem.* **119:** 142-147.

Helander, I.M., Kilpelainen, I. and Vaara, M. (1994) Increased substitution of phosphate groups in lipopolysaccharides and lipid A of the polymixin-resistant *pmrA* mutants of *Salmonella typhimurium*: a ^{31}P-NMR study. *Mol. Microbiol.* **11:** 481-487.

Helander, I.M., Moran, A.P. and Mäkelä, P.H. (1992) Separation of two lipopolysaccharide populations with different contents of O-antigen factor 12_2 in *Salmonella enterica* serovar Typhimurium. *Mol. Microbiol.* **6:** 2857-2862.

Hellerqvist, C.G. and Lindberg, A.A. (1971) Structural studies of the common-core polysaccharide of the cell wall lipopolysaccharide from *Salmonella typhimurium. Carbohydr. Res.* **16:** 39-48.

Hellerqvist, C.G., Lindberg, B., Svensson, S., Holme, T. and Lindberg, A.A. (1969) Structural studies on the O-specific side-chains of the cell-wall lipopolysaccharide from *Salmonella typhimurium* LT2. *Carbohydr. Res.* **9:** 237-241.

Henkart, P.A. ('996) ICE family proteases: mediators of all apoptotic cell death? *Immunity.* **4:** 195-201

Higgins, D.G. and Sharp, P.M. (1988) CLUSTAL: a package for performing multiple sequence alignment on a microcomputer. *Gene* **73:** 237-244

High, N., Mounier, J., Prévost, M-C. and Sansonetti, P.J. (1992) IpaB of *Shigella flexneri* causes entry into epithelial cells and escape from the phagocytic vacuole. *EMBO J.* **11:** 1991-1999.

Hitchcock, P.J. and Brown, T.M. (1983) Morphological heterogeneity among *Salmonella* lipopolysaccharide chemotypes in silver-stained polyacrylamide gels. *J. Bacteriol.* **54:** 269-277

Hitchock, P.J., Lieve, L., Mäkelä, P.J., Rietschel, E.T., Strittmatten, V. and Morrison, D.C. (1986) Lipopolysaccharide nomenclature - past, present and future. *J. Bacteriol.* **166:** 699-705.

Hofmann,K. and Stoffel, W. (1992) PROFILEGRAPH: an interactive graphical tool for protein sequence analysis. *Comput. Appl. Biosci.* **8:** 331-337

Hohn, B. and Collins, J. (1980) A small cosmid for efficient cloning of large DNA fragments. *Gene* **11:** 291-298.

Hong, M. and Payne, S.M. (1997) Effect of mutations in *Shigella flexneri* chromosomal and plasmid-encoded lipopolysaccharide genes on invasion and serum resistance. *Mol. Microbiol.* **24:** 779-791.

Hromockyj, A.E. and Maurelli, A.T. (1989) Identification of an *Escherichia coli* gene homologous to *virR*, a regulator of *Shigella* virulence. *J. Bacteriol.* **171:** 2879-2881.

Hromockyj, A.E. and Maurelli, A.T. (1989) Identification of *Shigella* invasion genes by inoculation of temperature-regulated *inv*::*lacZ* operon fusions. *Infect. Immun.* **57:** 2963-2970.

Hromockyj, A.E., Tucker, S.C. and Maurelli, A.T. (1992) Temperature regulation of *Shigella* virulence: identification of the repressor gene *virR*, an analogue of *hns*, and partial complementation by tyrosyl transfer RNA ($tRNA_1^{Tyr}$). *Mol. Microbiol.* **6:** 2113-2124.

International Enterobacteriaceae Subcommittee report (1954) Third report on the *Shigella* group. *Intern. Bull. Bacteriol. Nomen. Taxon.* **4:** 1

International Enterobacteriaceae subcommittee report. (1958) Supplement to the third report on the *Shigella* group. *Intern. Bull. Bacteriol. Nomen. Tax.* **8:** 93-95.

Iseki, S. and Hamano, S. (1959) Conversion of type antigen IV in *Shigella flexneri* by bacteriophage. *Jap. Acad. Proc.* **35:** 407-412.

Israel, J.V., Anderson, T.F. and Levine, M.M. (1967) In vitro morphogenesis of phage P22 from heads and base-plate parts. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA.* **57:** 284-291.

Israel, J.V., Rosen, H. and Levine, M.M. (1972) Binding of bacteriophage P22 tail parts to cells. *J. Virol.* **10:** 1152-1158.

Iwashita, S. and Kanegasaki, S. (1973) Smooth specific phage adsorption: Endorhamnosidase activity of tail parts of P22. *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Comm.* **55:** 403-409.

Iwashita, S. and Kanegasaki, S. (1975) Release of O antigen polysaccharide from *Salmonella newington* by phage epsilon 34. *Virology* **68:** 27-34.

Iwashita, S. and Kanegasaki, S. (1976) Enzymic and molecular properties of base-plate parts of bacteriophage P22. *Eur. J. Biochem.* **65:** 87-94.

Jann, K. and Jann, B. (1984) Structure and biosynthesis of O-antigens. pp. 138- 186. In *Handbook of Endotoxins Vol. 1: Chemistry of Endotoxin.* E.T. Rietschel (ed). Amsterdam: Elsevier.

Jansson, P.E., Lindberg, A.A., Lindberg, B. and Wollin, R. (1981) Structural studies on the hexose region of the core lipopolysaccharides from *Enterobacteriaceae. Eur. J. Biochem.* **115:** 571-577.

Jiang, X.M., Neal, B., Santiago, F., Lee, S.J., Romano, L.K. and Reeves, P.R. (1991) Structure and sequence of the *rfb* (O antigen) gene cluster of *Salmonella* serovar *typhimurium* (strain LT2). *Mol. Microbiol.* **5:** 695-713.

Johnston, J.H., Johnston, R.J. and Simmons, D.A.R. (1968) The immunochemistry of *Shigella flexneri* O-antigens. A study of smooth to rough mutations. *Arch. Immun. Ther. Exp.* **16:** 252-259.

Kadis, S., Weinbaum, G. and Ajl, S.J. (1971) (Eds) *Microbial Toxins Vol 5.* Academic Press, New York.

Kadurugamuwa, J.L., Rohde, M., Wehland, J. and Timmis, K.N. (1991) Intercellular spread of *Shigella flexneri* through a monolayer mediated by membranous protrusions and associated with reorganisation of the cytoskeletal protein vinculin. *Infect. Immun.* **59:** 3463-3471.

Kahn, M., Kotler, T., Thomas, C., Figurski, D., Meyer, R., Renault, E. and Helinski, D.R. (1979) Plasmid cloning vechicles derived from plasmids ColE1, RGK and RK2. *Methods Enzymol.* **68:** 268-280.

Kamp, D., Kahmann, R., Zipser, D., Broker, T.R. and Chow, L.T. (1978) Inversion of the G DNA segment of phage Mu controls phage infectivity. *Nature* **271:** 577-580.

Kanegasaki, S. and Wright, A. (1973) Studies on the mechanism of phage adsorption: interaction between phage ε^{15} and its cellular receptor. *Virology* **52:** 160-173.

Kaniga, K., Delor, I. and Cornelius, G.R. (1991) A wide host-range suicide vector for improving reverse genetics in Gram negative bacteria: inactivation of the *bla* gene of *Yersinia enterocolitica. Gene* **109:** 137-141.

Kauffmann, F. (1941) A typhoid variant and a new serological variation in the *Salmonella* group. *J. Bacteriol.* **41:** 127-140.

Keenleyside, W.J. and Whitfield, C. (1995) Lateral transfer of *rfb* genes: a mobilisable ColE1-Type plasmid carries the $rfb_{O:54}$ (O:54 antigen biosynthesis) gene cluster from *Salmonella enterica* serovar Borreze. *J. Bacteriol.* **177:** 5247-5253.

Keenleyside, W.J. and Whitfield, C. (1996) A novel pathway for O-polysaccharide biosynthesis in *Salmonella enterica* serovar Borreze. *J. Biol. Chem.* **271:** 28581-28592.

Kenne, L., Lindberg, B., Petersson, K., and Romanowska, E. (1977) Basic structure of the oligosaccharide repeating-unit of the *Shigella flexneri* O-antigens. *Carbohydr. Res.* **56:** 363-370.

Kenne, L., Lindberg, B., Petersson, K., Katzenellenbogen, E., and Romanowska, E. (1978) Structural studies of *Shigella flexneri* O-antigens. *Eur. J. Biochem.* **91:** 279-284.

Kessler, A.C., Haase, A. and Reeves, P.R. (1993) Molecular analysis of the 3,6-dideoxyhexose pathway genes of *Yersinia pseudotuberculosis* serogroup IIA. *J. Bacteriol.* **175:** 1412-1422.

Kétyi, I., Verténvi, A. and Financsek, I. (1971) Lysogenic conversion in the *Shigella flexneri* group. *Acta Microbiol. Acad. Sci. Hung.* **18:** 47-54.

Keusch, G.T., Grady, G.F., Mata, L.J. and McIver, J. (1972) The pathogenesis of *Shigella* diarrhoea. I. Enterotoxin production by *Shigella dysenteriae* 1. *J. Clin. Invest.* **51:** 1212-1218.

King, J., Lenk, E.V. and Botstein, D. (1973) Mechanism of head assembly and DNA encapsulation in *Salmonella* phage P22. II. Morphogenetic pathway. *J. Mol. Biol.* **80:** 697-731.

Kishiko, N. and Nikaido, H. (1971) Glucosylation of lipopolysaccharide in *Salmonella*: biosynthesis of O antigen factor 12_2 II. Structure of the lipid intermediate. *J. Biol. Chem.* **246:** 3912-3919.

Kita, H. and Nikaido, H. (1973) Structure of cell wall lipopolysaccharide from *Salmonella typhimurium*. IV. Anomeric configuration of L-rhamnose residues and its taxonomic implications. *J. Bacteriol.* **117:** 525-543.

Klee, S.R., Tzschaschel, B.D., Timmis, K.N. and Guzman, C.A. (1997) Influence of different *rol* gene products on the chain length of *Shigella dysenteriae* Type 1 lipopolysaccharide O antigen expressed by *Shigella flexneri* carrier strains. *J. Bacteriol.* **179:** 2421-2425.

Klena, J.D. and Schnaitman, C.A. (1993) Function of the *rfb* gene cluster and the *rfe* gene in the synthesis of O antigen by *Shigella dysenteriae* 1. *Mol. Microbiol.* **9:** 393-402.

Klena, J.D., Pradel, E. and Schnaitman, C.A. (1992) Comparison of lipopolysaccharide biosynthesis genes *rfaK, rfaL, rfaY and rfaZ* of *Escherichia coli* K-12 and *Salmonella typhimurium. J. Bacteriol.* **171:** 3629-3633.

Konowalchuk, J., Dickie, N., Stavric, S. and Spiers, J.I. (978) Comparative studies of five heat-labile toxic products of *Escherichia coli. Infect. Immun.* **22:** 644-648.

Kopecko, D.J., Washington, O. and Formal, S.B. (1980) Genetic and physical evidence for plasmid control of *Shigella sonnei* form I cell surface antigen. *Infect. Immun.* **29:** 207-214.

Kotani, S., Takada, H., Tsujimoto, M., Ogawa, T. and Harada, K. (1984) Immunobiologically active lipid A analogues synthesised according to a revised structural model of natural lipid A. *Infect. Immun.* **45:** 293-296.

Kuhn, H.M., Meier-Dieter, U. and Mayer, H. (1988) ECA, the enterobacterial common antigen. *FEMS Microbiol. Rev.* **4:** 195-222

Kuo, T.-T. and Stocker, B.A.D. (1972) Mapping of *rfa* genes in *Salmonella typhimurium* by ES18 and P22 transduction and conjugation. *J. Bacteriol.* **112:** 48-57.

LaBrec, E.H., Schneider, H., Magnani, T.J. and Formal, S.B. (1964) Epithelial cell penetration as an essential step in the pathogenesis of bacillary dysentery. *J. Bacteriol.* **88:** 1503-1518.

Leong, J., Nunes-Duby, S., Lesser, C.F., Youderian, P., Sussking, M.M. and Landy, A. (1985) The ϕ80 and P22 attachment sites: primary structure and interaction with *E. coli* integration host factor. *J. Biol. Chem.* **260:** 4468-4477.

Lett, M-C., Sasakawa, C., Okada, N., Sakai, T., Makino, S., Yamada, M., Komatsu, K. and Yoshikawa, M. (1989) *virG*, a plasmid-coded virulence gene of *Shigella flexneri*: identification of the VirG protein and determination of the complete coding sequence. *J. Bacteriol.* **171:** 353-359.

Levine, O.S. and Levine, M.M. (1991) Houseflies (*Musca domestica*) as mechanical vectors of shigellosis. *Rev. Infect. Dis.* **13:** 688-696.

Levine, M.M. and Edelman, R. (1984) Enteropathogenic *Escherichia coli* of classic serotypes associated with infant diarrhea: epidemiology and pathogenesis. *Epidemiol. Rev.* **6:** 31-51

Lew, H.C., Mäkelä, P.H., Kuhn, H., Mayer, H. and Nikaido, H. (1986) Biosynthesis of enterobacterial common antigen requires dTDP glucose pyrophosphorylase determined by a *Salmonella typhimurium rfb* gene and a *Salmonella montevideo rfe* gene. *J. Bacteriol.* **168:** 715-721.

Lindberg, A.A. (1977) In: *Surface Carbohydrates of the Prokaryotic cell*, Sutherland, I.W. (ed), Academic Press, N.Y. and London. pp. 289-356.

Lindberg, A.A. and Hellerqvist, C.G. (1980) Rough mutants of *Salmonella typhimurium*: immunochemical and structural analysis of lipopolysaccharides from *rfaH* mutants. *J. Gen. Microbiol.* **116:** 25-32.

Lindberg, A.A., Karnell, A. and Weintraub, A. (1991) The lipopolysaccharide of *Shigella* bacteria as a virulence factor. *Rev. Infect. Dis.* **13:** S279-284.

Lindberg, A.A., Wollin, R., Gemski, P. and Wohlhieter, J.A. (1978) Interaction between bacteriophage Sf6 and *Shigella flexneri. J. Virol.* **27:** 38-44.

Lindberg, B., Lönngren, J., Romanowska, E. and Ruden, U. (1972) Location of O-acetyl groups in *Shigella flexneri* types 3c and 4b lipopolysaccharides. *Acta. Chem. Scand.* **26:** 3808-3810.

Lindberg, B., Lonngren, J., Ruden, J. and Simmons, D.A.R. (1973) A reinvestigation of *Shigella flexneri* O-antigens by methylation analysis. *Eur. J. Biochem.* **32:** 15-18.

Liu, D., Cole, R.A. and Reeves, P.R. (1996) An O-antigen processing function for Wzx (RfbX): a promising candidate for O-unit flippase. *J. Bacteriol.* **178:** 2102-2107.

Liu, D., Haase, A.M., Kindqvist, L., Lindberg, A.A. and Reeves, P.R. (1993) The glycosyl transferases of O antigen biosynthesis in *S. enterica*: identification and characterisation of transferase genes of groups B, C2 and E1. *J. Gen. Microbiol.* **175:** 3408-3413.

Losick, R. and Robbins, P.W. (1967) Mechanism of ε^{15} conversion studied with a bacterial mutant. *J. Mol. Biol.* **30:** 445-455.

Lüderitz, O., Westphal, O., Staub, A.A. and Nikaido, H. (1971) Isolation and chemical and immunological characterisation of bacterial lipopolysaccharides, p145-233. In *Microbial toxins, vol. 4. Bacterial endotoxins*, G. Weinbaum, S. Kadis, and S. Ajl (ed).. Academic Press, Inc., New York.

Lugowski, C., Romanowska, E., Kenne, L. and Lindberg, B. (1983) Identification of a trisaccharide repeating-unit in the enterobacterial common antigen. *Carbohydr. Res.* **118:** 173-181.

Lugtenberg, B., Meijers, J., Peters, R., van der Hoek, P. and van Alphen, L. (1975) Electrophoretic resolution of the major outer membrane protein of *Escherichia coli* K-12 into four bands. *FEBS Lett.* **58:** 254-258.

Lugtenberg, B., Peters, R., Bernheimer, M. and Berendson, W. (1976) Influence of cultural conditions and mutations on the composition of the outer membrane proteins of *Escherichia coli. Mol. Gen. Genet.* **147:** 251-262.

Lukomski, S., Hull, R.A. and Hull, S.I. (1996) Identification of the O antigen polymerase (*rfc*) gene in *Escherichia coli* O4 by insertional mutagenesis using a nonpolar chloramphenicol resistance cassette. *J. Bacteriol.* **178:** 240-247.

Lwoff, A. and Gutmann, A. (1950) Recherches sur un *Bacillus megatherium* lysogene. *Ann. Inst. Pasteur.* **78:** 711-

MacLachlan, P.R., Kadam, S.K. and Sanderson, K.E. (1991) Cloning, characterisation and DNA sequence of the *rfaLK* region for lipopolysaccharide synthesis in *Salmonella typhimurium. J. Bacteriol.* **173:** 7151-7163.

Macpherson, D.F., Manning, P.A. and Morona, R. (1994) Characterisation of the dTDP-rhamnose biosynthetic genes encoded in the *rfb* locus *of Shigella flexneri. Mol. Microbiol.* **11:** 281-292.

Macpherson, D.F., Manning, P.A. and Morona, R. (1995) Genetic analysis of the *rfbX* gene of *Shigella flexneri. Gene* **155:** 9-17.

Macpherson, D.F., Morona, R., Beger, D.W., Cheah, K.-C. and Manning, P.A. (1991) Genetic analysis of the *rfb* region of *Shigella flexneri* encoding the Y serotype O-antigen specificity. *Mol. Microbiol.* **5:** 1491-1499.

Mahdi, A.A., Sharples, G.J., Mandal, T.N. and Lloyd, R.G. (1996) Holliday junction resolvases encoded by homologous *rusA* genes in *Escherichia coli* K-12 and phage 82. *J. Mol. Biol.* **257:** 561-573.

Mäkelä, P.H, Jahkola, M. and Lüderitz, O. (1970) A new gene cluster *rfe* concerned with the biosynthesis of *Salmonella* lipopolysaccharide. *J. Gen. Microbiol.* **60:** 91-106.

Mäkelä, P.H. (1971) Glucosylation of lipopolysaccharide in *Salmonella*: mutants negative for O antigen factor 12_2. *J. Bacteriol.* **116:** 847-856.

Mäkelä, P.H. (1973) Glucosylation of lipopolysaccharide in *Salmonella*: mutants negative for O antigen factor 12_2. *J. Bacteriol.* **116:** 847-856.

Mäkelä, P.H. and Mäkelä, O. (1966) *Salmonella* antigen 12_2: genetics of form variation. *Ann. Med. Exp. Biol. Fenn.* **44:** 310-317.

Mäkelä, P.H. and Mayer, H. (1974) Participation of lipopolysaccharide genes in the determination of the enterobacterial common antigen: analysis in *Salmonella* groups B and C. *J. Bacteriol.* **119:** 765-770.

Mäkelä, P.H. and Mayer, H. (1976) Enterobacterial common antigen. *Bacteriol. Rev.* **40:** 591-632.

Mäkelä, P.H. and Stocker, B.A.D. (1984) Genetics of lipopolysaccharide. In *Handbook of Endotoxin, Vol. 1. Chemistry of endotoxin.* E.T. Rietschel (ed.), Amsterdam: Elsevier. pp. 59-137.

Mäkelä, P.H., Mayer, H., Whang, Y. and Nester, E. (1974) Participation of lipopolysaccharide genes in the determination of the enterobacterial common antigen: analysis of R mutants of *Salmonella minnesota. J. Bacteriol.* **119:** 760-764.

Mäkelä, P.H., Savras, M., Calcagno, S. and Lounatmaa, K. (1978) Isolation and genetic characterisation of polymyxin-resistant mutants of *Salmonella. FEMS Microbiol. Lett.* **3:** 323-326.

Mäkelä, P.H., Schmidt, G., Mayer, H., Nikaido, H., Whange, Y. and Nester, E. (1976) Enterobacterial common antigen in *rfb* deletion mutants of *Salmonella typhimurium. J. Bacteriol.* **127:** 1141-1149.

Makino, S., Sasakawa, C., Kamata, K., Kurata, T. and Yoshikawa, M. (1986) A genetic determinant required for continuous reinfection of adjacent cells o large plasmid in *S. flexneri* 2a. *Cell* **46:** 551-555.

Maniatis, T., Fritsch, E.F. and Sambrook, J. (1982) *Molecular cloning: a laboratory manual.* Cold Spring Harbour Laboratories. Cold Spring Harbour, N.Y.

Manning, P.A., Heuzenroeder, M.W., Yeadon, J., Leavesley, D.I., Reeves, P.R. and Rowley, D. (1986) Molecular cloning and expression in *Escherichia coli* K-12 of the O-antigens of the Ogawa and Inaba serotypes of the lipopolysaccharide of *Vibrio cholerae* O1 and their potential for vaccine development. *Infect. Immun.* **53:** 272-277.

Manoil, C. (1991) Analysis of membrane protein topology using alkaline phosphatase and β-galactosidase gene fusions. *Methods in Cell Biol.* **35:** 61-75.

Manoil, C. and Beckwith, J. (1985) Tn*phoA*: a transposon probe for protein export signals. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA.* **82:** 8129-8133.

Marino, P.A. McGrath, B.C. and Osborn, M.J. (1991) Energy dependence of O-antigen synthesis in *Salmonella typhimurium. J. Bacteriol.* **173:** 3128-3133.

Matsui, S. (1958) Antigenic changes in *Shigella flexneri* group by bacteriophage. *Japan. J. Microbiol.* **2:** 153-158.

Maurelli, A.T. (1990) Regulation of virulence genes in *Shigella*. *Mol. Biol. Med.* **6:** 425-432.

Maurelli, A.T. and Sansonetti, P.J. (1988a) Identification of a chromosomal gene controlling temperature-regulated expression of *Shigella* virulence. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **85:** 2820-2824.

Maurelli, A.T. and Sansonetti, P.J. (1988b) Genetic determinants of *Shigella* pathogenicity. *Ann. Rev. Microbiol.* **42:** 127-150.

Maurelli, A.T., Baudry, B., D'Hauteville, H., Hale, T.L. and Sansonetti, P.J. (1985) Cloning of plasmid DNA sequences involved in invasion of HeLa cells by *Shigella flexneri*. *Infect. Immun.* **49:** 164-171.

Maurelli, A.T., Blackmon, B. and Curtiss III, R. (1984a) Loss of pigmentation in *Shigella flexneri* 2a is correlated with loss of virulence and virulence- associated plasmid. *Infect. Immun.* **43:** 397-401.

Maurelli, A.T., Blackmon, B. and Curtiss III, R. (1984b) Temperature- dependent expression of virulence genes in *Shigella* species. *Infect. Immun.* **43:** 195-201.

Mavris, M. (1991) Studies on *rfc* in *Shigella flexneri*. B.Sc.(Honours) thesis. University of Adelaide.

Mayer, H. and Schmidt, G. (1979) Chemistry and biology of the enterobacterial common antigen. *J. Bacteriol.* **163:** 756-762.

McGrath, B.C. and Osborn, M.J. (1991) Localisation of the terminal steps of O-antigen synthesis in *Salmonella typhimurium*. *J. Bacteriol.* **173:** 649-654.

Ménard, R., Prévost, M-C., Gounon, P., Sansonetti, P.J. and Dehio, C. (1996) The secreted Ipa complex of *Shigella flexneri* promotes entry into mammalian cells. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **93:** 1254-1258.

Ménard, R., Sansonetti, P., Parsot, C. and Vasselon, T. (1994a) Extracellular association and cytoplasmic partitioning of the IpaB and IpaC invasins of *S. flexneri* .*Cell* **79:** 515-525

Ménard, R., Sansonetti, P.J. and Parsot, C. (1993) Nonpolar mutagenesis of the *ipa* genes defines IpaB, IpaC and IpaD as effectors of *Shigella flexneri* entry into epithelial cells. *J. Bacteriol.* **175:** 5899-5906.

Ménard, R., Sansonetti, P.J. and Parsot, C. (1994b) The secretion of the *Shigella flexneri* Ipa invasins is activated by epithelial cells and controlled by IpaB and IpaD. *EMBO J.* **13:** 5293-5302

Miller, J. (1972) Experiments in Molecular Genetics. Cold Spring Harbour Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, N.Y.

Mills, J.A., Buysse, J.M. and Oaks, E.V. (1988) *Shigella flexneri* invasion plasmid antigens B and C: epitope location and characterisation by monoclonal antibodies. *Infect. Immun.* **49:** 164-171.

Mills, S.D. and Timmis, K.N. (1988) Genetics of O antigen polysaccharide biosynthesis in *Shigella* and vaccine development. In *Bacteria, Complement and the Phagocytic Cell. Vol. H24.* F.C. Cabello and C. Pruzzo (eds). Heidelberg: Springer-Verlag pp. 21-39.

Morona, R., Mavris, M., Fallarino, A. and Manning, P.A. (1994) Characterization of the *rfc* region of *Shigella flexneri. J. Bacteriol.* **176:** 733-747.

Morona, R., Macpherson, D.F., Van Den Bosch, L., Carlin, N.I. and Manning, P.A. (1995) Lipopolysaccharide with an altered O-antigen produced in *Escherichia coli* K-12 harbouring mutated, cloned *Shigella flexneri rfb* genes. Mol. Microbiol. **18:** 209-223.

Morris, J.G. (1994) pp95-102. In *Vibrio cholerae and Cholera - Molecular to Global Perspectives*. Wachsmuth, I.K., Blake, P.A. and Olsvik, O. (eds) ASM Press, Washington, DC,.

Mounier, J., Bahrani, F.K. and Sansonetti, P.J. (1997) Secretion of *Shigella flexneri* Ipa invasins on contact with epithelial cells and subsequent entry of the bacterium into cells are growth stage dependent. *Infect. Immun.* **65:** 774-782.

Mounier, J., Vasselon, T., Hellio, R., Lesourd, M. and Sansonetti, P.J. (1992) *Shigella flexneri* enters human colonic Caco-2 epithelial cells through the basolateral pole. *Infect. Immun.* **60:** 237-248.

Mühlradt, P., Risse, H.J., Lüderitz, O. and Westphal, O. (1968) Biochemical studies on lipopolysaccharides of *Salmonella* R mutants. 5. Evidence for a phophorylating enzyme in lipopolysaccharide biosynthesis. *Eur. J. Biochem.* **11:** 241-145.

Mulford, C.A. and Osborn, M.J. (1983) An intermediate step in translocation of lipopolysaccharide to the outer membrane of *Salmonella typhimurium. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **80:** 1159-1163.

Naide, Y., Nikaido, H., Mäkelä, P.H., Wilkinson, R.G. and Stocker, B.A.D. (1965) Semirough strains of *Salmonella. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **53:** 147-153.

Nakata, N., Sasakawa, C., Okada, N., Tobe, T., Fukuda, I., Suzuki, T., Komatsu, K. and Yoshikawa, M. (1992) Identification and characterisation of *virK*, a virulence-associated large plasmid gene essential for intercellular spreading of *Shigella flexneri. Mol. Microbiol.* **6:** 2387-2395.

Nakata, N., Tobe, T., Fukuda, I., Suzuki, T., Komatsu, K., Yoshikawa, M. and Sasakawa, C. (1993) The absence of a surface protease, OmpT, determines the intercellular spreading ability of *Shigella*: the relationship between the *ompT* and *kcpA* loci. *Mol. Microbiol.* **9:** 459-468.

Nassif, X., Mazert, M.C., Mounier, J. and Sansonetti, P.J. (1987) Evaluation with an *iuc*::Tn*10* mutant of the role of aerobactin production in the virulence of *Shigella flexneri*. *Infect. Immun.* **55:** 1963-1969.

Nicholson, D.W., Ali, A., Thornberry, N.A., Vaillancourt, J.P., Ding, C.K., Gallant, M., Gareau, Y., Griffin, P.R., Labelle, M. and Lazebnik, Y.A. (1995) Identification and inhibition of the ICE/CED-3 protease necessary for mammalian apoptosis. *Nature.* **376:** 37-43

Nikaido, H. (1973) Biosynthesis and assembly of lipopolysaccharide and the outer membrane layer of Gram-negative cell wall. In: *Bacterial Membranes and Walls. Vol. 1.* L. Leive (ed) New York: Marcel Dekker pp. 131-208.

Nikaido, H., Levinthal, M., Nikaido, K. and Nakane, K. (1967) Extended deletions in the histidine-rough-B region of the *Salmonella* chromosome. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **57:** 1825-1832.

Nikaido, H., Nikaido, K. and Nakae, T. (1971) Glucosylation of lipopolysaccharide in *Salmonella*: biosynthesis of O antigen factor 12_2 I: Over-all reaction. *J. Biol. Chem.* **246:** 3902-3911.

Nishijima, M. and Raetz, C.R.H. (1981a) Characterisation of two membrane-associated glycolipids from an *E. coli* mutant deficient in phosphatidylglycerol. *J. Biol. Chem.* **256:** 10690-10696l

Nishijima, M., Bulawa, C.E. and Raetz, C.R.H. (1981b) Two interacting mutations causing temperature-sensitive phophatidylglycerol synthesis in *Escherichia coli* membranes. *J. Bacteriol.* **145:** 113-121.

Nobechi, K. and Nakano, E. (1967) Studies on shifting of the serotypes of cholerae Vibrios. The first report: Studies in vitro. pp. 119-121. In *Symposium on Cholera*, Palo, Calif. National Institutes of Health, Bethesda.

Noriega, F.R., Liao, F.M., Formal, S.B., Fasano, A. and Levine, M.M. (1995) Prevalence of *Shigella* enterotoxin 1 among *Shigella* clinical isolates of diverse serotypes. *J. Infect. Dis.* **172:**1408-1410.

Oaks, E.V., Hale, T.L. and Formal, S.B. (1986) Serum immune response to *Shigella* protein antigens in Rhesus monkeys and humans infected with *Shigella* spp. *Infect. Immun.* **53:** 57-63.

Oka, A., Sugisaki, H. and Takanami, M. (1981) Nucleotide sequence of the kanamycin resistance transposon Tn*903*. *J. Mol. Biol.* **147:** 217-226.

Okada, N., Sasakawa, C., Tobe, T., Talukder, K.A., Komatsu, K. and Yoshikawa, M. (1991) Construction of a physical map of the chromosome of *Shigella flexneri* 2a and the direct assignment of nine virulence-associated loci identified by Tn*5* insertions. *Mol. Microbiol.* **5:** 2171-2180.

Okada, N., Sasakawa, C., Tobe, T., Yamada, M., Nagai, S., Talukder, K.A., Komatsu, K., Kanegasaki, S. and Yoshikawa, M. (1991) Virulence- associated chromosomal loci of *Shigella flexneri* by random Tn*5* insertion mutagenesis. *Mol. Microbiol.* **5:** 187-195.

Okamura, N., Nagai, T., Nakaya, R., Kondo, S., Murakami, M. and Hisatsune, K. (1983) HeLa cell invasiveness and O antigen of *Shigella flexneri* as separate and prerequisite attributes of virulence to evoke keratoconjunctivitis in guinea pigs. *Infect. Immun.* **39:** 505-513.

Orlean, P., Albright, C. and Robbins, P.W. (1988) Cloning and sequencing of the yeast gene for dolichol phosphate mannose synthase, an essential protein. *J. Biol. Chem.* **263:** 17499-17507.

Osborn, M.J., Gander, J.E., Parisi, E and Carson, J. (1972) Mechanism of assembly of the outer membrane of *Salmonella typhi. J. Biol. Chem.* **247:** 3962-3971.

Pal, T., Newland, J.W., Tall, B.D., Formal, S.B. and Hale, T.L. (1989) Intracellular spread of *Shigella flexneri* associated with the *kcpA* locus and a 140-kilodalton protein. *Infect. Immun.* **57:** 477-486.

Palva, E.T. and Mäkelä, P.H. (1980) Lipopolysaccharide heterogeneity in *Salmonella typhimurium* analysed by sodium dodecyl sulphate/ polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis. *Eur. J. Biochem.* **107:** 137-143.

Parker, C.T., Kloser, A.W., Schnaitman, C.A., Stein, M.A., Gottesman, S. and Gibson, B.W. (1992b) Role of the *rfaG* and *rfaP* genes in determination of the lipopolysaccharide structure and cell surface properties of *Escherichia coli* K-12. *J. Bacteriol.* **174:** 2525-2538.

Parker, C.T., Pradel, E. and Schnaitman, C.A. (1992a) Identification and sequence of the lipopolysaccharide core biosynthetic genes *rfaQ*, *rfaP* and *rfaG* of *Escherichia coli* K-12 . *J. Bacteriol.* **174:** 930-934.

Pegues, J.C., Chen, L., Gordon, A.W., Ding, L. and Coleman, W.G. (1990) Cloning, expression and characterisation of the *Escherichia coli* K-12 *rfaD* gene. *J. Bacteriol.* **172:** 4652-4660.

Perdomo. O.J., Cavaillon, J.M., Huerre, M., Ohayon, H., Gounon, P. and Sansonetti, P.J. (1994) Acute inflammation causes epithelial invasion and mucosal destruction in experimental shigellosis. *J. Exp. Med.* **180:** 1307-19

Petrovskaya, V.G. and Licheva, T.A. (1982) A provisional chromosome map of *Shigella* and the regions related to pathogenicity. *Acta Microbiol. Acad. Sci. Hung.* **29:** 41-53.

Petrovskaya, V.G. and Nevskaya, N.A. (1975) Effect of some prophages on genetic behaviour of *Shigella flexneri. Genetika* **11:** 61-66.

Porter, M.E. and Dorman, C.J. (1997) Positive regulation of *Shigella flexneri* virulence genes by integration host factor. *J. Bacteriol.* **179:** 6537-6550.

Poteete, A.R. (1988) Bacteriophage P22. In R. Calender (ed). pp. 647-682. *The Bacteriophages*. New York, Plenum Press.

Pradel, E. and Schnaitman, C.A. (1991) Effect of *rfaH* (*sfrB*) and termperature on expression of *rfa* genes of *Escherichia coli* K-12. *J. Bacteriol.* **173:** 6428-6431.

Pradel, E., Parker, C.T. and Schnaitmann, C.A. (1992) Structures of the *rfaB, rfaI, rfaJ, rfaS* genes of *Escherichia coli* K-12 and their roles in assembly of the lipopolysaccharide core. *J. Bacteriol.* **174:** 4736-4745.

Preuss, D., Mulholland, J., Kaiser, C.A., Orlean, P., Albright, C., Rose, M.D., Robbins, P.W. and Botstein, D. (1991) Structure of the yeast endoplasmic reticulum: localisation of ER proteins using immunofluorescence and immunoelectron microscopy. *Yeast* **7:** 891-911.

Prévost, M.C., Lesourd, M., Arpin, M., Vernel, F., Mounier, J., Hellio, R. and Sansonetti, P.J. (1992) Unipolar reorganisation of F-actin layer at bacterial division and bundling of actin filaments by plastin correlate with movement of *Shigella flexneri* within HeLa cells. *Infect. Immun.* **60:** 4088-4099.

Pupo, G.M., Karaolis, D.K., Lan, R. and Reeves, P.R. (1997) Evolutionary relationships among pathogenic and nonpathogenic *Escherichia coli* strains inferred from multilocus enzyme electrophoresis and mdh sequence studies. *Infect. Immun.* **65:** 2685-2692

Raetz, C.R.H. (1987) Biosynthesis and pharmacologic properties of *Escherichia coli* Lipid A,. p229-245 In M. Inouye (ed.). *Bacterial outer membranes as model systems*. Wiley-Interscience, New York.

Raetz, C.R.H. (1990) Biochemistry of endotoxins. *Ann. Rev. Biochem.* **59:** 129-170.

Raetz, C.R.H. (1993) Bacterial endotoxins: extraordinary lipids that activate Eukaryotic signal transduction. *J. Bacteriol.* **175:** 5745-5753.

Rajakumar, K., Jost, B.H., Sasakawa, C., Okada, N., Yoshikawa, M. and Adler, B. (1994) Nucleotide sequence of the rhamnose biosynthetic operon of *Shigella flexneri* 2a and role of lipopolysaccharide in virulence. *J. Bacteriol.* **176:** 2362-2373.

Ramia, S., Nester, E. and Brenner, D.J. (1982) Production of enterobacterial common antigen as an aid to classification of newly identified species of the families *Enterobacteriaceae* and *Vibrionaceae*. *Int. J. Syst. Bacteriol.* **32:** 395-398.

Ratcliff, S.W., Luh, J., Ganeson, A.T., Behrens, B., Thompson, R., Montenegro, M., Morelli, G. and Trautner, T.A. (1979) The genome of *Bacillus subtilis* phage SPP1; the arrangement of restriction endonuclease generated fragments. *Molec. Gen. Genet.* **168:** 165-172.

Ray, B.L., Painter, G. and Raetz, C.R.H. (1984) The biosynthesis of gram-negative endotoxin; formation of lipid A disaccharides from monosaccharide precursors in extracts of *Escherichia coli*. *J. Biol. Chem.* **259:** 4852-4859.

Reeves, P. (1993) Evolution of *Salmonella* O antigen variation by interspecific gene transfer on a large scale. *TIG* **9:** 17-22.

Reeves, P. (1994) Biosynthesis and assembly of lipopolysaccharide pp. 281-317.In *Bacterial Cell Wall.* Ghuysen, J.M. and Hakenbeck, R. (*eds*), Elsevier Science B.V.

Reeves, P.R., Hobbs, M., Valvano, M.A., Skurnik, M., Whitfield, C., Coplin, D., Kido, N., Klena, J., Maskell, D., Raetz, C.R.H. and Rick, P.D. (1996) Bacterial polysaccharide synthesis and gene nomenclature. *T.I.M.* **4:** 495-503.

Rick, P.D. (1987) Lipopolysaccharide biosynthesis, p 648-662. *In* F.C. Neidhardt, J.L. Ingraham, K.B. Low, B. Magasanik, M. Schaechter, and H.E. Umbarger (ed.), *Escherichia coli* and *Salmonella typhimurium*: cellular and molecular biology, vol. 1. American Society for Microbiology, Washington, D.C.

Rick, P.D. and Young, D.A. (1982) Isolation and characterisation of a temperature-sensitive lethal mutant of *Salmonella typhimurium* that is conditionally defective in 3-deoxy-D-manno-octulosonate-8-phosphate synthesis. *J. Bacteriol.* **150:** 447-455.

Rietschel, E.T., Wollenweber, H.-W., Siorczyk, U. and Lüderitz, O. (1983) Analysis of the primary structure of lipid A. pp.195-219. In *Bacterial lipopolysaccharides. Structure, synthesis and biological activities.* L. Anderson, F.M. Unger (eds). Washington DC: American Chemical Society.

Robbins, P.W. and Uchida, T. (1965) Chemical and macromolecular structure of O-antigens from *Salmonella anatum* strains carrying mutants of bacteriophage ε^{15}. *J. Biol. Chem.* **240:** 375-383.

Robbins, P.W., Keller, J.M., Wright, A. and Bernstein, R. (1965) Enzymatic and kinetic studies on the mechanism of O-antigen conversion by bacteriohage ε^{15}. *J. Biol. Chem.* **240:** 384-389.

Rohde, J.E. (1984) Selective primary health care: strategies for control of disease in the developing world. XV. Acute diarrhoea. *Rev. Infect. Dis.* **6:** 840-854.

Roland, K.L., Martin, L.E., Esther, C.R. and Spitznagel, J.K. (1993) Spontaneous *pmrA* mutants of *Salmonella typhimurium* LT2 define a new two-component regulatory system with a possible role in virulence. *J. Bacteriol.* **175:** 4154-4164.

Roncero, C. and Casabadan, M.J. (1992) Genetic analysis of the genes involved in synthesis of the lipopolysaccharide core in *Escherichia coli* K-12: Three operons in the *rfa* locus. *J. Bacteriol.* **174:** 3250-3260.

Ruden, U. and Mäkelä, P.H. (1974) O-acetylation and glucosylation of lipopolysaccharide in hybrids between *Salmonella* groups B and C2. *Eur. J. Biochem.* **48:** 11-20.

Sakazaki, R. and Tamura, K. (1971) Somatic antigen variation in *Vibrio cholerae*. *Jpn. J.. Med. Sci. Biol.* **24:** 93-100.

Sanderson, K.E. and Saeed, Y.A (1972) P22-mediated transduction analysis of the rough A (*rfa*) region of the chromosome of *Salmonella typhimurium*. *J. Bacteriol.* **112:** 58-63.

Sanderson, K.E., Van Wyngaarden, J., Lüderitz, O. and Stocker, B.A.D. (1974) Rough mutants of *Salmonella typhimurium* with defects in the heptose region of the lipopolysaccharide core. *Can. J. Microbiol.* **20:** 1127-1134.

Sandlin, R.C., Goldberg, M.B. and Maurelli, A.T. (1996) Effect of O side- chain length and composition on the virulence of *Shigella flexneri* 2a. *Mol. Microbiol.* **22:** 63-73.

Sandlin, R.C., Lampel, K.A., Keasler, S.P., Goldberg, M.B., Stolzer, A.L. and Maurelli, A.T. (1995) Avirulence of rough mutants of *Shigella flexneri*: requirement of O antigen for correct unipolar localisation of IcsA in the bacterial outer membrane. *Infect. Immun.* **63:** 229-237.

Sansonetti, P.J., Hale, T.L., Dammin, G.J., Kapfer, C., Collins Jr., H.H. and Formal, S.B. (1983) Alterations in the pathogenicity of *Escherichia coli* K-12 after transfer of plasmid and chromosomal genes from *Shigella flexneri*. *Infect. Immun.* **39:** 1392-1402.

Sansonetti, P.J., Kopecko, D.J. and Formal, S.B. (1982) Involvement of a plasmid in the invasive ability of *Shigella flexneri*. *Infect. Immun.* **35:** 852-860.

Sansonetti, P.J., Ryter, A., Clerc, P., Maurelli, A.T. and Mounier, J. (1986) Multiplication of *Shigella flexneri* within HeLa cells: lysis of the phagocytic vacuole and plasmid mediated contact haemolysis. *Infect. Immun.* **51:** 461-465.

Sasakawa, C., Adler, B., Tobe, T., Okada, N., Nagai, S., Komatsu, K. and Yoshikawa, M. (1989) Functional organisation and nucleotide sequence of the virulence region -2 on the large virulence plasmid in *Shigella flexneri* 2a. *Mol. Microbiol.* **3:** 1191-1201.

Sasakawa, C., Kamata, K., Sakai, T., Makino, S., Yamada, M., Okada, N. and Yoshikawa, M. (1988) Virulence-associated genetic regions comprising 31 kilobases of the 230- kilobase plasmid in *Shigella flexneri* 2a. *J. Bacteriol.* **170:** 2480-2484.

Sasakawa, C., Komatsu, K., Tobe, T., Suzuki, T. and Yoshikawa, M. (1993) Eight genes in region 5 that form an operon are essential for invasion of epithelial cells by *Shigella flexneri* 2a. *J. Bacteriol.* **175:** 2334-2346.

Saxena, I.M., Brown Jr., R.M., Fevre, M., Geremia, R.A. and Henrissat, B. (1995) Multidomain architecture of β-glucosyl transferases: implications for mechanism of action. *J. Bacteriol.* **177:** 1419-1424.

Schlaepfer, D.D., Hanks, S.K., Hunter, T. and van der Geer, P. (1994) Integrin-mediated signal transduction linked to Ras pathway by GRB2 binding to focal adhesion kinase. *Nature* **372:**786-791.

Schmidt, G., Mayer, H. and Mäkelä, P.H. (1976) Presence of *rfe* genes in *Escherichia coli*: their participation in biosynthesis of O antigen and enterobacterial common antigen. *J. Bacteriol.* **127:** 755-762.

Schnaitman, C.A. and Klena, J.D. (1993) Genetics of lipopolysaccharide biosynthesis in enteric bacteria. *Microbiol. Rev.* **57:** 655-682.

Schuch, R. and Maurelli, A.T. (1997) Virulence plasmid instability in *Shigella flexneri* 2a is induced by virulence gene expression. *Infect. Immun.* **65:** 3686-3692.

Sen, A.K., Mukherjee, A.K., Guhathakurta, B., Dutta, A. and Sasmal, D. (1979) Structural investigation on the lipopolysaccharide isolated from *Vibrio cholerae* Inaba 569B. *Carbohydr. Res.* **72:** 191-199.

Sharma, D.P., Stroeher, U.H., Thomas, J.C., Manning, P.A. and Attridge, S.R. (1989) The toxin-coregulated pilus (TCP) of *Vibrio cholerae*: molecular cloning of genes involved in pilus biosynthesis and evaluation of TCP as a protective agntigen in the infant mouse model. *Microb. Pathogen.* **7:** 451-456.

Sheehy, T.W., Sprinz, H., Augerson, W.S. and Formal, S.B. (1966) Laboratory *Vibrio cholerae* infection in the United States. *J. Am. Med. Assoc.* **197:** 321-325.

Shere, K.D., Sallustio, S., Manessis, A., D'Aversa, T. and Goldberg, M.B. (1997) Disruption of IcsP, the major *Shigella* protease that cleaves IcsA, accelerates actin-based motility. *Mol. Microbiol.* **25:** 451-462.

Shi, L., Chen, G., MacDonald, G., Bergeron, L., Li, H., Miura, M., Rotello, R.J., Miller, D.K., Li, P., Seshadri, T., Yuan, J. and Greenberg, A.H. (1996) Activation of an interleukin 1 converting enzyme-dependent apoptosis pathway by granzyme B. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA.* **93:** 11002-7.

Shimada, T., Nair, G.B., Deb, B.C., Albert, M.J., Sack, R.B. and Takeda, Y. (1992) Outbreak of *Vibrio cholerae* non-O1 in India and Bangladesh. *Lancet* **341:** 1347.

Shrivastava, D.L. and White, P.B. (1947) Note on the relationship of the so-called Ogawa and Inaba types of *V. cholerae. Ind. J. Med. Res.* **35:** 117-129.

Siebers, A. and Finlay, B.B. (1995) Models to study enteropathogenic bacteria: lessons learned from *Shigella. Trends Microbiol.* **3:** 207-209

Simmons, D.A.R. (1969) The immunochemistry of *Shigella flexneri* O antigens: the structure and biosynthesis of the O-specific side chains of some representative serotypes. *Eur. J. Biochem.* **11:** 554-575.

Simmons, D.A.R. (1971) Immunochemistry of *Shigella flexneri* O-antigens: a study of structural and genetics aspects of the biosynthesis of cell-surface antigens. *Bacteriol. Rev.* **35:** 117-148.

Simmons, D.A.R. and Romanowska, E. (1987) Structure and biology *of Shigella flexneri* O antigens. *J. Med. Microbiol.* **23:** 289-302.

Sirisena, D.M., Brozek, K.A., MacLachlan, P.R., Sanderson, K.E. and Raetz, C.R.H. (1992) The *rfaC* gene of *Salmonella typhimurium*: cloning, sequencing, and enzymatic function in heptose transfer to lipopolysaccharide. *J. Biol. Chem.* **267:** 18874-18884.

Slauch, J.M., Lee, A.A., Mahan, M.J. and Mekalanos, J.J. (1996) Molecular characterisation of the *oafA* locus responsible for acetylation of *Salmonella typhimurium* O-antigen: OafA is a member of a family of integral membrane trans-acylases. *J. Bacteriol.* **178:** 5904-5909.

Slauch, J.M., Mahan, M.J., Michetti, P., Neutra, M.R. and Mekalanos, J.J. (1995) Acetylation (O-factor 5) affects the structural and immunological properties of *Salmonella typhimurium* lipopolysaccharide O antigen. *Infect. Immun.* **63:** 437-441.

Southern, E. (1979) Gel electrophoresis of restriction fragments. *Methods Enzymol.* **68:** 152-176.

Staub, A.M. and Bagdian, G. (1966) Ètudes immunochimiques sur les *Salmonella* xii. - analyse immunologique des facteurs 27_A, 27_B et 27_D. *Ann. Inst. Pasteur* **110:** 849-860.

Stevenson, G., Kessler, A. and Reeves, P.R. (1995) A plasmid-borne O-antigen chain length determinant and its relationship to other chain length determinants. *FEMS Microbiol. Lett.* **125:** 23-30.

Stevenson, G., Lee, S.J., Romana, L.K. and Reeves, P.R. (1991) The *cps* gene cluster of *Salmonella* strain LT2 includes a second mannose pathway: sequence of two genes and relationship to genes in the *rfb* gene cluster. *Mol. Gen. Genet.* **227:** 173-180.

Stevenson, G., Neal, B., Liu, D., Hobbs, M., Packer, N.H., Batley, M., Redmond, J.W., Linqvist, L. and Reeves, P.R. (1994) Structure of the O antigen of *Escherichia coli* K-12 and the sequence of its *rfb* gene cluster. *J. Bacteriol.* **176:** 4144-4156.

Stocker, B.A.D. and Mäkelä, P.H. (1971) Genetic aspects of biosynthesis and structure of *Salmonella* lipopolysaccharide. pp. 369-438. In *Microbial Toxins. Vol. 4* G. Weinbaum, S. Kadis, S.J. Ajl (eds). New York: Academic Press

Stocker, B.A.D., Males, B.M. and Takano, W. (1980) *Salmonella typhimurium* mutants of RfaH- phenotype: genetics and antibiotic sensitivities. *J. Gen. Microbiol.* **116:**17-24.

Stroeher, U.H., Karageorgos, L.E., Morona, R. and Manning, P.A. (1992) Serotype conversion in *Vibrio cholerae* O1. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA.* **89:** 2566-2570.

Stroeher, U.H., Parasivam, G., Dredge, B.K. and Manning, P.A. (1997) Novel *Vibrio cholerae* O139 genes involved in lipopolysaccharide biosynthesis. *J. Bacteriol.* **179:** 2740-2747.

Sugimura, K. and Nishihara, T. (1988) Purification, characterisation and primary structure of *Escherichia coli* protease VII with specificity for paired basic residues: identity of protease VII and *ompT*. *J. Bacteriol.* **170:** 5625-5632.

Sugiyama, T., Kido, N., Komatsu, T., Ohta, M., Jann, K., Jann, M. and Kato, N. (1994) Genetic analysis of *Escherichia coli* O9 *rfb*: identification and DNA sequence of phosphomannomutase and GDP-mannose pyrophosphorylase genes. *Microbiology* **140:** 59-71.

Suzuki, T., Murai, T., Fukuda, I., Tobe, T., Yoshikawa, M. and Sasakawa, C. (1994) Identification and characterisation of a chromosomal virulence gene, *vacJ*, required for intercellular spreading of *Shigella flexneri*. *Mol. Microbiol.* **11:** 31-41.

Tabor, S. and Richardson, C.C. (1985) A bacteriophage T7 RNA polymerase/ promoter system for controlled exclusive expression of specific genes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* **82:** 1074-1076

Takeda, K. and Uetake, H. (1973) *In vitro* interaction between phage and receptor lipopolysaccharide: a novel glycosidase associated with *Salmonella* phage ε^{15}. *Virology* **52:** 148-159.

Takeshita, M. and Mäkelä, P.H. (1971) Glucosylation of lipopolysaccharide in *Salmonella*: biosynthesis of O antigen factor 12_2 III. The presence of 12_2 determinants in haptenic polysaccharides. *J. Biol. Chem.* **246:** 3920-3927.

Takita, J. (1937) A new type of antigenic variation occurring in the Flexner group of dysentery bacilli. *J. Hyg.* **37:** 271-279.

Taylor, R.K., Manoil, C. and Mekalanos, J.J. (1989) Broad-host range vectors for delivery of Tn*phoA*: use in genetic analysis of secreted virulence determinants of *Vibrio cholerae*. *J Bacteriol* **171:** 1870-1878

Thirumalai, K., Kim, K-S. and Zychlinksky, A. (1997) IpaB, a *Shigella flexneri* Invasin, colocalises with Interleuin-1β-converting enzyme in the cytoplasm of macrophages. *Infect. Immun.* **65:** 787-793.

Thornberry, N.A., Peterson, E.P., Zhao, J.J., Howard, A.D., Griffin, P.R. and Chapman, K.T. (1994) Inactivation of interleukin-1 beta converting enzyme by peptide (acyloxy)methyl ketones. *Biochemistry* **33:** 3934-3940

Tinelli, R. and Staub, A.M. (1960) Etude immunochimique sur les *Salmonella*. VII. Etude des products de l'hydrolyse acide ménagee du plyoside extrait de *S. typhi*. 1re partie: Analyse de l'antigène O:12 du tableau de Kauffmann-White. *Bull. Soc. Chim. Biol.* **42:** 583-599.

Tobe, T., Nagai, S., Okada, N., Adler, B., Yoshikawa, M. and Sasakawa, C. (1991) Temperature-regulated expression of invasion genes in *Shigella flexneri* is controlled through the transcriptional activation of the *virB* gene on the large plasmid. *Mol. Microbiol.* **5:** 887-893.

Tobe, T., Sasakawa, C., Okada, N., Honma, Y. and Yoshikawa, M. (1992) *vacB*, a novel chromosomal gene required for expression of virulence genes on the large plasmid of *Shigella flexneri*. *J. Bacteriol.* **174:** 6359-6367.

Towbin, H., Staehlin, T. and Gordon, J. (1979) Electrophoretic transfer of proteins from polysaccharide gels to nitrocellulose sheets: procedure and some applications. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **76:** 4350-4354.

Tsai, C.M. and Frasch, C.E. (1982) A sensitive silver stain for detecting lipopolysaccharides in polyacrylamide gels. *Anal. Biochem.* **119:** 115-119.

Uchiya, K., Tobe, T., Komatsu, K., Suzuki, T., Watarai, M., Fukuda, I., Yoshikawa, M. and Sasakawa, C. (1995) Identification of a novel virulence gene, *virA*, on the large plasmid of *Shigella*, involved in invasion and intercellular spreading. *Mol. Microbiol.* **17:** 241-250.

Uetake, H., Luria, S.E. and Burrows, J.W. (1958) Conversion of somatic antigens in *Salmonella* by phage infection leading to lysis or lysogeny. *Virology* **5:** 68-91.

Uetake, H., Nakagawa, T. and Akiba, T. (1955) The relationship of bacteriophage to antigenic changes in group E *Salmonellae. J. Bacteriol.* **69:** 571-579.

Vaara, M. (1981) Increased outer membrane resistance to ethylenediamine-tetraacetate and cations in novel lipid A mutants. *J. Bacteriol.* **148:** 426-434.

Vaara, M., Vaara, T., and Savras, M. (1979) Decreased binding of polymyxin by polymyxin-resistant mutants of *Salmonella typhimurium. J. Bacteriol.* **139:** 664-667.

van Alphen, W. and Lugtenberg, B. (1977) Influence of osmolarity of the growth medium on the outer membrane protein pattern of *Escherichia coli. J. Bacteriol.* **131:** 623-630.

Van den Bosch, L., Manning, P.A. and Morona, R. (1997) Regulation of O antigen chain length is required for *Shigella flexneri* virulence. *Mol. Microbiol.* **23:** 765-775.

Vasselon, T., Mounier, J., Hellio, R. and Sansonetti, P.J. (1992) Movement along actin filaments of the perijunctional area and *de novo* polymerisation of cellular actin are required for *Shigella flexneri* colonisation of epithelial Caco-2 cell monolayers. *Infect. Immun.* **60:** 1031-1040.

Vasselon, T., Mounier, M.C., Prévost, C., Hellio, R. and Sansonetti, P.J. (1991) Stress fibre-based movement of *Shigella flexneri* within cells. *Infect. Immun.* **59:** 1723-1732.

Venkatesan, M.M., Buysee, J.M. and Oaks, E.V. (1992) Surface presentation of *Shigella flexneri* invasion plasmid antigens requires the products of the *spa* locus. *J. Bacteriol.* **174:** 1990-2001.

Verma, N.K., Brandt, J.M., Verma, D.J. and Lindberg, A.A. (1991) Molecular characterisation of the O-acetyl transferase gene of converting bacteriophage Sf6 that adds group antigen 6 to *Shigella flexneri. Mol. Microbiol.* **5:** 71-75.

Verma, N.K., Verma, D.J., Huan, P.T. and Lindberg, A.A. (1993) Cloning and sequencing of the glucosyl transferase-encoding gene from converting bacteriophage X (SfX) of *Shigella flexneri. Gene* **129:** 99-101.

Vieira, J. and Messing, J. (1982) The pUC plasmids, an M13mp7 derived system for insertion mutagenesis and sequencing with synthetic universal primers. *Gene* **19:** 259-268.

Vieu, J.F., Croissant, O. and Dauguet, C. (1965) Structure of bacteriophages responsible for conversion phenomena in *Salmonella*. *Ann. de l'Institut Pasteur* **109:** 160-166.

Von Heijne, G (1992) Membrane protein structure prediction. Hydrophobicity analysis and the positive-inside rule. *J. Mol. Biol.* **225:** 487-494

Waldor, M.K. and Mekalanos, J.J. (1996) Lysogenic conversion by a filamentous phage encoding cholera toxin. *Science* **272:** 1910-1914.

Walenga, R.W. and Osborn, M.J. (1980) Biosynthesis of lipid A. *In vivo* formation of an intermediate containing 3-deoxy-D-mannoctulosonate in a mutant of *Salmonella typhimurium*. *J. Biol. Chem.* **255:** 4252-4256.

Wang, R.F. and Kushner, S.R. (1991) Construction of versatile low-copy-number vectors for cloning, sequencing and gene expression in *Escherichia coli*. *Gene* **100:** 195-199.

Wang, L. and Reeves, P.R. (1994) Involvement of the galactosyl-1-phosphate transferase encoded by the *Salmonella enterica rfbP* gene in O antigen subunit processing. *J. Bacteriol.* **176:** 4348-4356.

Wassef, J.S., Keren, D.F. and Mailloux, J.L. (1989) Role of M cells in initial bacterial uptake and in ulcer formation in the rabbit intestinal loop model in shigellosis. *Infect. Immun.* **57:** 858-863.

Watarai, M., Funato, S. and Sasakawa, C. (1996) Interaction of Ipa proteins of *Shigella flexneri* with alpha5beta1 integrin promotes entry of the bacteria into mammalian cells. *J. Exp. Med.* **183:** 991-999.

Watarai, M., Tobe, T., Yoshikawa, M. and Sasakawa, C. (1995) Contact of *Shigella* with host cells triggers release of Ipa invasins and is an essential function of invasiveness. *EMBO J.* **14:** 2461-2470.

Wheeler, K.M. (1944a) Antigenic relationships of *Shigella paradysenteriae*. *J. Immunol.* **48:** 87-101.

Wheeler, K.M. (1944b) Serological identification of dysentery bacilli. *Amer. J. Pub. Health* **34:** 621-629.

Whitfield, C. (1995) Biosynthesis of lipopolysaccharide O antigens. *T.I.M.* **3:** 178-185.

Whitfield, C., Amor, P.A. and Köplin, R. (1997) Modulation of the surface architecture of Gram-negative bacteria by the action of surface polymer: lipid A-core ligase and by determinants of polymer chain length. *Mol. Microbiol.* **23:** 629-638.

Wilkinson, R.G., Gemski Jr., P. and Stocker, B.A.D. (1972) Non-smooth mutants of *Salmonella typhimurium*: differentiation by phage sensitivity and genetic mapping. *J. Gen. Microbiol.* **70:** 527-554.

Woisetschlager, M., Hodel-Neuhofer, A. and Hogenauer, G. (1988) Localisation of the *kdsA* gene with the aid of the physical map of *Escherichia coli* chromosome. *J. Bacteriol.* **170:** 5382-5384.

Wollin, R., Creeger, E.S., Rothfield, L.I., Stocker, B.A.D. and Lindberg, A.A. (1983) *Salmonella typhimurium* mutants defective in UDP-D-galactose: lipopolysaccharide α1,6-D-galactosyl-transferase. *J. Biol. Chem.* **258:** 3769-3774.

Wright, A. (1971) Mechanism of conversion of the *Salmonella* antigen by bacteriophage ε^{34}. *J. Bacteriol.* **105:** 927-936.

Wright, A. and Barzilai, N. (1971) Isolation and characterisation of nonconverting mutants of bacteriophage ε^{34}. *J. Bacteriol.* **105:** 937-939.

Xiang, S.H., Haase, A.M. and Reeves, P.R. (1993) Variation of the *rfb* gene clusters in *Salmonella enterica. J. Bacteriol.* **171:** 5687-5693.

Zinder, N.D. (1957) Lysogenic conversion in *Salmonella typhimurium. Science* **126:** 1237.

Zinder, N.D. (1958) Genetic interaction between bacteriophage and bacteria. *Virology* **5:** 291-326.

Zychlinsky, A., Kenny, B., Ménard, R., Prévost, M.-C., Holland, B. and Sansonetti, P.J. (1994) IpaB mediates macrophage apoptosis induced by *Shigella flexneri. Mol. Microbiol.* **11:** 619-627.

Zychlinsky, A., Prévost, M.C. and Sansonetti, P.J. (1992) *Shigella flexneri* induces apoptosis in infected macrophages. *Nature* **358:** 167-169.

Examiner #1

p5 Section 1.4 Change to "After passage through the M cell, the organism is engulfed by a macrophage and encapsulated within a phagolysosome, from which the organism escapes shortly after".

p86. The mutants were isolated in the laboratory of Dr. R. Morona by technical assistant Elizabeth Parker.

Table 2.2. Strain E1196 contains plasmid pRT733.

Figure 3.4. The label S-LPS in this figure should read SR-LPS. The difference observed in migration rates of the first repeat unit of RMM181 compared with the other mutants is due to differences in the amount of sample loaded. More sample has been loaded for RMM181 which has created the appearance of a slower migrating band, however, in the other LPS molecules the migration rates appear identical.

Figure 4.5. The 7.2 kb *Pst*I-3 band is not present in RMM273, this strain behaves in every way as a lysogen. Hybridisation seen with a fragment at approximately the same position as the *Pst*I-3 fragment may be due to excision of bacteriophage from the lysogens during culture, which would result in the regeneration of the *Pst*I-3 fragment.
Table 3.3 details the *Pst*I fragments and the corresponding sizes in kb pairs.

p 83. Summary Section 5.7. The gene products of *bgt* and *gtrII* appear to act together to mediate the addition of a glucosyl residue onto the rhamnose III of the repeat unit, resulting in the appearance of the type II antigen.

p 92. One possible reason for there being less Bgt in the inner membrane than in the whole membrane preparation is that protein was lost during the successive steps leading to the isolation of the inner membrane.

Figure 6.3. The LPS of strains RMM334 and RMM468 appear to migrate more slowly due to higher population of LPS molecules present. More sample was loaded in these tracks. It is known in this system that overloading results in upward smearing of bands.

Table 2.1 Virginia omitted from footnote c

p57, line 9 Cells were lysed by a Branson Ultrasonifier (45% cycle, intermittent) and by successive freeze-thawing.

2.20.2 No corrections necessary

p37 Section 2.3 paragraph 3. Liquid cultures were normally grown in 20 ml McCartney bottles.

p48 Section 2.13.1 Sequencing reactions were carried out on 1 μg of double stranded plasmid DNA using the protocol provided by Applied Biosystems.

Examiner #1

p5 Section 1.4 Change to "After passage through the M cell, the organism is engulfed by a macrophage and encapsulated within a phagolysosome, from which the organism escapes shortly after".

p86. The mutants were isolated in the laboratory of Dr. R. Morona by technical assistant Elizabeth Parker.

Table 2.2. Strain E1196 contains plasmid pRT733.

Figure 3.4. The label S-LPS in this figure should read SR-LPS. The difference observed in migration rates of the first repeat unit of RMM181 compared with the other mutants is due to differences in the amount of sample loaded. More sample has been loaded for RMM181 which has created the appearance of a slower migrating band, however, in the other LPS molecules the migration rates appear identical.

Figure 4.5. The 7.2 kb *Pst*I-3 band is not present in RMM273, this strain behaves in every way as a lysogen. Hybridisation seen with a fragment at approximately the same position as the *Pst*I-3 fragment may be due to excision of bacteriophage from the lysogens during culture, which would result in the regeneration of the *Pst*I-3 fragment.
Table 3.3 details the *Pst*I fragments and the corresponding sizes in kb pairs.

p 83. Summary Section 5.7. The gene products of *bgt* and *gtrII* appear to act together to mediate the addition of a glucosyl residue onto the rhamnose III of the repeat unit, resulting in the appearance of the type II antigen.

p 92. One possible reason for there being less Bgt in the inner membrane than in the whole membrane preparation is that protein was lost during the successive steps leading to the isolation of the inner membrane.

Figure 6.3. The LPS of strains RMM334 and RMM468 appear to migrate more slowly due to higher population of LPS molecules present. More sample was loaded in these tracks. It is known in this system that overloading results in upward smearing of bands.

Table 2.1 Virginia omitted from footnote c

p57, line 9 Cells were lysed by a Branson Ultrasonifier (45% cycle, intermittent) and by successive freeze-thawing.

2.20.2 No corrections necessary

p37 Section 2.3 paragraph 3. Liquid cultures were normally grown in 20 ml McCartney bottles.

p48 Section 2.13.1 Sequencing reactions were carried out on 1 μg of double stranded plasmid DNA using the protocol provided by Applied Biosystems.

p73 remove line break from line 4 after 'resembling'

p76 Section 5.1 paragraph 2; none of which was able to mediate serotype conversion.

p80 Section 5.4 line 1. remove comma after LPS.

p84 line 3 The timing of the modifications is being assessed. The semi-rough mutants were used to observe whether long O chains were required before modifications could be added, this was not found to be the case.

Examiner #2

Figure 3.4 addressed in Examiner #1 comments

Figure 3.6 The genome of SfII is presumably packaged by the headful mechanism due to its homology to P22 phage.

p74 (line 4 from bottom) should be 8.5 kb not 9.2 kb.

Figure 4.7B Weak hybridisation to the 6.5 kb band is seen because the *attB* site which was detected is located approximately 100 bp from the end of the 3 kb *Pst*I fragment probed. Hence, a low signal is detected using this *attB* probe.

Chapters 5, 6 and 7- no changes required.